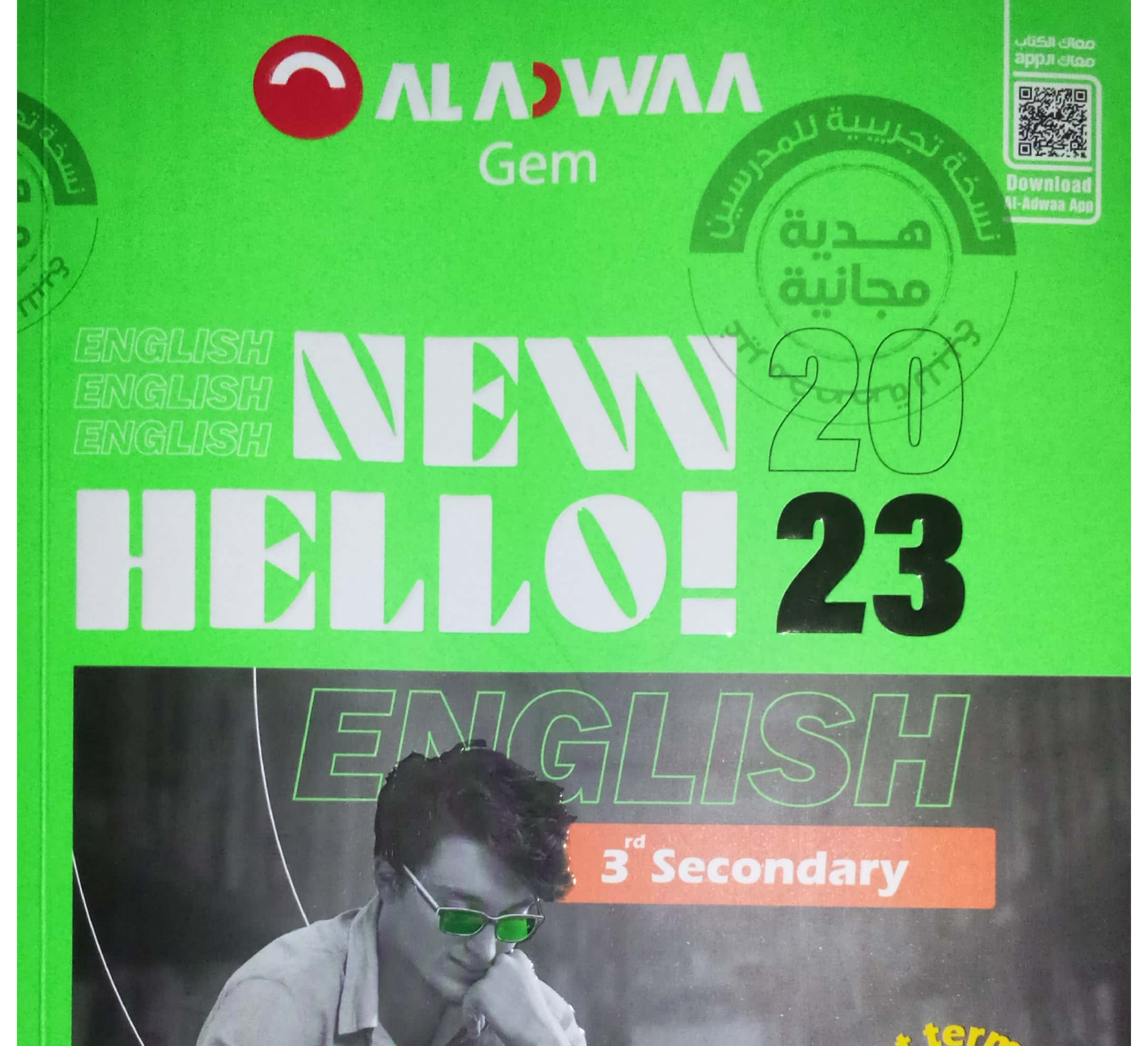


first term first term first term first term

3

Great Expectations

Unit 1



Read all about it!

Objectives

- Reading : Compare different newspaper styles
- Writing : A persuasive essay
- Listening : Understand the key points in a lecture
- Speaking : Report an event
- Language : Review past simple, past continuous and present perfect tenses
- Life skills : Identify bias and exaggeration





Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

announce (v) (d)	يعلن/يذيع	investigate (v) (d)*	يفحص/يتحقق
broadsheet (n)	صحيفة بصفحات عريضة	occur (v) (red)	يحدث
casualty (n)	ضحية/مصاب	piracy (n)	قرصنة
cheat (n) (v) (ed)	خداع/محتال/يخدع	ruin (v) (ed)	يدمر
claim (v) (ed)	يزعم/يدعي	shocked (adj)	مصدوم/ متفاجئ
compensate (v) (d)	يعوض عن	spin (v)	يدور/يدير
demand (n) (v) (ed)	طلب/يطلب	tabloid (n)	صحيفة شعبية

* The police are investigating the crime.

Vocabulary on Reading

afford (v) (ed)	يتحمل نفقات	incident (n)	حدث
amazing (adj)	مذهل	media (n)	إعلام/وسائل الإعلام
article (n)	مقال	nervousness (n)	عصبية/توتر
author (n)	مؤلف/كاتب	product (n)	منتج
authority (n)	سلطة/هيئة	publish (v) (ed)	يطبع/ينشر
block (v) (ed)	يسد/يعوق	rescuer (n)	منقذ
booksellers (n)	بائعو الكتب	result (n)	نتيجة
contents (n)	محتويات	rhyme (n)	قافية/قصيدة (أغنية) صغيرة
copy (n) (v) (y ied)	نسخة/ينسخ	route (n)	طريق
crime (n)	جريمة	sand (n)	رمال
dishonest (adj)	غير صادق/غير أمين	security (n)	أمن
exist (v) (ed)	يوجد	site (n)	موقع
extreme (adj)	شديد/متطرف	square (n) (adj)	مربع
factual (adj)	حقيقي	storm (n)	عاصفة
fans (n)	مشجعون/ معجبون	strict (adj)	حازم/صارم
financially (adv)	ماديًا/ماليًا	tonne (n)	طن
headline (n)	عنوان رئيسي (في الأخبار)	warning (n)	تحذير
illegal (adj)	غير شرعي/غير قانوني		

Vocabulary on Listening

accurate (adj)	دقيق
annoying (adj)	مزعج
apply for (v) (y ied)	يتقدم بطلب
apprenticeship (n)	فترة التدريب فى مهنة
celebrity (n)	شخص مشهور
full-time (adj)	دوام كامل
give up (v)	يستسلم/ يتخلى عن
journalism (n)	الصحافة
journalist (n)	صحفى
nosy (adj)	فضولى
obviously (adv)	بوضوح
qualities (n)	سمات
quote (n) (v) (d)	اقتباس/يقتبس
reporter (n)	مراسل صحفى
volunteer (n) (v) (ed)	متطوع/ يتطوع

Workbook Vocabulary

convict (n)	مدان/محكوم عليه
copyright (n)	حقوق الملكية الفكرية/ حقوق التأليف والنشر
court (n)	محكمة
criminal (adj)	إجرامى/جنائى
Danish (adj)	دنماركى
digital (adj)	رقمى
former (adj)	سابق
lawyer (n)	محام
obtain (v) (ed)	يحصل على
pay (n) (v)	أجر/يدفع
permission (n)	إذن/تصريح
pirated (adj)	مقرصنة
punish (v) (ed)	يعاقب
punishment (n)	عقاب
refer to (v) (red)	يحيل إلى
require (v) (d)	يتطلب
sum (n)	مبلغ من المال
textbooks (n)	كتب مدرسية
violate (v) (d)	يخالف/ينتهك

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

at low cost	بتكلفة منخفضة
at the same time	فى نفس الوقت
(be) kept a secret	يحتفظ به كسر
do an amazing job	يقوم بعمل منهل
find out	يكتشف
go around	يدور حول
open for	مفتوح لـ
find a chance for	يجد فرصة لـ
for that reason	لذلك السبب
return to normal	يعود إلى طبيعته
wait with bated breath	ينتظر بفارغ الصبر
pass through	يمر عبر
share on	يشارك على
travel through	يسافر عبر

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
announce	يعلن	announcement announcer	إعلان/إذاعة مذيع	announced	معلَن
compensate	يعوض	compensation	تعويض	compensatory	تعويضى
exist*	يوجد	existence	وجود	existent	موجود
investigate	يحقق	investigation investigator	تحقيق محقق	investigative	تحقيقى
occur	يحدث	occurrence	حدوث	------------------------------	
publish	ينشر	publishing publisher	نشر ناشر	published	منشور
warn	يحذر	warning	تحذير	warning	تحذيرى

* - Dinosaurs don't exist anymore.
- The existence of dinosaurs was thousands of years ago.
- Dinosaurs aren't existent.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
block	يسد/يعوق	obstruct/hinder	allow/facilitate	يسمح/يسهل
claim	يدعى	allege/assert	conceal/hide	يخفى
compensate	يعوض	make up for/repay	penalise	يعاقب
demand	يطلب	order/request	reply/offer	يرد/يعرض
extreme	شديد	intense/severe	mild/low	معتدل/منخفض
factual	حقيقى/واقعى	real/realistic	false/fictional	مزيف/خيالى
nosy	فضولى	curious	uninterested/uncaring	غير مهتم
occur	يحدث	take place/ happen	stop	يتوقف
result	نتيجة	consequence/outcome	cause	سبب
ruin	يدمر	devastate/ destroy	construct/repair	يشيد/يصلح
strict	صارم/حازم	stern	flexible/gentle	مرن/لطيف

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

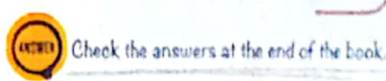
1 The store had falsely .... that its products were all natural.
a) improved b) tried c) claimed d) suggested

2 The court said that the workers who had been fired without good reasons should be ....
a) punished b) compensated c) penalised d) ruled

3 The Chinese car company .... the launch of its new range of cars.
a) announced b) applied c) presented d) repented

4 The government's primary objective of improving roads is reducing road ....
a) builders b) workers c) passengers d) casualties

5 Sami warned me not to play cards with Wael, saying that he is a big ....
a) clerk b) cheat c) boss d) writer



Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)

Let's read and focus on the new vocabulary in the texts.

A) New Harry Potter book shown online



Photographs of all 784 pages of *Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows* have appeared on the internet, four days before J.K. Rowling's final book is due to be published.

It is not known who took photographs of the book, whose contents have been kept a secret before the book is published at 12.01 am on Saturday. Some websites have removed the photos after receiving warnings from the publisher's lawyers, but photos of the book can still be read on other sites. It is also claimed[1] that some people were typing up copies of the book from the photos to share on social media.

This all occurred[2] despite the careful security which has been put in place before the book is published. This included asking booksellers not to tell the media when or if they had copies of the book. The incident highlights the problems of online book piracy[3], which is becoming much more common.

(1) ادعى
(2) حدث
(3) قرصنة
(4) محتال
(5) دمر
(6) ينتظر بفارغ الصبر
(7) طلب
(8) مصدوم

B) Internet cheat ruins Potter surprise

Just four days before J.K. Rowling's final book about Harry Potter is published, an internet cheat[4] has shared every page of the book online. This has ruined[5] the surprise for millions of readers, who have been waiting with bated breath[6] to find out what happens to the famous character.

Several websites show photographs of every page of *Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows*, which means that you can read the whole book online, including the long-awaited ending. Lawyers have demanded[7] that the websites stop showing the illegal photos, and, fortunately, some websites have agreed. However, other people have typed up the text from the photos and are likely to share the story on other websites.

Fans of Harry Potter were shocked[8] by the news. "It's terrible," says Kate Strong from Cambridge, who plans to buy the new book for her children. "The person who has done this should be put in prison."

Reading Text (2)

Ever Given blocks Suez Canal

March 2021

Rescuers have finally moved a huge ship which was blocking traffic going through the Suez Canal. The ship, called the *Ever Given*, is 400 metres long and weighs 200,000 tonnes. It is one of the largest of this type of ships in the world.

The ship was travelling through the Suez Canal on 23 March when there was a sandstorm. The ship's captain said that a strong wind spun[1] the ship so that both its front and back hit the sides of the canal. The result was that no ships could travel past the ship for nearly a week.

Yesterday, more than 380 ships were waiting to pass through the canal. Many ship companies wanted to know if there was another route. A few of the ships' captains decided to go around the south of Africa instead, but this added about eight days to their journey.

At the same time, some countries announced[2] that they would send products by air, but this is about three times more expensive as sending it by ship.

The accident was terrible for businesses around the world. That is because around 12% of the world's business products pass through the canal each day so the accident cost both Egypt and other countries millions of dollars.

Luckily, smaller Egyptian boats were finally able to move the *Ever Given* yesterday. They did an amazing job. They moved around 30,000 square metres of sand under the ship before they took the ship to the Great Bitter Lake, in the middle of the canal. The canal authorities told us that they won't know the true cause of the accident until they investigate[3].

Although the canal is open for ships again today, traffic through the canal won't return to normal for many days. Experts are investigating the possible casualties[4] for all sides. They are also studying the accident carefully to see how Egypt can be compensated[5] financially.

(1) أدار

(2) أعلن

(3) يفحص/يتحرى

(4) إصابات/خسائر

(5) يعوض

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

(A) Punished for stealing books!

An International Crime Court in Denmark punished a twenty-year-old student for selling pirated digital copies of textbooks. The student said she was only trying to help others buy cheaper books.

The student was punished and required to pay a large sum of money for her crime. The criminal lawyer made it clear that copying e-books without the permission of the author is a crime.

(B) Piracy is a crime!

In recent news, a former Danish student in her late 20s was punished for selling pirated digital copies of textbooks. Her crimes were referred to the country's International Crime Court.

The criminal lawyer stated that the convict has now received a punishment for violating copyright law. He also said that it is important to understand that even though it is easy to do so, it is a crime to copy e-books without the permission of the author. When asked to give a reason why she sold books that she does not own the rights to, the student said she was helping students obtain books at a lower price. It was made clear to her that copying e-books that one does not own the rights to is illegal. In addition to being punished by law, she is also required to pay a large sum of money for the crime of piracy.



Listening Text (1)



Reporter : How did you get into journalism[1]?

Journalist : I started as a trainee on a local newspaper and then I started a three year apprenticeship[2]. I've written for many newspapers since that time.

Reporter : What advice can you give a student reporter like me?

Journalist : Learn from your mistakes! When I was first interviewing people, I was asking too many questions. Let the person talk and always listen very carefully. Give both sides of the story and make sure any facts or quotes[3] are accurate. When I first wrote news stories, I often included my own feelings and opinions. This was not good. If you're writing a news story, try to be objective.

Reporter : Have you ever interviewed anyone famous?

Journalist : I've interviewed lots of celebrities[4].

Reporter : Who was the most annoying person you've interviewed?

Journalist : There was one grumpy person that I remember! I was interviewing a well-known actor when he told me to be quiet. The actor didn't want to answer my questions!

(1) الصحافة

(2) فترة التدريب فى مهنة

(3) اقتباسات

(4) مشاهير

(5) فضولى

(6) متطوع

(7) دوام كامل

Reporter : Is it a hard job?

Journalist : It can be. Sometimes I wonder why I'm tired, and I remember that I've worked for twelve hours without a break! But journalists usually love what they do.

Reporter : What kind of person does a good journalist have to be?

Journalist : You obviously have to be good at writing, but you also have to be a naturally nosy[5] person and you really need to be interested in people. I've worked with a lot of journalists and the best ones have these three qualities.

Reporter : What advice would you give to young people listening who want to become journalists?

Journalist : Get some experience on the school newspaper or work for a local newspaper for free. And don't give up. Keep trying until someone gives you a chance. I was working as a volunteer[6] and at a shop while I was at university. And I applied for eighteen jobs before I got my first full-time[7] job. 12 years later, I'm still here!

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

Manal : Mum, Soha has broken the computer! It's not working.

Soha : I didn't break it, Manal!

Manal : But you used it last.

Soha : Yes, but it was working when I used it.

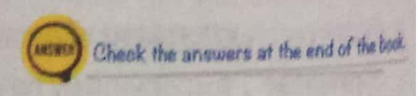
Mum : Sorry, girls, I forgot to say that it broke yesterday.

Dad : That computer is always breaking! We need a new one.

Let's check your memory

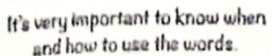
Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The tourist booklet gives a detailed and .... description of each temple in Luxor.
   a) unclear b) accurate
   c) vague d) electrical
2. Hedaya Malak became a/an .... after winning two bronze medals at the Olympics.
   a) detective b) inventor
   c) celebrity d) editor
3. A/An .... neighbour actually videotaped the famous actor's family in their own backyard.
   a) nosy b) honest
   c) loyal d) innocent
4. The article about the crime included .... from the detectives who worked on the case.
   a) rules b) essays
   c) proverbs d) quotes
5. The famous player has decided to .... up football at the end of this season.
   a) hold b) take
   c) give d) get



Vocabulary in Use







cheat غشاش/محتال
- someone who behaves in a dishonest way in order to get something

demand يطلب
- to ask for something in a very strict and serious way

incident حدث
- a formal word meaning 'event'

piracy قرصنة
- when someone illegally copies and sells someone's work

ruined دمر
- completely spoiled something

shocked مصدوم
- an extreme adjective meaning very surprised and upset

wait with bated breath ينتظر بفارغ الصبر
- a phrase meaning waiting with a lot of nervousness and excitement

claim يدعي
- say something is true, although it has not been proved

occur يحدث
- happen or exist in a particular place or situation

Notes on Vocabulary

1

factual واقعي/حقيقي (غير خيالي)

based on facts, or involving facts

- The court makes its decision based on factual evidence.

true حقيقي/صادق

based on real facts, and not imagined or invented

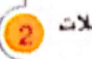
- The film was based on a true story.

newspaper/paper
جريدة/صحيفة

- There was an interesting article in the local paper/newspaper today.

the press
الصحافة (تشمل كل المطبوعات الإخبارية كالجرائد والمجلات)

- The press are always interested in stories about the royal family in England.



the media
وسائل الإعلام (تشمل الصحف والمجلات والإذاعة والتليفزيون)

- Terrorism is an issue that receives a lot of attention in the media.

tabloid
صحيفة شعبية (صغيرة الحجم وتكثر فيها الصور والقصص البسيطة)

- The famous actor earned much money after selling his wedding photos to tabloid newspapers.

broadsheet
صحيفة ذات صفحات عريضة (تقل فيها الصور وتتناول الأخبار الجادة والدولية)

- Broadsheet newspapers are aimed at educated readers with their serious articles.

---

incident
حدث غير عادي أو غير سار أو جزء من سلسلة من الأحداث

something that happens, especially something that is unusual or unpleasant, or something that is one of several events

- He died after a violent incident outside the club.
- This latest incident could put an end to his career.



event
حدث مهم أو مشوق

something that happens, especially something important or interesting

- There was much attention to the recent political events in the Middle East.

occasion
مناسبة (اجتماعية أو احتفالية)

an important social event or celebration

- She only wore the dress for special occasions.
- It was his 70th birthday, and friends and family gathered to mark the occasion.

4

investigate
يتحرى/ يفحص (لاكتشاف الحقائق عن شيء مثل جريمة أو حادث أو مسألة علمية)

to try to find out the truth about something such as a crime, accident, or scientific problem

- Police officers are investigating an explosion in the city centre.
- The aim of the study is to investigate how climate change is affecting animal behaviour.

inspect
يفتش (يفحص شيئًا بعناية للتأكد من الصحة والأمان أو العمل بشكل صحيح)

to examine something carefully to make sure that it is correct, safe, or working properly, especially when it is your job to do this

- The building is regularly inspected by a fire-safety officer.
- Some officials have already been here to inspect the damage caused by the storm.

site
موقع (مستخدم لغرض محدد أو حدوث شيء مهم)

a place, especially one that will be used for a particular purpose, or where something important happened
- There are plans to develop the site for housing.
- The area has become a dumping site for nuclear waste.

5

scene
مشهد (مكان حدوث شيء سيئ)

the place where something bad such as an accident or crime happened
- Ambulance crews were at the accident scene within minutes.

venue
موقع حدث (مكان حدث كاجتماع أو حفل أو لعبة)

a place where something such as a meeting, concert, game takes place
- The venue for the next Olympic Games is Italy.
- The hotel is a popular wedding venue.

6

announce
يعلن عن (خبر/بيان)
- The jury announced the winner of the competition to an excited audience.

advertise
يعلن عن/ يروج (منتج أو افتتاح)
- Most companies advertise their products on the Internet.

7

occur/ happen
يحدث (غالبا بدون ترتيب)
- An accident involving over ten vehicles has occurred/happened on the highway.

take place
يحدث (غالبا بخطة أو ترتيب)
- The next meeting will take place on Thursday.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

Did you notice these notes while reading?

- Some websites have removed the photos after receiving warnings from the publisher's lawyers.

- لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد (after) لعدم وجود فاعل.

- Lawyers have demanded that the websites stop showing the illegal photos.

- لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (stop) بمعنى يتوقف عن.

- The ship, called the *Ever Given*, is 400 metres long and weighs 200,000 tonnes.

- لاحظ اختصار جملة الوصل (called the *Ever Given*) واستخدام الفاصلتين فالجملة أصلها:

The ship, which is called the *Ever Given*, is 400 metres long and weighs 200,000 tonnes.

- Keep trying until someone gives you a chance.

- لاحظ استخدام صيغة الأمر قبل (until) والمضارع البسيط بعدها للتعبير عن المستقبل.

- An International Crime Court in Denmark punished a twenty-year-old student for ....

لاحظ استخدام صيغة المفرد فى مثل هذه الصفات المركبة.

- When asked to give a reason why she sold books that she does not own the rights to, ...

لاحظ استخدام جملة كاملة بعد (reason why).

- In addition to being punished by law, she is also required to ....

لاحظ استخدام اسم أو (verb+ ing) بعد (In addition to) أما (In addition) فيتبعها جملة كاملة.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 That strange criminal reveals his .... character to very few people.

a) factual b) true c) fictional d) common

2 The police confirmed that an inquiry was started into the killing ....

a) fact b) event c) occasion d) incident

3 The trial was fully reported in the .... All important TV channels and famous newspapers sent reporters.

a) press b) tabloid c) media d) paper

4 The car had been abandoned two kilometres away from the .... of the robbery.

a) site b) scene c) venue d) destination

5 The Tourist Authorities should .... all new hotels to issue a licence for their owners.

a) inspect b) investigate c) search d) research

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

The best way to check your understanding is to practise.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Workbook Vocabulary & Vocabulary Notes

1 The TV channel has .... the date of the second season of my favourite TV serials.
a) assisted b) demanded c) announced d) rehearsed

2 Unfortunately, the movie was broadcasted online by a .... who had stolen a copy.
a) reverse b) route c) deceit d) cheat

3 The news announced that fortunately, the number of .... of the train accident wasn't high.
a) passengers b) casualties c) survivors d) rescuers

4 Nothing could ever .... a mother for the pain of being separated from her children.
a) compensate b) hire c) demand d) afford

5 My grandfather is over seventy years old and .... constant care.
a) inquires b) acquires c) demands d) releases

6 The company said it would .... any customer complaints very fast.
a) investigate b) duplicate c) ignore d) block

7 Great economic changes have .... in Egypt during the last few days.
a) punished b) repaired c) placed d) occurred

8 .... is the act of making illegal copies of DVDs, computer programs, books, etc, in order to sell them.
a) Accuracy b) Piracy c) Inquiry d) Apprenticeship

9 The young woman has .... the sauce by adding too much salt and garlic.
a) ruined b) refreshed c) violated d) contracted

10 The storm has .... the ship and the captain couldn't control it.
a) orbited b) spun c) compensated d) replaced

11 The young man couldn't .... the money to go on the trip for his honeymoon.
a) fill b) stop c) stand d) afford

12 The terrible accident has .... two lanes of traffic on the freeway.
a) listed b) booked c) blocked d) constructed

13 The police reported that the fire had caused severe damage to the .... of the building.
a) costs b) contents c) intrusions d) directions

14 The story about the war victims dominated newspaper .... around the world.
a) headlines b) lines c) addresses d) fans

15 Most local newspapers are usually .... daily to cope with the current events.
a) prevailed b) publicised c) spread d) published

16 The tourists studied the map and planned their trip .... accurately.
a) method b) avenue c) route d) view

17 My sister had to go on a/an .... diet and lost a lot of weight.
a) high b) strict c) digital d) easy

18 A .... is a newspaper that has large pages and that usually deals with serious subjects.
a) press b) tabloid c) broadsheet d) media

19 The famous actress has signed a deal to .... the company's hair care products.
a) announce b) advertise c) claim d) respond

20 The customer service clerk told me that my complaint was .... to the manager.
a) released b) retreated c) referred d) replied

21 Two people were shot yesterday in two separate .... in the street.
a) rounds b) feasts c) results d) incidents

22 A .... is a person who has been found guilty of a crime and sent to prison.
a) lawyer b) convict c) detective d) jailer

23 All cases of murder are tried in a .... court because they deserve a strong penalty.
a) criminal b) lawful c) ruling d) political

24 My uncle works as an advisor to a .... minister who has retired recently.
a) formal b) present c) former d) clear

25 Doctors need written .... from the patient before they can do a serious operation.
a) degree b) licence c) affection d) permission

26 Huge .... of money have been invested in projects in Sinai in the last few years.
a) sums b) quantities c) qualities d) assets

27 The young man was arrested for .... traffic laws which resulted in a terrible accident.
a) obeying b) following c) denying d) violating

28 The five-star hotel in downtown Cairo is a popular wedding .... because of its fantastic halls.
a) site b) scene c) venue d) view

29 The new student in our class is a .... person who would interfere in anyone's personal affairs.
a) nosy b) friendly c) criminal d) private

30 Piracy and breaking copyrights law is a .... that should be fought severely to encourage innovation.
a) mark b) role c) rule d) crime

31 My elder brother doesn't like wearing suits. He only wears them on formal ....
a) incidents b) events c) occasions d) accidents

32 The electronic company has just launched a new .... on to the market.
a) produce b) product c) harvest d) tool

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

33 The plant is sensitive to extreme weather. The word "extreme" is the synonym of ....
a) severe b) mild c) low d) regular

34 The shop is about to close and is selling the products .... low cost.
a) in b) at c) of d) out

35 I think you should take the highway as all other roads will force you to go .... the city.
a) next b) straight c) around d) right

36 Experts believe that the economic conditions will take years to .... to normal after the COVID-19 crisis.
a) fly b) drive c) become d) return

37 The study compares the .... of heart disease among men in various countries.
a) occur b) occurrence c) occurred d) occurs

38 We waited with bated .... for the winner to be announced.
a) smell b) sight c) breath d) breeze

39 All ships know that passing .... the Suez Canal saves time and money.
a) of b) for c) at d) through

40 History books have their main ideas, and factual details arranged in a particular manner. The word "factual" is the antonym of "..................".
a) real b) fictional c) true d) effective





Lessons 1 & 2

B Language

1 Past simple الماضى البسيط

Form
Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل
• I/He/They passed the exam.

Negative
Subj. + didn't + inf. ▶
• I/He/They didn't watch the match.

Interrogative
Did + subj. + inf.?/ Wh-word + did + subj + inf.? ▶
• Did the police arrest the criminal?
• Where did he spend the holiday?

Passive
Obj. + was/ were + P.P. ▶
• The criminal was arrested.

Usage الاستخدام

1. **For an action which began and finished in the past:** حدث بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى.
   - My mother took me to the dentist yesterday.
   - Mozart wrote more than 600 pieces of music.
2. **For actions which happened immediately one after the other in the past:** للأحداث التى حدثت تباعًا واحدًا تلو الآخر فى الماضى.
   - Yasser worked very fast and finished before everyone else in the class.
3. **For past habits which are now finished: (We can also use: used to)** للعادات التى كانت فى الماضى ولم يعد لها وجود الآن.
   - People travelled/used to travel on camels in the past.
4. **For retelling stories:** لسرد أحداث القصص
   - When the thief tried to escape, the police attacked him bravely. In the end, he was arrested and sent to prison for life.
5. **The past simple is used with the following time expressions:** يستخدم الماضى البسيط مع هذه التعبيرات
   yesterday, last night/ week/ month/ year/ Friday, etc, two days/ weeks/ months ago, then, when, How long ago ...?, in 1900/ 2000/2012, the other day, etc.
   - He graduated from Assuit University in 1991.
   - How long ago did she leave her work?
6. **Using (for) with past simple:** يستخدم الماضى البسيط مع for للتعبير عن سيرة شخص ذاتية أو أحداث استمرت لعدد من السنين أو الشهور.
   - My father went to the Faculty of Commerce for four years.
   - My grandfather lived in Italy for 5 years.
7. **With (always – never – often, etc.) to express habits in the past:** يستخدم مع نفس كلمات المضارع البسيط ليدل على العادة فى الماضى.
   - When he was a child, he always walked to school.
   - I never thought that it would be possible to buy things on the internet.

The past simple: be/have/do

الفاعل	be		have		do	
	الاثبات	النفي	الاثبات	النفي	الاثبات	النفي
I	was	wasn't	had	didn't have	did	didn't do
He	was	wasn't	had	didn't have	did	didn't do
She	was	wasn't	had	didn't have	did	didn't do
It	was	wasn't	had	didn't have	did	didn't do
They	were	weren't	had	didn't have	did	didn't do
We	were	weren't	had	didn't have	did	didn't do
You	were	weren't	had	didn't have	did	didn't do

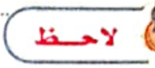
Got it

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: ?

- .... he at the gym yesterday?

a) Were b) Did c) Has d) Was

الإجابة هى (d) لأنه بعد الفاعل حرف جر ثم مكان، لذلك نستخدم verb to be



١) لا يأتي بعد v. to be فعل فى الماضى البسيط ولكن اسم أو صفة.

- Ali was a taxi driver ten years ago. (was + noun)
- Ali was ill last week. (was + adjective)

٢) بعض الأفعال المربكة عند استخدامها فى الماضى، ولذلك يجب حفظ تصريفها جيدًا.

Some confusing verbs when used in the past:

1. fall	يسقط/يقع	fell	fallen
fell	يوقع/يقطع شجرة	felled	felled
2. find	يجد	found	found
found	يؤسس	founded	founded
3. lie	يستلقى/يضطجع	lay	lain
lay	تضع البيض/تعد منضدة	laid	laid
4. wind	يلف عقارب الساعة	wound	wound
wound	يجرح	wounded	wounded
5. ring	يتصل/يرن	rang	rung
ring	يضع دائرة حول	ringed	ringed

٣) نستخدم الماضى البسيط وليس الماضى المستمر عند الحديث عن العادة فى الماضى.

- When I was on holiday, I went to the beach every day.

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A lot of students .... absent in class yesterday.
   a) were   b) didn't   c) aren't   d) don't
2. I .... like the film on TV last night.
   a) don't   b) am not   c) didn't   d) haven't
3. Fifty years ago, people .... used mobile phones.
   a) always   b) weren't   c) didn't   d) never
4. My mother made me a cake. It .... of lemons.
   a) had tasted   b) tasted   c) was tasting   d) is tasting
5. My dad .... on business trips to Japan four times last year.
   a) used to go   b) was going   c) had gone   d) went



Past habits: (used to - would)

للتعبير عن عادات الماضي يمكن استخدام:

1 used to

نستخدم used to للتعبير عن المواقف الدائمة وعادات الماضي والروتين والحقائق التي كانت قديمًا ولكنها لم تعد الآن.

- I used to have a bike, but now I don't.
- My father used to be a teacher, but now he is a manager in a big company.
- I used to play for the school team on Fridays when I was a student.

نستخدم used to أيضًا للأشياء التي كانت دائمًا حقيقية ولم تعد الآن.

- This building is now a furniture shop. It used to be a cinema.
- Jeans used to come only in blue. Now you can buy them in any colour.

في السؤال نستخدم did + subj. + use to

في النفي نستخدم Subj. + didn't use to

Yes/ No questions

Did	subject	use to	base form			
Did	you she they	use to	have a mobile phone when	you she they	were was were	young?

Negative

Subject	didn't	use to	base form			
I She They	didn't	use to	have a mobile phone when	I she they	was was were	young.

Be (get) used to + v.ing

- (Be used to) means 'be accustomed to', 'be in the habit of.'

يعبر be (get) + used to + v-ing/noun/pronoun عن عادة فى الماضى وما زالت تحدث حتى الآن.

- My father is very active. He is used to getting up early.
- I didn't like my job at first, but I'm (get) used to it now.
- She isn't used to living in hot climates.

Object + (be + used to) + inf. = passive

إذا جاء قبل be used to مفعول يأتى بعدها المصدر، وفى هذه الحالة يكون المعنى (يستخدم) وليس يعتاد.

- This knife is used to cut onions.

Object + (be + used for) + ing.

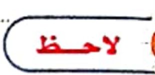
وتستخدم be used for + ving للإشارة إلى الاستخدام العام للأشياء:

- Knives are used for cutting things.
- Pens are used for writing.

No longer / any longer

نستخدم no longer وبعدها فعل مضارع أو any longer ومعها مضارع منفى بدلًا من used to

Osama no longer walks regularly.
Osama doesn't walk regularly any longer.
= Osama used to walk regularly.



١) فى النفى دائمًا نجد didn't use to ولكن يمكن نفى الجملة باستخدام التعبير الآتى used not to.

- Long time ago, clothes used not to be expensive.

٢) نستخدم used صفة بمعنى مُستخدم وهى من الفعل use بمعنى يستخدم.

- It's very dangerous to buy used clothes nowadays because of diseases.
- Used cars are always much cheaper than the new ones.

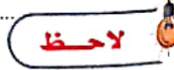
2 would + inf.

تستخدم would + inf. للتعبير عن العادات والسلوك النمطى المتكرر فى الماضى وليس عن الشىء الدائم وثوابت الأشياء.

- At weekends, my father would go and buy fruit and also he would buy me sweets.

هذه الجملة تعبر عن سلوك متكرر لشخص وليس عن مواقف وأشياء حقيقية مثل امتلاك شخص لشىء أو وظيفة لديه.

- I used to have a bike when I was ten years old. (NOT: ~~I would have a bike~~ ...)



state verbs لا تستخدم مع would

- I used to know much about football. (NOT: ~~I would know much about football.~~)

ولمزيد من التوضيح نقول إن would تستخدم للأشياء التى كان من الممكن فعلها أو عدم فعلها مثل لعب الكرة فكنا نلعب أو لا نلعب ولكن شخص كانت وظيفته رسامًا مثلًا فهل الوظيفة تتجزأ فتكون فى وقت دون آخر بالطبع لا فهنا لا نستخدم would.

- When I was younger, I would play with my friends.
- My brother ~~would be~~ a good painter.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

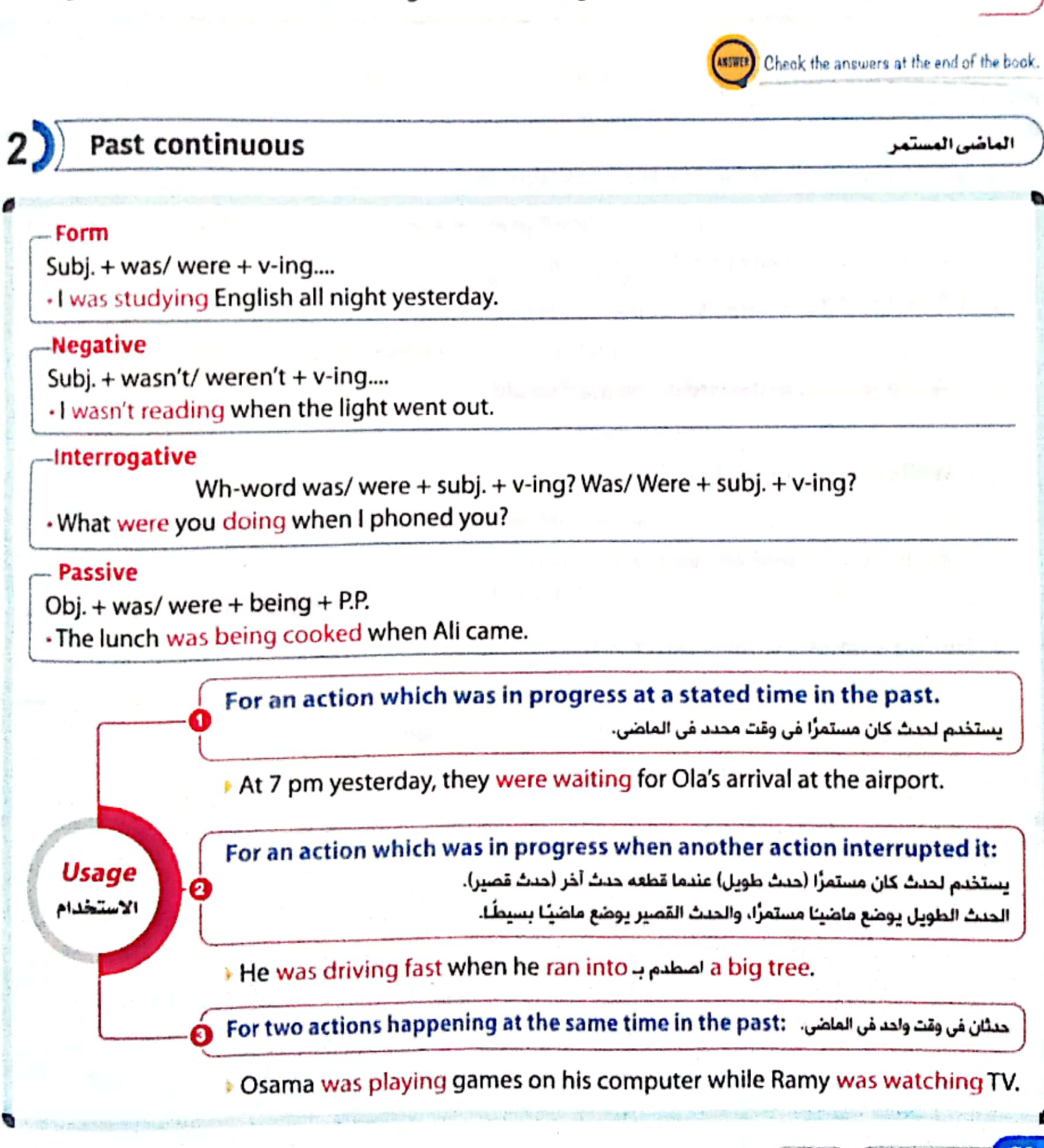
- When I was 10 years old, I .... bicycle.

a) would have b) used to be c) used to have d) was having

الإجابة هى (c) لأن الفعل have لا يأتى مع would عندما نشير للملكية.

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He usually .... late for the training sessions when he was a member in the team.
   a) arrive b) arrives c) used to arrive d) arrived
2. Where did you .... to play when you were young?
   a) used b) using c) use d) uses
3. I once .... the newspaper every day. Now I don't have the time.
   a) have read b) used to read c) had read d) was reading
4. When we were children, mother .... accompany us to bed and read us a bedtime story.
   a) would b) was used to c) wasn't used to d) didn't used to
5. When we were on holiday, we .... up early every day and spend all day on the beach.
   a) get b) would get c) got d) will get



ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

2) Past continuous الماضى المستمر

Form
Subj. + was/ were + v-ing....
• I was studying English all night yesterday.

Negative
Subj. + wasn't/ weren't + v-ing....
• I wasn't reading when the light went out.

Interrogative
Wh-word was/ were + subj. + v-ing? Was/ Were + subj. + v-ing?
• What were you doing when I phoned you?

Passive
Obj. + was/ were + being + P.P.
• The lunch was being cooked when Ali came.

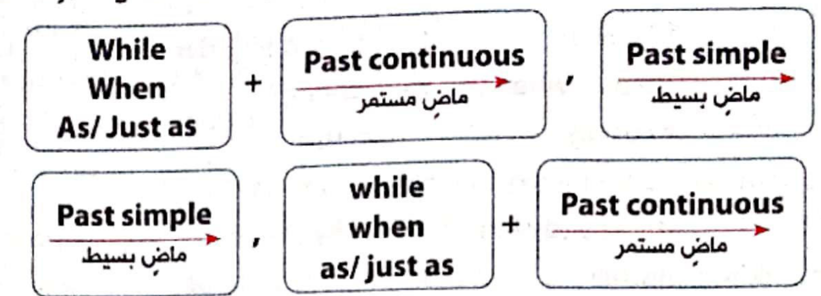
Usage الاستخدام

1. **For an action which was in progress at a stated time in the past.**
   يستخدم لحدث كان مستمرًا فى وقت محدد فى الماضى.
   • At 7 pm yesterday, they were waiting for Ola's arrival at the airport.
2. **For an action which was in progress when another action interrupted it:**
   يستخدم لحدث كان مستمرًا (حدث طويل) عندما قطعه حدث آخر (حدث قصير).
   الحدث الطويل يوضع ماضيًا مستمرًا، والحدث القصير يوضع ماضيًا بسيطًا.
   • He was driving fast when he ran into اصطدم بـ a big tree.
3. **For two actions happening at the same time in the past:** حدثان فى وقت واحد فى الماضى
   • Osama was playing games on his computer while Ramy was watching TV.

The past continuous is used with the following time expressions:

يستخدم الماضى المستمر مع هذه التعبيرات:

when, while, as, all day/ night/morning, etc.



لاحظ أنه يمكن وضع الماضى المستمر أو البسيط بعد when على حسب معنى الجملة أيهما مستمر وأيهما قاطع:

- She was cleaning the room when she found her ring.
- When she was cleaning the room, she found her ring.

ولكى تصل إلى إتقان هذا الزمن لا بد أن تعلم أن الحدث المستمر يوضع ماضيًا مستمرًا، والحدث القاطع يوضع ماضيًا بسيطًا.

Advanced Points

1 **While + past simple (was/ were), past simple.**

لا يمكن استخدام being بعد was/ were لأنها فعل لا يستخدم فى الاستمرار.

- While I was ill, many people visited me.

2 **While + v-ing** إذا لم يوجد فاعل

وهنا لا بد أن يكون فاعل الجملة الثانية هو الفاعل المحذوف.

- **While** walking in the street, she met her old classmate.

وخطأ أن نقول.

- **While** playing football, it rained. ✗

فى الجملة السابقة يفهم من الجملة أن التى أمطرت هى التى كانت تلعب الكرة ولكن نقول.

- While playing football, Ahmed fell down.

فهنا الذى وقع هو الذى كان يلعب الكرة وهو أحمد.

3 **During + noun = while + past cont.**

نستخدم الاسم بعد during ولا نستخدم v.ing، وإذا لزم الأمر نستخدم صفات الملكية قبل v-ing.

- During his stay in London, he met many famous people.
- During my reading, a bird flew into my room.



Language Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He .... his leg in a skiing accident last winter.
a) has broken b) breaks c) broke d) was broken

2 While Yusuf .... for the bus, it started to rain.
a) waits b) had waited c) waited d) was waiting

3 First, she knocked on the door. Then she .... inside.
a) had gone b) went c) was going d) goes

4 She .... the prize because she wrote the best composition.
a) won b) to win c) is winning d) wins

5 Ahmed's car was hit by a driver who .... at a mad speed.
a) was driving b) drive c) was driven d) drives

6 .... you at home yesterday morning?
a) Did b) Are c) Will d) Were

7 What .... when I called you? You sounded very busy.
a) did you do b) were you doing c) had you done d) are you doing

8 Yesterday, he .... lunch at a splendid restaurant.
a) has b) has had c) had d) is having

9 As we .... down the hill, a strange object appeared in the sky.
a) drive b) had driven c) were driving d) drove

10 While I was playing football, I .... and broke my leg.
a) had fallen b) fell c) was falling d) felled

11 They didn't believe him and .... to laugh.
a) begin b) have begun c) began d) had begun

12 How long ago ....?
a) does she study in the library b) will she stay in Paris
c) have you known her d) did they leave

13 They .... that bridge when I was here last year. They haven't finished it yet.
a) were building b) built c) had built d) are building

14 **A:** Why didn't you go to the factory? **B:** I .... no time.
a) have b) had c) hadn't d) didn't have

15 When I .... my homework, my sister was helping my mother.
a) did b) had done c) was doing d) am doing

16 Thirty years ago, people .... little about the internet and its benefits.
a) had known b) have known c) should know d) knew

17 While I .... at home, a man knocked on the door and asked for help.
a) have been b) was c) was being d) had been

18 He gave me back the book and .... me for lending it to him.

a) was thanking
b) used to thank
c) had thanked
d) thanked

19 As my mother was exhausted, she fell asleep while .... TV.

a) was watching
b) had watched
c) watching
d) being watched

20 During .... to school, I saw some students quarrelling fiercely.

a) my walk
b) walks
c) walking
d) was walking

21 How many people .... to the meeting yesterday?

a) did come
b) come
c) are coming
d) came

22 She .... late for meetings. No wonder she was never promoted.

a) always coming
b) was always coming
c) never came
d) had come

23 The dentist .... my tooth out the other day.

a) was taken
b) is taking
c) took
d) will take

24 She .... while she was working in the garden last weekend.

a) was hurting
b) was hurt
c) had hurt
d) hurt

25 When I was a student, I .... up early and study my lessons on my own.

a) got
b) was getting
c) would get
d) was used to get

26 He .... nobody about his secret that day.

a) don't tell
b) hadn't told
c) didn't tell
d) told

27 When my father was young, he always .... to work.

a) was walking
b) walked
c) had walked
d) walks

28 While .... at a high temperature, the food got burnt.

a) being cooked
b) was cooking
c) cooking
d) was being cooked

29 Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?

a) When I was young, I was doing my homework every day.
b) When I was young, I do my homework every day.
c) When I was young, I did my homework every day.
d) When I was young, I was never done my homework every day.

30 Which one of the following sentences isn't in the past continuous tense?

a) My father was always criticising me when I was young.
b) While driving fast, Ali had an accident.
c) The film was interesting, so we waited till the end.
d) During their stay in England, they learnt much English.

Test Yourself in 20

Unit 1
Lessons 1 & 2

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The medical company representatives .... that their drug prevents hair loss.
a) cheat **b)** claim **c)** ignore **d)** neglect

2 There are a number of ways in which the public can help the police to fight ....
a) accuracy **b)** affection **c)** justice **d)** crime

3 By law, it is .... to drive a car without having a driving licence.
a) logical **b)** legal **c)** illegal **d)** accurate

4 All my family were deeply .... by grandmother's death. We loved her very much.
a) shocked **b)** pleased **c)** strict **d)** annoying

5 Wreckage of the plane was seen 300 metres away from the crash ....
a) view **b)** scenery **c)** site **d)** position

6 Since his childhood, Dr Moustafa has shown great leadership ....
a) sums **b)** articles **c)** quantities **d)** qualities

7 A .... is a newspaper which has small pages, large photos and short stories which are easy to explain.
a) tabloid **b)** broadsheet **c)** comic **d)** media

8 The company manager insists that clerks should .... all customer complaints and give a report.
a) inspect **b)** investigate **c)** detect **d)** refuse

9 Sameh had an accident as he .... the street.
a) had crossed **b)** crossed **c)** was crossing **d)** is crossing

10 There .... enough facilities for local people, but now there are a lot of them.
a) didn't use to be **b)** used to be **c)** would be **d)** didn't use to have

11 His father was a doctor and he .... to make his son a doctor, too.
a) wants **b)** wanted **c)** was wanting **d)** had wanted

12 During his school years, my father .... great interest in literature.
a) would take **b)** had taken **c)** used to taking **d)** took

13 I was reading a book when you .... me last night.
a) were phoning **b)** had phoned **c)** phoned **d)** phone

14 When I was younger, I .... swimming with my friends and spend a nice time on the beach.
a) am used to go **b)** would go **c)** went **d)** go

15 While she was doing her homework, my sister .... to music.
a) listens **b)** is listening **c)** had listened **d)** was listening

16 When the old lady returned to her flat, she found that someone had broken in .... her absence.
a) during **b)** while **c)** before **d)** until

17 Choose the sentence that demonstrates **correct** capitalisation
a) When people think of Paris, they think of the Eiffel Tower.
b) The Empire state building is a symbol of New York City.
c) Visitors to New York usually want to see the statue of liberty.
d) The Golden gate bridge is in San Francisco.

18 "Everybody agrees that television has changed the way we entertain." This can be a/an .... of an essay.
a) introduction **b)** body
c) conclusion **d)** greeting

19 An expository essay is a kind of essay which ....

a) gives a clear, focused explanation of a topic
b) introduces an extended evidence-based argument
c) tells a story about a personal experience or an imaginative one
d) gives a detailed sensory description of something

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

No matter where you look you will see ads or advertisements[1]. They are everywhere: In newspapers, in magazines, on TV, on the radio, on the internet, when you play games on the computer, on clothing on balloons and blimps[2], on... Well, they are a part of your life. There are so many that you might not even notice them.

To advertise means to call something to the attention of the public. That can be done in many different ways. Street vendors[3] advertise by calling out loudly: "Bananas – 3 for 20 pounds!" Others prefer to advertise their products on posters that can be found everywhere. Others again use television and radio for the purpose[4]. Advertisements have been around for a long time. In the old days you "advertised" politicians and had election[5] posters, baths, pubs[6] etc.

It is hard to imagine a world without advertisements. They are everywhere and they pay for many things. Just think of all the programmes on television that are sponsored[7] by a company or magazines that are full of ads. You would have to pay much more if they were not part of the magazine. When you surf the net or play a game online, they are there.

Ads are not the same in every country. You have to pay attention to traditions, history and culture. What works in one country might not work in another country.

An important part of advertising and selling products is the idea of brands[8]. When you buy a particular brand, you are not just buying a product; you are buying an identity and a lifestyle. In the old days a brand meant something hot or burning. Today it is an identifying logo, a mark or symbol that distinguishes[9] one company or products from others. A good logo is unique and not easily confused with logos of other companies. Many logos[10] are famous and have been around for a long time.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20 How do advertisements become part of our life?

a) Our life depends on them.
b) We can find them everywhere.
c) They solve our problems.
d) They cause us many diseases.

21 Why do different people advertise in different ways?

a) To beat each other.
b) To enjoy themselves.
c) To sell their products.
d) To fight with people.

22 Why are advertisements different from one country to another?

a) As they depend on traditions.
b) As they depend on history.
c) As they depend on culture.
d) All of these.

23 What is the use of the mark or logo on the product?

a) It makes the product cheaper.
b) It helps people to save money.
c) It distinguishes one company or products from others.
d) It tells the expiry date.

24 What does the underlined pronoun "they" mean?

a) Advertisements.
b) Magazines.
c) People.
d) Sponsors.



(1) إعلانات (2) منطاد مراقبة (3) بائع متجول (4) غرض (5) انتخابات (6) فندق صغير (7) يرعى (رعاية) (8) علامات تجارية (9) يميز (10) شعارات

25 What is the best title to the passage?

a) The advantages of advertising.
b) Advertisements and advertising.
c) Life without advertisements.
d) The disadvantages of advertising.

26 What do we mean when we advertise something?

a) It means having much money.
b) It means deceiving people.
c) It means competing other companies.
d) It means calling something to the attention of the public.

27 A world without advertisements isn't ....

a) imagined
b) unique
c) clean
d) polluted

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d:

28 Copyright is a type of intellectual property that protects original works of authorship. Its length of time is the life of the author plus seventy years after his death.

a) حقوق الطبع والنشر هى نوع من الممتلكات العقلية التى تحمى الأعمال الأصلية المؤلفة وعرضها الزمنى هو عمر المؤلف مضافًا إليه سبعين عامًا بعد وفاته.

b) حقوق الطبع والنشر هى نوع من الممتلكات العقلية التى تحمى الأعمال الأصلية المؤلفة وطولها الزمنى هو عمر المؤلف مضافًا إليه سبعين عامًا بعد وفاته.

c) حقوق الطبع والنشر هى نوع من الملكية الفكرية التى تحمى الأعمال الأصلية المؤلفة ومداها الزمنى هو عمر المؤلف مضافًا إليه سبعين عامًا بعد وفاته.

d) حقوق الطبع والنشر هى نوع من الملكية الفكرية التى تحمى الأعمال الأصلية المؤلفة ومداها الزمنى هو عمر المؤلف أو قبل سبعين عامًا بعد وفاته.

29 Some vocational training is being provided for young people from poorer villages as part of Egypt's "Decent Life" initiative. This will help them find a job which secures a stable income.

a) يتم تقديم بعض التدريب المهنى للشباب من القرى الفقيرة كجزء من مساهمة «حياة كريمة» فى مصر وسيساعدهم ذلك فى العثور على وظيفة تتطلب دخلًا ثابتًا.

b) يتم تقديم بعض التدريب المهنى للشباب من القرى الفقيرة كجزء من مبادرة «حياة كريمة» فى مصر وسيساعدهم ذلك فى العثور على وظيفة تؤمن لهم دخلًا ثابتًا.

c) يتم تقديم بعض التدريب التثقيفى للشباب من القرى الفقيرة كجزء من بداية «حياة كريمة» فى مصر وسيساعدهم ذلك فى العثور على وظيفة تؤمن لهم دخلًا ثابتًا.

d) يتم تقديم بعض التدريب التثقيفى للشباب من القرى الفقيرة كجزء من تعاقد «حياة كريمة» فى مصر وسيساعدهم ذلك فى العثور على وظيفة تؤمن لهم دخلًا ثابتًا.

30 ليس التعليم فقط وسيلة للحصول على فرص العمل واكتساب المعرفة، وإنما هو أيضًا أهم طرق تشكيل شخصية ووعى الطلاب الذين سيصبحون مواطنى المستقبل.

a) Education isn't only a means to get job opportunities and acquire knowledge but also it is one of the most important ways of shaping the personality and awareness of students who will become citizens of the future.
b) Education isn't only a means to offer job opportunities and require knowledge but also it is the most important ways of shaping the personality and consciousness of students who will become citizens of the future.
c) Education isn't only a mean to get job opportunities and acquire knowledge but also it is the most important ways of shaping the personality and awareness of students who will become heroes of the future.
d) Education is only a means to get job opportunities and require knowledge but also it is the most important ways of shaping the personality and consciousness of students who becomes citizens of the future.




Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

balanced (adj)	متوازن	omission (n)	حذف/إغفال
bias (n)	تحيز/انحياز	point of view	وجهة نظر
inaccurate (adj)*	غير دقيق	spin (n) (v)	تلفيق/يلفق (قصة)
mislead (v)	يضلل		

* The information seemed inaccurate, so we had to check the sources.

Vocabulary on Reading

access (n) (v) (ed)	مدخل/سبيل/يصل إلى	recent (adj)	حديث/مؤخر
anxious (adj)	قلق	regular (adj)	منتظم
available (adj)	متوافر/متاح	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
check (v) (ed)	يفحص/يراجع	share (v) (d)	يشارك/يشترك فى
constant (adj)	دائم	social (adj)	اجتماعى
cycle (n) (v) (d)	دورة/يركب دراجة	spread (v)	ينشر/ينتشر
effort (n)	مجهود/جهد	stressed (adj)	مضغوط/مجهد
impact (n)	تأثير/تصادم	survey (n)	دراسة/تقييم
managing (adj)	إدارى/مسيطر	the public (n)	العامة/الجمهور
misleading (adj)	مضلل	update (n) (v) (d)	تحديث/يُحدث
objective (adj) (n)	موضوعى/هدف	whilst (conj)	بينما/فى حين
percent (adv)	بالمائة		

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

affair (n)	شأن/أمر	current (adj)	حالى/جار
certain (adj)	محدد/مؤكد	data (n)	بيانات
citizen (n)	مواطن	editor (n)	محرر/رئيس التحرير
course (n)	برنامج تعليمى	imagine (v) (d)	يتخيل

impression (n)	انطباع	reaction (n)	رد فعل
leave out (v)	يغفل/يترك	record (n)	رقم قياسى/ذو رقم قياسى
lecture (n)	محاضرة	slide (n)	شريحة
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر	snowstorm (n)	عاصفة ثلجية
negative (adj) (n)	سلبى/شىء سلبى	spade (n)	جاروف
omit (v) (ted)	يحذف	staff (n)	طاقم العمل
online (adj) (adv)	على الإنترنت	support (v) (ed)	يدعم/يؤيد
persuade (v) (d)	يقنع	traditional (adj)	تقليدى
placement (n)	وضع/ترتيب/تحديد مستوى	trapped (adj)	محتجز/محاصر
position (n) (v) (ed)	وضع/موقع/يضع فى مكان	trust (v) (ed)	يثق فى
positive (adj) (n)	إيجابى/شىء إيجابى	up-to-date (adj)	حديث
post (v) (ed)	ينشر (على الإنترنت)		

Workbook Vocabulary

accurate (adj)	دقيق	long-term (adj)	طويل الأمد
attract (v) (ed)	يجذب	matter (n) (v) (ed)	أمر/يهم
contrasting (adj)	متناقض	organiser (n)	منظم
guidebook (n)	دليل / كتاب إرشاد سياحى	owner (n)	مالك
hire (n) (v) (d)	تأجير/يؤجر	recommend (v) (ed)	يرشح/ يوصى بـ
intend (v) (ed)	يقصد/ينوى	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
lane (n)	حارة (فى طريق)		

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

get anxious	يصبح قلقًا	in my view	فى رأيى
have a social responsibility	لديه مسئولية اجتماعية	in turn	بدوره
have internet access	لديه وسيلة للإنترنت	make sure	يتأكد
in general	بشكل عام	take a photo	يلتقط صورة فوتوغرافية
agree with	يتفق مع	dig out	يحفر
careful about	حريص/حذر بشأن	impact on	تأثير على

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
balance	يوازن بين	balance	توازن	balanced	متوازن
bias	ينحاز/يتحيز	bias	انحياز/تحيز	biased	متحيز
edit	يحرر	edition editor	تحرير/طبعة محرر	editorial	تحريري
omit*	يحذف	omission	حذف	omitted	محذوف
persuade	يقنع	persuasion	إقناع	persuasive	مقنع
stress	يضغط/يجهد	stress	ضغط	stressed	مضغوط/مجهد
support	يدعم/يساند	support	دعم/مساندة	supportive/supporting	داعم/مساند

* - The editor omitted the repeated expressions.
- The omission of the long articles has its benefits.
- The omitted articles were uploaded available online.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
available	متوافر/متاح	accessible	unavailable	غير متاح
balanced	متوازن	fair	biased/unfair	متحيز/غير عادل
bias	تحيز/انحياز	preference/prejudice	fairness/justice	عدالة
constant	دائم	continual/permanent	temporary/occasional	مؤقت/عارض
current	حالي/جارٍ	present/ongoing	old/past	قديم/ماضٍ
mislead	يضلل	cheat	advise/guide	ينصح/يرشد
negative	سلبي	adverse	positive	إيجابي
objective	موضوعي	fair/unbiased	biased/unfair	متحيز/غير عادل
omission	حذف	exclusion	addition/inclusion	إضافة/إدراج
persuade	يقنع	convince	dissuade	يثني
regular	منتظم	common/usual	irregular	غير منتظم
spread	ينشر	distribute	gather	يجمع
support	يدعم	back up/assist	hinder	يعوق
traditional	تقليدي	conventional/ old-fashioned	modern/up-to-date	حديث/عصري

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Every employee shares .... for the company's success and profits.
a) distinction b) event c) responsibility d) stability

2 The disease .... rapidly in the poor area because of polluted water.
a) hid b) checked c) hailed d) spread

3 Pollution has had a huge .... on the environment and the climate.
a) prospect b) impact c) result d) reason

4 Scientists proved that pollution has disastrous effects on the .... ecosystem النظام البيئى.
a) balanced b) biased c) perplexed d) puzzling

5 The hospital conducted a/an .... asking patients to suggest ways in which the service could be improved.
a) search b) experience c) survey d) edition

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)

Social Media has a negative impact on news and society



Social media has become the main source of news. These days sixty-eight percent of people who have internet access get their news from social media. Although this means that we can find news easily and get regular updates(1) on our phones, in my view I think that social media has a negative impact(2) on news and society.

To begin with, this constant cycle of news, which is mostly bad, can make people stressed and worried. A recent survey(3) found that more than half of Americans say they get anxious and sleep badly because of the news.

Next, not everything we read or see on social media is true or legal. If we share it, before checking the facts, we might spread(4) false information. In turn, this means that the public(5) will stop trusting journalists. In addition, piracy is very common on social media. It is very easy to copy books, films and music and to share them, but this means that the people who wrote the books or made the films and music do not get any money for their work.

(1) تحديثات
(2) تأثير
(3) دراسة/تقييم
(4) ينشر
(5) الجمهور
(6) متوازن
(7) الأحداث الجارية
(8) مسئولية

Lastly, social media starts to control what news we see and don't see. Our social media 'friends' become the 'managing editors'. They share news stories they like and agree with, so the news we see is not balanced(6) or objective.

In summary, whilst it is a good thing that we have so much news available and it is easy to keep up-to-date with current affairs(7), we need to avoid the negative effects. It's important to be careful about where we get our news and how often we check it. We also have a social responsibility(8) to make every effort not to spread inaccurate or misleading news and not to copy artistic content without permission.

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

A) Millions to be spent on project that will make our traffic worse!

Car drivers are angry about plans to open a new bus lane from the city centre. The plan, which will cost an enormous LE 200 million, will stop all cars using Yellow Road, one of the most important roads into the city. "Traffic in the city is already terrible," says businesswoman Mrs Joan Bates. "If they close yellow Road, it will be even worse." Another business person who uses South Road regularly, Mr Jason Shelley, says, "Why are they planning to close roads? With so many cars in the city, they need to build new ones. No one wants to take buses because they are too slow."

B) New route to serve university

There are plans for a new bus lane from the city centre to the university. The LE 200-million project will mean closing Yellow Road to cars, but will make the journey by bus 30 minutes faster. The organisers believe the project will help attract students to the university and that the electric buses will also reduce pollution. The bus lane will also be used by bikes and taxis. The project is part of a long-term plan to persuade people to use public transport rather than driving, to help reduce traffic and air pollution.

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

Tarek loves a football team called The Greens. He writes reports on their matches, online, but the reports do not give a balanced point of view! He always puts The Greens' report at the top of the page when they win, but not when they lose! This is bias by placement. He always puts a spin on his stories, too. For example, when The Greens lose, it is because they did not have their best players. However, he does not report the fact that the other team did not have their best players when The Greens win! This is bias by omission. Nevertheless, Tarek's reports are not inaccurate: he does not want to mislead you and the reports tell you what really happened in the match. After all, he cannot change the result!

Reading Text (4) (Workbook)

We still need guidebooks because we cannot rely on the opinion of people online.

With today's social media, it is possible to find online reviews of everything from a local park or café to a famous restaurant or museum. Before you book a holiday, you can read what other people think of a hotel or car hire company and what they recommend you do when you get there. Although this means you can get information very easily, in my view, this is not as useful information as you can get from a guidebook.

To begin with, we need to ask ourselves why people write reviews online. Whilst it is sometimes because people like writing their opinions, at other times they have a reason for writing it. Perhaps they know the owners of the café, or perhaps they are the owners of the café! That is why they give it a good review.

Secondly, who are the people writing the reviews? It is difficult to know this information. If they are 50-year-old Europeans, will they have the same opinion as you? It is very hard to know if you are going to like the same places that they like.

Lastly, we need to remember that guidebook writers are usually experts. You can trust them for accurate information and a balanced point of view. They also know who is using their books, so if the book is intended to be for young people, they will recommend places that young people will like.

To conclude, online reviews are useful, but it's important to remember that they are just people's opinions. If you want to know what experts think, personally I think you should buy a guidebook.



Listening Text

So, moving on, what exactly is bias(1)? First of all, let's look at bias by omission(2). This means leaving something out, for example a fact or a quote, which maybe doesn't support the writer's point of view(3). Let's look at some examples. Imagine Heba over here every morning checks the same website to read the news. She likes the way the articles are written and feels that she is getting good information. But one day her friend, Marwa over here recommends a different news site. When Heba looks at this, she sees completely different news stories with a very different point of view. Let's say that on Heba's website there is a big story about how angry people are that a local factory is about to close. Marwa's website has the same story, but it doesn't mention that anyone is angry. The writer has omitted this information to make us feel differently about the story.

(1) تحيز
(2) حذف
(3) وجهة نظر
(4) وضع/ترتيب
(5) انطباع
(6) تلفيق
(7) رد فعل

The second type of bias might be placement(4). On Heba's website the story is at the top of the page with a big photo and large text. This gives the impression(5) that it is an important story. But on Marwa's website the story is very short on the third page and very low down on the page where people might not see it.

The third type of bias is spin(6)... the writer tries to make the reader feel the same way they do about a topic and doesn't present a balanced point of view. They do this by choosing certain words, for example 'argued the factory manager' instead of 'agreed the factory manager'. Secondly, they choose to include certain information and leave other information out. Thirdly, they give only one point of view, in our example, the journalist gives the reaction(7) of the staff in the factory, but not the managers – it misleads the reader into thinking it is a bad thing. On the other hand, in Marwa's story, it is presented as a good thing. It mentions that there is a lot of pollution caused by the factory. The journalist in this case is trying to...

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. With all the new technology we have, it is hard to .... life after twenty or thirty years.
   a) imagine b) advance c) depart d) decorate
2. The inspector had to .... some of the staff problems in his report.
   a) deny b) shout c) mention d) tell
3. The police suspect that some important details were .... from the report about the accident.
   a) developed b) enclosed c) included d) omitted
4. Both my son and daughter have an allergic .... to peanuts, so they never eat them.
   a) reaction b) reflection c) agreement d) balance
5. We have a monthly meeting which is attended by all the factory administration ....
   a) crew b) staff c) consumers d) explorers

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

balanced متوازن
- giving equal attention to all sides or opinions

bias تحيز/انحياز
- an opinion about whether a person, group or idea is good or bad that influences how you deal with it

inaccurate غير دقيق
- not completely correct

mislead يضلل
- to make someone believe something that is not true by giving them information that is false or not complete

omission حذف
- when you do not include or do not do something

point of view وجهة نظر
- a particular way of thinking about or judging a situation

spin تلفيق قصة
- the way someone talks about information or a situation, especially in order to influence the way people think about it

Notes on Vocabulary

1

staff طاقم العمل فى مؤسسة
the people who work for an organisation
- The company's sales department has a staff of ten.

crew ١- طاقم العمل فى سفينة/ طائرة ٢- مجموعة عاملة بمهارة خاصة
1- all the people who work on a ship or plane
2- a group of people working together with special skills
- My brother joined the crew of a large fishing boat.
- The director chose a the best camera crew for the film.

cast طاقم الممثلين فى فيلم أو مسرحية
all the people who perform in a play, film
- Part of the movie's success lies in the strength of the supporting cast.

	lane حارة (أحد أجزاء طريق سيارات)	*one of the two or three parallel areas on a road to keep traffic apart* ▸ That careless driver changed lanes without signaling.
2	**alley /alleyway** طريق جانبى ضيق بين البنايات عادة يؤدى إلى الطريق الرئيسى	*a narrow street between or behind buildings, not usually used by cars* ▸ A narrow alley/alleyway led up between the houses to the main street.
3	**recent** حديث (مصنوع/تام منذ فترة قصيرة)	▸ All applicants should send a recent photo with their CVs.
	modern حديث/متطور (نتيجة لاستخدام طرق أو وسائل حديثة)	▸ Modern technology has had a huge impact on all of us.
4	**spread** ينشر/ينتشر (أمراض/شائعات)	▸ Rats and flies spread diseases. ▸ The fire spread rapidly because of the strong wind.
	publish ينشر (كتابًا/مجلة/صحيفة)	▸ All of these magazines are published by one organisation.
	prevail يسود/يعم	▸ In the end, justice prevailed and the men were set free.
5	**position** موضع (مثل الوقوف أو الجلوس مثلًا) مكانة/وظيفة/مركز فى الملعب	▸ First, get yourself into a comfortable position. ▸ I'm not sure what I would do if I were in your position.
	location موقع/مكان (للتصوير مثلًا)	▸ We have not found a suitable location for the new offices. ▸ Most of the movie was shot on location in Africa.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

▸ These days sixty-eight percent of people who have internet access get their news from social media.

- لاحظ استخدام الشرطة (hyphen) مع العدد (sixty-eight).

▸ In turn, this means that the public will stop trusting journalists.

- لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (stop) بمعنى يتوقف عن.

▸ .... so the news we see is not balanced or objective.

-لاحظ استخدام الفعل فى صيغة المفرد (is) مع (news) لأنه اسم غير معدود.

• .... and what they recommend you do when you get there.

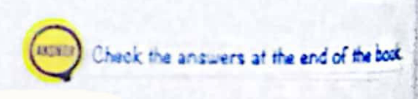
لاحظ استخدام صيغة المصدر (do) بعد الفعل (recommend) إذا تبعته جملة.

• The writer has omitted this information to make us feel differently about the story.

لاحظ استخدام اسم الإشارة المفرد (this) قبل كلمة (information) لأنها اسم غير معدود.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I didn't know you played hockey. In what .... do you play?
   a) site b) location
   c) position d) sight
2. Space travel is one of the wonders of .... science.
   a) old b) recent
   c) vague d) modern
3. Soldiers returning from the war soon .... the disease through most of the region.
   a) spread b) published
   c) prevailed d) sowed
4. We enjoyed the new play as it was very amusing and the .... were very clever.
   a) staff b) crew
   c) cast d) audience
5. The lorry was travelling at 50 kilometres per hour in the slow .... as it carried a lot of goods.
   a) lane b) alley
   c) passage d) tunnel





Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: *Practice makes perfect.*

Key vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Workbook Vocabulary & Vocabulary Notes

1 The United Nations is fighting all forms of .... against women or minorities.
a) omission b) research c) justice d) bias

2 Some websites give people .... information to sell valueless products.
a) accurate b) inaccurate c) reliable d) valuable

3 The young journalist .... a story about a trip to Athens to meet one of the authors as an excuse for not attending the conference.
a) spun b) orbited c) evolved d) returned

4 The news channel was praised for its .... view of the two sides of the war.
a) biased b) balanced c) unjust d) perplexing

5 You can use a complicated password to prevent people from .... your computer.
a) checking b) stealing c) accessing d) repairing

6 The new medicine will be made .... after extensive research and experiments.
a) avoidable b) applicable c) unavailable d) available

7 The interests and rights of the .... living abroad are protected by the embassy of their country.
a) spies b) citizens c) editors d) staffs

8 The famous writer was the .... of a science magazine as well as an article and novel writer.
a) musician b) editor c) seller d) photographer

9 The information in this report is very old. Please, can you .... it?
a) date b) up-to-date c) make up d) update

10 A group of terrorists have claimed .... for yesterday's bomb attack.
a) diversity b) adversity c) personality d) responsibility

11 My father is a/an .... customer of that shop because he likes the service there.
a) regular b) gradual c) irregular d) sudden

12 It's nice to have someone you can .... your problems with.
a) share b) divide c) split d) devise

13 Most young men and women keep in touch with their friends through .... media.
a) economic b) sociable c) social d) hateful

14 Many language .... are run by the British Council in Egypt.
a) causes b) aspects c) carols d) courses

15 The idea that women shouldn't work is really a/an .... and hateful view of women's place in society.
a) modern b) traditional c) logical d) imitative

16 The Ministry of Education .... mainly textbooks and educational materials.
a) stretches b) prevails c) spreads d) publishes

17 The famous runner broke the world .... for the 1500 metres race.
a) neck b) promise c) record d) law

18 We need the .... of all people to overcome the economic effects of the coronavirus.
a) efforts b) objectives c) impacts d) exports

19 Journalists and TV .... were waiting outside the hotel where the wedding of the famous actor was taking place.
a) staffs b) casts c) crews d) citizens

20 Don't be .... by his friendly appearance—he's really a strong competitor.
a) defected b) misled c) inspected d) oppressed

21 I am surprised by the .... of the best player from the team.
a) promotion b) admission c) omission d) responsibility

22 Rainfall is a main link in the water .... and a measure for changing climate.
a) picture b) programme c) ring d) cycle

23 That was the most boring .... I have ever attended in my college.
a) article b) lecture c) essay d) view

24 Experts believe that women now represent fifty .... of the workforce.
a) per day b) per year c) percent d) per week

25 The company is in a bad financial .... because of overproduction and distribution problems.
a) position b) location c) site d) scene

26 The new road to Upper Egypt is a highway with three ....
a) streets b) lines c) lanes d) alleys

27 The smell of freshly baked cookies .... the children to the kitchen.
a) attacked b) attracted c) contacted d) conceived

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

28 It had taken a great deal of .... to get my father to come with us.
a) persuade b) persuasion c) persuaded d) persuasive

29 The fridge keeps food at a constant low temperature. The word "constant" is the opposite of the word "..................".
a) permanent b) negative c) positive d) temporary

30 As a young actor, you have to be extremely careful .... the roles you accept.
a) for b) at c) in d) about

31 Before the exams, students feel .... and need to calm down.
a) stress b) stressful c) stressed d) stressless

32 Working outside can mean too much sun exposure, which .... turn can lead to skin diseases.
a) in b) for c) at d) with

33 The establishment of school libraries contributes to improving the learning process in ....
a) special b) vain c) public d) general

34 Scientists need to be objective when doing research to get good results. The adjective "objective" is similar in meaning to ....
a) fair b) biased c) unjust d) intelligent

35 Winning an Olympic medal had a big impact .... Ferial Ashraf's life.
a) at b) for c) on d) with

36 Grandfather has a traditional view of women thinking that they should stay at home. The synonym of the word "traditional" is ....
a) modern b) old-fashioned c) recent d) updated

37 My brother .... anxious when the exam results were near.
a) got b) fell c) turned d) failed

38 I agree .... Mr Ahmed, but I cannot accept his plan to improve the company.
a) to b) with c) about d) for

39 My family support me to succeed in life. The verb "support" is the antonym of the verb "..................".
a) assist b) pledge c) hinder d) strengthen

40 The developed world .... a responsibility towards poorer countries.
a) made b) has c) turned d) missed





B Language

1 Present perfect المضارع التام

Form
Subj. + have/ has + P.P. ▶ • They are happy. They have won the cup.

Negative
Subj. + haven't/ hasn't + P.P. ▶ • They haven't left the stadium yet.

Interrogative
Wh-word + have/ has + subj. + P.P.? ▶ • What have you done since the morning?
Have/ Has + subj. + P.P.? ▶ • Has Karam lost his money?

Usage الاستخدام

1. يعبر عن حدث بدأ فى الماضى وما زال مستمرًا حتى الآن غالبًا مع for وبعدها المدة المحسوبة أو since وبعدها نقطة بداية الحدث فى الماضى.
   - Mona has studied English for ten years. (She is still studying.)
   - We have been at this school since 2019. (We are still at the school.)
2. يستخدم لحدث انتهى قريبًا ونتيجته واضحة فى الحاضر.
   - Hala cannot play tennis because she has hurt her hand.
3. نستخدم أيضًا المضارع التام للتحدث عن تجارب أو أحداث سابقة (دون ذكر زمن وقوع الحدث)، غالبًا مع ever أو never.
   - I have never eaten Chinese food.
   - Have you ever ridden a camel?
4. كما نستخدم المضارع التام للتحدث عن الأحداث الحديثة التى لا نعتبرها ماضيًا (غالبًا مع just):
   - Leila isn't here. She's just gone out.
5. كما نستخدم المضارع التام للتحدث عن الأحداث التى لم تحدث حتى الآن (غالبًا مع yet).
   - I haven't received a reply to my email yet.
6. كما يستخدم لحدث انتهى فى وقت غير معروف فى الماضى (التركيز يكون على الحدث، ووقت الحدث ليس مهمًا).
   - Omar has been to Paris four times.
7. مع الكلمات والتعبيرات الآتية:
   - for, since, already, yet, just, ever, never, so far, up till now, lately, recently, how long, over the years, etc.

Key words		Examples
already	بالفعل	I have already bought a lot of bread.
just	حالًا	He has just come back from his holiday.
ever	من قبل	Have you ever played hockey? This is the most impressive film I've ever watched.
never	مطلقًا/أبدًا	I have never flown a plane before. I have never met a kinder person than my mother.
yet	حتى الآن (النفى/السؤال)	She hasn't finished cleaning the flat yet. Has your course started yet?
so far/up till now	حتى الآن	Salah has scored 2 goals in this match up till now.
lately, recently	حديثًا	Have you bought any shirts recently/lately?
over	على مر (السنين)	Egypt has changed over the last 8 years.
How long ...?		How long has he had that camera?
for (duration)	منذ مدة	I haven't seen Mariam for 3 months.
since	منذ نقطة بداية	She hasn't visited us since last May.

have gone (to)/ have been (to)/ have been in

have been to — ذهب إلى مكان وعاد منه

- Ahmed, where have you been?

have gone to — ذهب إلى مكان ولم يعد أو فى الطريق إلى هناك

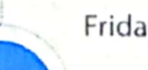
- Where has Omar gone? I can't find him.

have been in — يمكث فى مكان/يعيش

- I've been in Cairo since 2000.

For
- a day/a month/a year
- weeks/months/years
- several days/weeks/years
- 2 hours
- ages
- a long time
- the last week/year

Since
- + ماض بسيط he left school.
- Friday/Monday أيام
- last June/April شهور
- 2 o'clock ساعات
- 2000 سنين
- + his childhood عبارة اسمية
- last week/last year
- Then منذ ذلك الحين (بدل ماض بسيط)





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- I .... as a translator for 20 years.

a) worked b) had worked
c) was working d) have worked

الإجابة هى (d) لأن الجملة تذكر مدة العمل كخبرة سابقة وبدون وقت محدد.

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Oh! I .... my passport. What should I do?
a) have lost b) lose
c) had lost d) am losing

2 Adel hasn't contacted me since he .... Cairo.
a) had left b) has left
c) left d) leaves

3 Belal is not here. He has .... to the dentist.
a) been b) gone
c) reached d) visited

4 We haven't travelled by train .... years.
a) by b) since
c) last d) for

5 We can't go home by bus because the last bus ....
a) leaves b) hasn't left
c) has just left d) left

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Extra Points

1 Subject + last + past simple + when + past simple.
- I last caught fish when I was in Hurghada. (since)

لتحويل الجمل التى بها last إلى since ننفى المضارع التام.

- I haven't eaten fish since I visited my uncle in Alex.

2 The last time + subj. + past simple + was + مدة + ago. (was in + سنة)
- The last time Ali played football was 10 years ago. (was in 2012)
- Ali hasn't played football since 2012. (for 10 years)

3 It's + مدة + since + subj. + last + past simple
- It's 6 years since I last saw Rania. (since/for)
- I haven't seen Rania since 2016. (for 6 years)

4 "never" with comparative adjectives and "ever" with superlative ones.

نستخدم never مع صفات المقارنة وever مع التفضيل.

- I've never bought a faster car than Peugeot.
- Peugeot is the fastest car I've ever bought.

5 With expressions such as: This is the first time/It's the second time.
- This is the first time Alaa has visited a European country.

6 With words and expressions such as: today/this morning/evening/week/month.

يستخدم مع الكلمات والتعبيرات السابقة إذا كانت هذه الفترات الزمنية مستمرة إلى لحظة الكلام.

- He has written 3 reports this morning. (هذا الصباح لم ينتـه، فلربما يكتب تقارير أخرى)

7 We often use the present perfect with already, yet and still to express surprise.
غالبًا ما نستخدم المضارع التام مع كلمات already و still للتعبير عن الدهشة.

- Our bus still hasn't arrived. It's too late.
- Has he finished already? How quick he is!

8 We use the present perfect with (after, when, as soon as) to refer to the future.
نستخدم المضارع التام مع الروابط الزمنية للإشارة للمستقبل.

- When/After/As soon as I have finished my work, I will help you.
- I'll leave the place when/after I've taken the money.

9 The present perfect and the present perfect continuous.
قد يستخدم المضارع التام والتام المستمر لبيان حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال مستمرًا، ولكن الأفعال الآتية لا تستخدم في الاستمرار فنستخدم معها المضارع التام فقط.

like, dislike, hate, enjoy, love, prefer, believe, think, notice, remember, understand, realise, seem, know, see, hear, feel, taste, look, smell, sound, be, contain, fit, include, belong, own, want, mean, appear, have, cost, owe, need, surprise

- He has owned this car for 5 years. He doesn't intend to sell it.
- I have had this camera since I got married. It's still in a good condition.

10 since + noun, present perfect
يمكن استخدام الاسم بعد since والجملة الأخرى مضارع تام.

- He hasn't visited us since his graduation.

11 since = as (for giving reasons)
بما أن (لأن)
تستخدم لبيان سبب اتخاذ شخص قرارًا بالقيام بشيء ما وفي أي زمن.

- We decided to go to the beach since it was a nice day.

2 Present perfect and past simple

- يستخدم كلا الزمنين للحديث عن الأحداث والمواقف التي انتهت.
والفرق:
- المضارع التام حدث انتهى وله علاقة بالمضارع.
- الماضي البسيط انتهى وليس له علاقة بالمضارع.

- I've made a cake. Would you like a slice?
- I didn't have much to do this morning, so I made a cake'.

Present perfect	Past simple
يستخدم المضارع التام لحدث تم ولكن له علاقة بالمضارع. He has gone to Aswan. (He's still there) Hany has written five reports this morning. ما زال الوقت في الصباح وله علاقة بلحظة الكلام. I've spoken to the prime minister. (He's still alive.) He has lived in Cairo for two years. (He's in Cairo now.)	يستخدم الماضي البسيط لحدث تم وليس له علاقة بالمضارع. He went to Aswan last year. نحدد متى حدث الفعل مع الماضي البسيط. Hany wrote five reports yesterday morning. I once spoke to Professor Zewail. ليس للحدث علاقة بالمضارع لأن الدكتور زويل توفي. He lived in Cairo for two years. (He doesn't live in Cairo now.)

A: Have you ever read any of Charles Dickens' stories?
B: Yes, we studied *Oliver Twist* last year.

المضارع التام للخبر والماضي البسيط للتفاصيل.

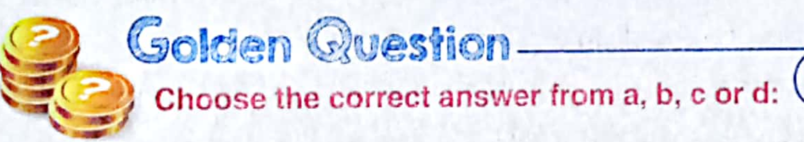
- I've found your glasses. They were in the car.
- The President has arrived in London. He was met by the Prime Minister.

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's ages since we last .... some good news.
   a) have heard b) had heard
   c) heard d) were hearing
2. It's one of the most magnificent views I ....
   a) have ever seen b) have never seen
   c) had seen d) saw
3. It's a month .... Hend last visited her uncle.
   a) for b) since
   c) of d) to
4. It is the first time I .... of anything like that.
   a) had heard b) hear
   c) am hearing d) have heard
5. I .... Omar for three years - we still meet once a month.
   a) have known b) have been knowing
   c) know d) had known



Check the answers at the end of the book.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 

- I .... this car for ten years. I don't intend to sell it.
  a) have had b) had
  c) have d) was having



Language Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Check your understanding

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My grandmother .... ill since last week.
a) is b) was c) had been d) has been

2 The police .... the thief yet.
a) haven't caught b) didn't catch c) hasn't caught d) don't catch

3 I .... him for five years. I don't know where he is.
a) don't see b) didn't see c) haven't seen d) hadn't seen

4 She has been in Spain .... over three years.
a) since b) for c) yet d) already

5 **A:** When are you going to do your homework? **B:** I've .... done it.
a) yet b) ever c) already d) still

6 It started raining on Saturday. It .... since then.
a) didn't stop b) doesn't stop c) hadn't stopped d) hasn't stopped

7 My younger brother .... three centimetres this month.
a) grew b) has grown c) had grown d) is growing

8 Look what you .... How can we clean the floor now?
a) have done b) has done c) will do d) had done

9 Let me show the picture that I .... this week.
a) am drawing b) will be drawing c) have drawn d) drew

10 I .... all my work. I am free now.
a) do b) am doing c) have been doing d) have done

11 I can't phone my parents because I .... my mobile phone.
a) lose b) have lost c) would lose d) had lost

12 You can stop looking for his watch. He ....
a) had just found it b) hasn't found it yet
c) has never found it d) has just found it

13 .... you ever heard of him? He is a world-famous violinist.
a) Haven't b) Was c) Didn't d) Had

14 It is the best holiday I ....
a) had ever had b) am ever having
c) have ever had d) was ever having

15 You're always late. This is the third time you .... late this week.
a) had been b) have been c) were d) will be

16 You can't see Tamer before Wednesday. He .... London for a few days on business.
a) had been in b) has been to c) has gone to d) was in

17 Since the day he .... ill, he .... a lot of medicine.

a) was/had taken
b) was/has taken
c) is/has taken
d) is/has been taken

18 **A:** What's the time? **B:** I'm sorry I .... My watch ....

a) don't know/had stopped
b) can't tell/stopped
c) didn't know/stopped
d) don't know/has stopped

19 Our maths teacher .... us a lot of homework last week but he .... us very much so far this week.

a) gave/hasn't given
b) has given/didn't give
c) gave/didn't given
d) had given/didn't give

20 **A:** .... somewhere before?

B: Yes, I saw you at your sister's wedding.

a) Didn't we meet
b) Hadn't we met
c) Aren't we meeting
d) Haven't we met

21 You'll feel a lot better after you .... a rest.

a) had b) will have c) had had d) have had

22 Why has nothing ....?

a) been done yet b) done yet c) been done still d) never done

23 Food prices .... rapidly in the past few months.

a) had risen b) have been risen c) have risen d) rise

24 My cousins have .... Assuit since their childhood.

a) been to b) been in c) gone to d) gone in

25 Have you finished your task ....? You are very fast.

a) ever b) just c) yet d) already

26 I met Ahmed twice last month. I haven't seen him since ....

a) when b) than c) that d) then

27 Please .... until after the plane ....

a) not smoke/ takes off
b) don't smoke/ took off
c) don't smoke/ has taken off
d) not smoke/ has taken off

28 Which sentence is in the correct form in the present perfect tense?

a) I have done it yesterday.
b) I haven't done it lately.
c) I have done it yet.
d) I haven't ever done it recently.

29 Which sentence is in the correct form in the present perfect tense?

a) He has been to hospital since last Tuesday.
b) He has gone to hospital since last Tuesday.
c) He has gone in hospital since last Tuesday.
d) He has been in hospital since last Tuesday.

30 Which sentence is in the correct form in the present perfect tense?

a) Did you have seen him before?
b) I've been to America twice before.
c) I didn't have seen him before.
d) I'm here since last week.

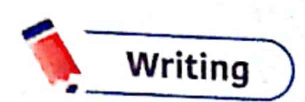




Lessons 3 & 4

C General Skills

Don't forget to study this part from the Skills Booklet





Persuasive Essay المقال الإقناعي

A persuasive essay is a type of writing where you use logic and arguments to convince readers of your point of view, using solid evidence such as research, stating facts, examples, and quotes from experts.

المقال الإقناعي هو نوع من الكتابة حيث يتم استخدام المنطق والحجج لإقناع القراء بوجهة نظرك، باستخدام أدلة قوية مثل البحث، وتوضيح الحقائق، والأمثلة، والاقتباسات من الخبراء.

Outlines of a Persuasive Essay

Introduction	Main Body 1	Main Body 2	Main Body 3	Conclusion
• Introduce topic • Present both opinions briefly • State your position clearly	• Topic sentence • Example/supporting statements	• Topic sentence • Example/supporting statements	• Topic sentence • Example/supporting statements	• Sum up, re-stating your opinion in different words • Suggest a solution or action

Model Persuasive essay

Social media

Social media sites are a great platform for people to connect with their loved ones. It helps in increasing communication and making connections with people all over the world. Although some people believe that social media sites are harmful, they are also very beneficial.

Social media sites are everywhere now. In other words, they have taken over almost every sphere of life. They come with both, advantages as well as disadvantages. If we talk about the educational field, these sites enhance education by having an influence on the learners. They can explore various topics for their projects.

Furthermore, the business field benefits a lot from social media sites. Companies use social media sites to connect better with their potential clients and business partners. Moreover, regarding finding jobs, people use the sites to connect with employers and firms that give them a broad opportunity to find better jobs.

Social media sites have created a massive presence in today's world. While there are many types of these sites, some are more famous than others. For instance, Facebook is the largest social media site. It has more than 1 billion users which keep increasing every day. Moreover, it also helps you promote your business or brand through advertisements.

In short, social media sites are a double-edged weapon. It depends on how we use them. Anything in excess is harmful; likewise, social media sites are too. Use them for your benefit and do not let them control your life.

Test Yourself (in) 20

Unit 1
Lessons 3 & 4

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 A great number of people in Egypt have .... to the internet whether on a computer or a mobile phone.
a) passage b) access c) entry d) exit

2 The newspaper published a/an .... and objective report about the reasons for losing the medals in the Olympics.
a) biased b) unfair c) balanced d) misleading

3 The critic is well-known for judging all movies without .... against/towards any actor or actress.
a) bias b) base c) basis d) basics

4 Some websites .... young people by making them buy cheap products at a high price.
a) promote b) plead c) assist d) mislead

5 I receive .... for the programmes on my mobile phone every now and then, which make my mobile phone better.
a) dates b) viruses c) updates d) outdates

6 Businessmen sometimes hire a special consultant who can offer advice on managing his financial ....
a) centres b) affairs c) refers d) consumption

7 Thousands of people were .... in their houses because of the snowstorm.
a) trapped b) freed c) rewarded d) puzzled

8 It is difficult to compare statistical .... from different countries.
a) truth b) data c) columns d) timetables

9 I .... Emad for a long time. He is my best friend.
a) don't know b) haven't known c) have known d) knew

10 There is no bread left because we .... it all.
a) have been eaten b) have eaten c) has been eaten d) had eaten

11 Don't ask me what cauliflower قرنبيط tastes like. I .... eating it.
a) am not trying b) didn't try c) don't try d) haven't tried

12 I'm taking my sister out as she .... any sun for a long time.
a) hasn't had b) haven't had c) hadn't been d) will have

13 "Who .... this picture?" the teacher asks.
a) would draw b) drawn c) has drawn d) draws

14 She is sorry, she .... so rude.
a) had been b) will be c) has been being d) has been

15 **A:** Have you .... England? **B:** No, I haven't.
a) being b) been to c) gone to d) been in

16 I've visited many countries, but I .... to the USA.

a) have never been **b)** has never been

c) is never been **d)** having never been

17 Which of the following is correctly punctuated?

a) Mr Ayman who was sitting behind the desk, gave me a big smile.

b) Mr Ayman - who was sitting behind the desk- gave me a big smile.

c) Mr Ayman, who was sitting behind the desk, gave me a big smile.

d) Mr Ayman, who was sitting behind the desk gave me a big smile.

18 What is a hook?

a) The last sentence of your introduction paragraph that grabs the reader's attention.

b) The first sentence of your introduction paragraph that loses the reader's attention.

c) The first sentence of your introduction paragraph that grabs the reader's attention

d) The first sentence of your conclusion paragraph that grabs the reader's attention.

19 If you write a birthday greeting to a colleague, this will be a kind of ....

a) a formal email **b)** an informal email

c) a biography essay **d)** a narrative essay

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

"She's coming. Hide it quickly!" The girls quickly shoved[1] it under the table and acted as if nothing had happened. When Miss Farida entered the classroom, everyone stood up and greeted her. She gave them a smile. The girls noticed that there was sadness in her eyes.

Poor Miss Farida. They wished with all their hearts that they could do something to help her, but there was nothing that they could do. Miss Farida told them that she would miss them. She explained that she would give anything to stay as their form teacher but she had no choice. Her father was gravely[2] ill. Her mother was too elderly to be left alone with him. She simply had to return to her hometown in a neighboring country.



Looking at the list of e-mail addresses in her hand, she promised she would keep in touch with them. She encouraged them to study and play hard and to always give their best. Then she got ready to leave. Our class monitor[3] walked over to her and handed her a small package[4]. With tears[5] in her eyes, Miss Farida opened it. "It's from our trip to Siwa last term. Look at it and remember us always," said our monitor. She nodded[6]. "Thank you. I'll frame[7] it and put it up on the wall of my room." Then she left. Miss Farida is one of the best teachers who devotes[8] all her life to people, and she is never forgotten because of her cooperation and tolerance[9].

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20 The best title to the passage is ".................".

a) Miss Farida's departure

b) The good relation between Miss Farida and her class

c) The gift to Miss Farida

d) Miss Farida's good qualities and her strong personality



(1) دفعت (2) بخطورة (3) مراقب (4) صندوق (5) دموع (6) هز رأسه (7) يبرز (8) يكرس الجهد (9) تسامح

21 Miss Farida was ....

a) the school headmistress

b) a good student at a secondary school

c) the class' teacher

d) ungrateful to her parents

22 Miss Farida had to leave the school because ....

a) she was ill and needed to be looked after by her parents

b) she hated her work at the school

c) the students were naughty

d) she had to return to her hometown in a neighbouring country

23 Miss Farida planned to keep in touch with the students by ....

a) sending letters

b) exchanging e-mails

c) visiting each other

d) meeting at the nearby club

24 The pronoun "It" refers to ....

a) Miss Farida's photo at school

b) the picture of Miss Farida's house

c) the picture of Miss Farida's parents

d) the gift for Miss Farida

25 The synonym of the word "devotes" is ....

a) dedicates

b) takes

c) withdraws

d) lets

26 The students will remember Miss Farida because of ....

a) the gift they gave her

b) her wealth and happiness

c) her good qualities

d) her care for her parents

27 Miss Farida encouraged her students to ....

a) study hard and do their best

b) play hard and give their best

c) study hard and not to play

d) both A and B

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d:

28 Bias is defined as any tendency which prevents balanced consideration of a subject. It is usually caused by a writer or reporter's wish to impose his personal attitude on others.

a) يُعــرَّف التحيز بأنه أى اتجاه يمنع النظر المتوازن للموضوع، وعادة ما يكون ســببه رغبة الكاتب أو المراســل فى فرض موقفه الشــخصى على الآخرين.

b) يُعــرَّف التحيز بأنه أى توجيه يمنع النظر المتوازن للموضوع، وعادة ما يكون ســببه رغبة الكاتب أو المراســل فى عرض موقفه الشخصى على الآخرين.

c) يُعــرَّف التحيز بأنه أى اتجاه يمنع النظر الموزون للموضوع، وعادة ما يكون نتيجته رغبة الكاتب أو المراســل فى فرض موقفه الشــخصى على الآخرين.

d) يُعــرَّف التحيز بأنه أى اتجاه يمنع النظر الموزون للموضوع، وعادة ما يكون ســببه رغبة الكاتب أو المراســل فى عرض موقفه الشــخصى على الآخرين.

29 يعزو كثير من الاقتصاديين ارتفاع الأسعار إلى جشع التجار الذين يسعون إلى الكسب السريع دون مراعاة الأحوال الاقتصادية للمستهلكين.

a) Many economists attribute the rise in prices to the humility of merchants who seek to make quick profits without taking into account the economic conditions of consumers.
b) Many economists attribute the rise in prices to the greed of merchants who seek to make quick profits without taking into account the economic conditions of producers.
c) Many economists contribute the rise in prices to the greed of merchants who seek to make quick profits without taking into account the economic conditions of consumers.
d) Many economists attribute the rise in prices to the greed of merchants who seek to make quick profits without taking into account the economic conditions of consumers.

30 من أهم سمات المدرس الجيد القدرة على تحفيز الطلاب على الأداء المبدع والإنجاز الحقيقي وإشاعة البهجة بينهم.

a) The most important characteristics of a good teacher are the ability to innovate students to creative performance and real achievement, and to spread joy among them.
b) The most important characteristics of a good teacher are the ability to motivate students to creative performance and real achievement, and to spread joy among them.
c) The most important characteristics of a good teacher are the ability to motivate students to creative performance and factual achievement, and to publish joy among them.
d) The most important characteristics of a good teacher are the ability to motivate students to creative performance and real achievement, and to prevail joy among them.

Study

Chapter 1
(Great Expectations)

Vocabulary

ankle (n)	كاحل القدم	horror (n)	رعب/ فزع
arrest (v) (ed)	يقبض على	impression (n)	انطباع
blacksmith (n)	حداد	leg-irons (n)	أغلال قدم
Christmas Eve (n)	عشية عيد الميلاد	marsh (n)	مستنقع
convict (n)	مدان/ سجين	missing	مفقود
file (n)	مبرد	mist (n)	ضباب
get away (v)	يهرب	nuts (n)	مكسرات
grab (v) (bed)	يمسك بقوة	orphan (n)	يتيم
graveyard (n)	مقبرة	pie (n)	فطيرة
grumpy (adj)	شديد الغضب	set off (v)	يبدأ رحلة/ يتجه الى
guilty (adj)	مذنب	take off (v)	يخلع
handcuffs (n)	أغلال/ قيود	warning (n)	تحذير

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

as usual	كالمعتاد	got my breath back	استعدت أنفاسى (هدأت)
commit a crime	يرتكب جريمة	I could run no more	لم أتمكن من الركض أكثر من ذلك
feel guilty about	يشعر بالذنب بشأن	jumped out of my skin	خرجت من جلدى(تعبير يدل على الخوف الكبير)
complain about	يشكو من	sorry for	حزين من أجل
point to	يشير إلى	walk towards	يمشى فى اتجاه





Great Expectations Exercises
Chapter (1)

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The ground near the river is very soft and wet because there's a .... there.
a) mass b) marsh c) maze d) march

2 A .... is a person whose job is making things by hand out of metal that has been heated to a high temperature.
a) shepherd b) blacksmith c) guilty d) blackmailer

3 The police clamped .... around the wrists of the criminals and took them away.
a) handcuffs b) handicaps c) handballs d) handbrakes

4 The little girl nearly jumped out of her .... when she saw the snake.
a) complexion b) legs c) feet d) skin

5 They used a .... to make the sharp rough metal smooth.
a) file b) tire c) pile d) tile

6 I reached out a hand to steady myself against the house while I got my .... back.
a) arm b) hearth c) breath d) breeze

7 He jumped up from the table, ... his hat, and ran to the bus stop.
a) stabbed b) grabbed c) rubbed d) robbed

8 The police reported that two thieves managed to get ....
a) by b) around c) ahead d) away

9 On the way to the jail, the .... overpowered his guard, and escaped.
a) convict b) judge c) verdict d) convert

10 People who .... serious crimes should be sent to prison.
a) commit b) make c) play d) take

11 The police put .... around the prisoner's ankles to stop him from escaping.
a) iron-brakes b) iron-rations c) iron-legs d) iron-lungs

12 We'd like to set .... for Cairo by 10 o'clock tomorrow morning.
a) up b) off c) aside d) back

13 A .... is an area of land, often near a church, where people are buried.
a) memorandum b) hall c) graveyard d) pitch

14 I .... really guilty about forgetting my mother's birthday again.
a) get b) turn c) fall d) feel

15 Please drive carefully, it is hard to make out the path in the ....
a) mist b) avenue c) air d) breeze

Advanced & Open
General Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: إجابة هذه التدريبات موجودة بنهاية الكتاب.

1 The conflict between the two companies could have caused a major diplomatic .... between China and America.
a) incident b) event c) occasion d) festival

2 New online platforms منصات such as "WATCH iT!" allow you to watch videos on ....
a) call b) offer c) demand d) duty

3 A silkworm .... a cover that can give 800 metres of pure silk.
a) orbits b) revolves c) activates d) spins

4 The police were .... that the house was robbed by a professional gang.
a) negative b) positive c) efficient d) accepted

5 Meeting Sally, his wife, changed the whole .... of Mike's life.
a) road b) trip c) course d) programme

6 The supermarket sells a special sort of butter that .... easily even when cold.
a) divides b) publishes c) prevails d) spreads

7 When the two planes crashed, the small plane's wing was damaged on ....
a) impact b) accident c) effect d) repulse

8 The principal took the .... that the students didn't need music classes.
a) situation b) position c) location d) post

9 My younger sister has a marked .... for learning languages.
a) bias b) balance c) present d) award

10 This digital audio player .... multiple formats of videos.
a) assists b) supports c) defies d) replies

11 I sold my flat last week. I .... it since I graduated from university.
a) was having b) had c) have had d) had had

12 When we .... the forest, it .... darker.
a) have arrived/has been getting b) arrived/was getting
c) arrive/is getting d) arrive/has been getting

13 A few years ago, it .... that certain cells of the human body never ....
a) was found/die b) had been found/dies
c) has been found/died d) was found/dies

14 I just wish they .... here to see me now.
a) are b) had been c) were d) will be

15 Since his mother .... ill, he will clean the flat for her.
a) is b) was being c) had been d) was

16 **A:** 'Do you mind if I smoke?' **B:** 'Well, I'd rather you ....'.
a) don't b) didn't c) aren't d) hadn't

17 She does not speak our language, yet she seems to understand what we say. Yet here means ....
a) so far b) because c) but d) till now

18 She hasn't talked to her neighbours since the police ....
a) interviewing b) interviewed c) was interviewed d) interview

19 I have written stories .... as long as I can remember.
a) for b) since c) when d) until

20 Things have certainly changed; there .... lots of small old houses around here when I .... young.
a) are/have been b) would be/was
c) were/would have been d) used to be/was



Al-Adwaa Test

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The court ruled that the company who owns the ship *"Ever Given"* should be fined to .... the financial losses of the Suez Canal.
a) punish b) compensate c) penalise d) rule

2 The aim of the scientific study is to .... how climate change can affect animal behaviour.
a) investigate b) duplicate c) ignore d) increase

3 A big truck had turned over on its side, and it .... the road.
a) listed b) booked c) blocked d) constructed

4 At the school theatre, the play was made shorter by the .... of two scenes.
a) omission b) addition c) intrusion d) inclusion

5 The strong .... pulled the swimmer out to sea and he was rescued by a fishing boat.
a) present b) current c) drought d) currant

6 The company gives all applicants .... tests to determine their level of proficiency.
a) psychology b) clue c) placement d) final

7 The editor refused to publish the report as it was full of .... errors about the elections.
a) factual b) true c) fictional d) common

8 Don't be misled into thinking that scientific research is easy. The verb "misled" can be the synonym of the verb "................".
a) cheated b) promoted c) assisted d) affected

9 **A:** Where .... at three? **B:** I was at the library.
a) have you gone b) was he c) you saw him d) were you

10 We don't live in Assuit now but we .... there for thirty years.
a) have lived b) lived c) are living d) live

11 Yesterday while I .... in class, I felt a terrible pain in my head.
a) had been sitting b) am sitting c) was sitting d) sat

12 Hamid's hair is wet because he .... a shower.
a) has just had b) has never had c) has ever had d) isn't having

13 Tamer .... a lot of health problems since he started living in that polluted city.
a) is having b) has had c) had d) has

14 The doctor approached the patient with a smile and told him that he .... better.
a) is looking b) has been looking c) was looking d) looks

15 Doaa .... at the nearby school for three years when she was young.
a) works b) is working c) has worked d) worked

16 Mr Yang .... hospital for three weeks now because of corona diseases.
a) has been in b) was c) has been to d) has gone to

17 They asked what time the department store would open ....
a) ? b) , c) . d) ;

18 Which of the following is correctly punctuated?
a) "Looking straight at her," he said, "I can't help you."
b) "Looking straight at her, he said," "I can't help you."
c) Looking straight at her, he said, "I can't help you."
d) Looking straight at her, "he said," "I can't help you."

19 When we send an email, we should write ....
a) the email of the sender and the receiver at the end
b) the subject of the email at the beginning
c) the name of the sender at the beginning
d) nothing before writing the body of the email

20 "In short, smoking is a bad habit which should be fought by all means." This sentence can be a/an .... of a persuasive paragraph or essay.

a) topic sentence b) hook sentence c) introduction d) conclusion

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Human beings are plagued by all kinds of diseases and millions of people die from them. Many of these diseases such as diabetes[1], polio[2], whooping[3] cough and diphtheria[4] can be fatal[5] and in the past, people used to die from them. However, with modern technology and a lot of research, scientists and doctors have come up with various ways to cure these diseases, and consequently[6], many lives are saved.

In doing medical research, doctors have come face to face with many problems. One such problem is the opposition that comes from animal activists[7]. They are against the inhuman treatment of animals. They argue that in conducting[8] their medical research, doctors put animals through a very painful process and this should be stopped.

To get their message across, animal activists are even willing to resort to the use of violence. Many animal protection groups have broken into laboratories illegally to 'rescue' animals.

In many cases, the animals were part of research for the cure for various diseases and visual defects in babies. Researchers have come up with many cures in the process of working with animals and on animals. In spite of what animal activists think, most researchers do not treat animals cruelly. In fact, mistreated[9] animals which are in agony[10] will affect the quality of research so that results obtained are not really reliable. Thus, researchers do try to treat animals as well as possible.

In the long run, animal activists can cause serious damage to the future of medicine. With their persistent campaigning[11], much of the public supports their cause. People with AIDS or cancer need doctors to do research to save their lives, and often it is a case where animal research is crucial[12] before any cure can be found.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 A lot of fatal diseases can be cured today because of ....

a) their weakness b) the hot weather
c) modern technology and a lot of research d) the existence of animals

22 The use of 'plagued' (paragraph 1) suggests that diseases ....

a) are deadly b) are annoying
c) have just been discovered by scientists d) have been bothering people for some time

23 The best title to the passage is '..........'.

a) diseases and experimenting on animals. b) diseases in the past and present
c) how to cure diseases d) the spread of diseases

24 The belief of animal activists is that ....

a) animals should not experience any pain in experiments
b) animals should not be sacrificed in experiments
c) animals should only be used in experiments that aim to cure human disease
d) animals should be treated well so that it does not affect the quality of research

25 According to paragraph 3, animal activists may resort to .... to champion their cause.

a) writing b) debating c) brute force d) gentle persuasion

26 To save animals, ... takes a back seat.

a) improving medical equipment b) making better medicine for the rich
c) improving the livelihood of humans d) finding the cure for diseases



(1) مرض السكر (2) شلل الأطفال (3) مرض الديكي (4) الدفتريا (5) مميت (6) بالتالي (7) نشطون (8) يجري (9) أسيء لها (10) ألم شديد (11) تنظيم الحملات (12) ضروري

27 Which of the following statements is false?

a) Fatal diseases like diabetes and AIDS are a thing of the past.

b) A majority of researchers are against cruelty to animals used in research.

c) Many diseases are cured after animal testing had been done.

d) A result of the campaigning by animal activists is getting the support of the people.

28 The antonym of the word "various" is ....

a) numerous b) several c) countless d) few

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It was a school holiday for Hazem and Mazen. They were studying in the same primary school. They wanted to go to the library that was in their neighborhood. Being the older brother, Hazem was left in charge of Mazen. It took less than ten minutes to walk to the library.

The library was very quiet. Hazem was glad that it was not crowded. Normally when they came, the children's section would be packed with parents and their young children. Sometimes, the children obstructed[1] the way and made it difficult for people to walk. Yet, the parents never bothered[2] to correct the children's behavior. This irritated[3] Hazem.

Hazem and Mazen had different interests. Hazem usually read books on the mysteries[4] while Mazen borrowed non-fiction books on cars. As Hazem was flipping[5] through a book, there was a sudden loud crash. At first, he ignored it. Then, a familiar voice called out, "Help! Help! I'm stuck!" He recognized the voice as Mazen's. He immediately put down his book and went in search of Mazen. Instead, he found a pile[6] of books on the floor and an arm sticking out from underneath it. Mazen was under the pile of books. Hazem sighed[7] and removed the books, freeing Mazen.

"What happened?" Hazem asked Mazen.

Mazen explained that he had found an interesting book, but it was on the uppermost[8] shelf. He tried to reach for it but could not. Thus, he attempted to climb up to the highest shelf by stepping on the lower ones. In the process, he ended up pulling down the books instead.

By this time, many eyes were on them, Hazem was red as a beetroot[9] from embarrassment[10]. The two of them quickly returned the fallen books onto the shelves and scrambled[11] out of the library.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

29 The best title to the passage is ....

a) An embarrassing situation in the library.

b) The two brothers had different interests.

c) The quiet library.

d) People at the library.

30 Why did Hazem and Mazen go to the library?

a) It was a school holiday.

b) They wanted to celebrate.

c) They wanted to join some friends.

d) They were studying in the same school.

31 Which one of the following pieces of information is **not true**?

a) Mazen was the younger brother.

b) The library was usually very empty.

c) The library was not crowded that day.

d) The brothers spent less than ten minutes walking to the library.

32 What does "This" in paragraph three refer to?

a) The children irritating Hazem.

b) The children sitting on the floor.

c) The library being crowded with people.

d) The parents not bothering to correct their children's behaviour.

33 Which one of the following is true?

a) The two brothers read mysteries.

b) The two brothers had different interests

c) The two brothers read non-fiction books.

d) The two brothers were the same age.



(1) عرقل (2) [illegible] (3) أزعج (4) أشياء غامضة (5) يقلب الصفحات (6) كومة (7) تنهد (8) الأعلى (9) البنجر (10) احراج (11) اندفع

34 What caused the crash?
a) Mazen being ignored by his brother.
b) Mazen being stuck under a pile of books.
c) Mazen trying to reach for a book on the shelf.
d) Mazen having different interests from his brother.

35 Why did the two of them scramble out of the library?
a) They looked like beetroots.
b) The library became very crowded.
c) They had to return the books to the shelf.
d) They were embarrassed by the commotion they had caused.

36 The antonym of the word "ignored" is "..............".
a) overlooked b) passed over c) noted d) unnoticed

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d:

37 Egypt started to regain its leading role in the area. It hosts and supports talks to achieve peace and stability in the neighbouring countries.

a) بدأت مصر فى استعادة دورها الثانوى فى المنطقة، وأصبحت تستضيف وتدعم المحادثات لتحقيق السلام والتنمية للبلاد المجاورة.
b) بدأت مصر فى استعادة دورها القيادى فى المنطقة، وأصبحت تستضيف وتدعم المحادثات لتحقيق السلام والاستقرار للبلاد المجاورة.
c) بدأت مصر فى استعادة دورها القيادى فى العالم، وأصبحت تستضيف وتدعم المحادثات لتحقيق السلام والاستقرار للبلاد المجاورة.
d) بدأت مصر فى استعادة دورها القيادى فى المنطقة، وأصبحت تستبعد وتستنكر المحادثات لتحقيق السلام والاستقرار للبلاد المجاورة.

38 The social media has taken rumours to a whole new level. Celebrities and politicians are easy targets for internet rumours and their careers may be ruined by them.

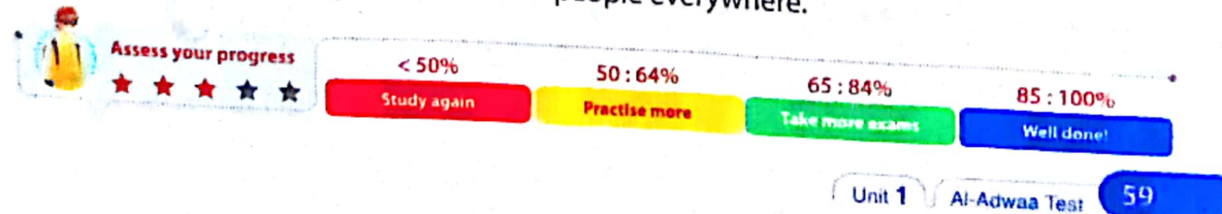
a) نقلت وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى الشائعات إلى سطح جديد تمامًا، والمشاهير والسياسيون أهداف عصية لشائعات الإنترنت وقد تدمر حياتهم المهنية.
b) نقلت وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى الشائعات إلى مستوى جديد تمامًا، والمشاهير والسياسيون أهداف سهلة لشائعات الإنترنت وقد تدمر حياتهم المهنية.
c) غيرت وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى الشائعات إلى مستوى جديد تمامًا، والاحتفاليون والسياسيون أهداف سهلة لشائعات الإنترنت وقد تدفع حياتهم المهنية.
d) غيرت وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى الشائعات إلى مستوى جديد تمامًا، والمشاهير والسياسيون أهداف سهلة لشائعات الإنترنت وقد تزيد حياتهم المهنية.

39 يتطلع الجميع إلى افتتاح العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة فهى مشروع قومى وستكون مقرًا للحكومة ومركزًا اقتصاديًا وثقافيًا رائدًا فى الشرق الأوسط وشمال إفريقيا.

a) Everyone is looking forward to the opening of the New Administrative Capital, as it is a national project and will be the centre of the government and a leading economic and cultural centre in the Middle East and North Africa.
b) Everyone are looking forward to the opening of the New Administrative Capital, as it is a national project and will be the seat of the government and a leading economic and cultural centre in the Middle East and North Africa.
c) Everyone is looking forward to open of the New Administrative Capital, as it is a local project and will be the seat of the government and a leading economic and cultural centre in the Middle East and North Africa.
d) Everyone is looking forward to the opening of the New Administrative Capital, as it is a local project and will be the centre of the government and a leading economic and cultural centre in the Far East and North Africa.

40 يجب على كل وسائل الإعلام مراعاة الدقة وتجنب التحيز فى نقل الأخبار حيث إنها تلعب دورًا هامًا فى تشكيل اتجاهات الناس فى كل مكان.

a) All media must inspect accuracy and avoid bias in reporting the news as they play an important role in shaping the attitudes of people everywhere.
b) All media must investigate accuracy and avoid bias in reporting the news as they play an important role in painting the attitudes of people everywhere.
c) All media must care for accuracy and avoid bias in reporting the news as they play an important role in shaping the attitudes of people everywhere.
d) All media must reserve inaccuracy and avoid bias in reporting the news as they play an important rule in shaping the attitudes of people everywhere.



Unit 2



Her story

Objectives

- **Reading** : Extract information from three texts
- **Writing** : A report on the results of a survey
- **Listening** : Listen to a podcast about girls in education
- **Speaking** : Make a speech about equality
- **Language** : Comparatives and superlatives; past perfect simple and past perfect continuous
- **Life skills** : Critical thinking: Identifying inequality and challenging stereotypes





Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

award (n) (v) (ed)	وسام/يمنح وسامًا	physicist (n)	عالم فيزياء
contribution (n)	مساهمة	prejudice (n)	تعصب/ظلم/تحيز
determination (n)	تصميم/عزم	qualify (v) (y̶ied)	يحصل على مؤهل/يتأهل
karate (n)	رياضة الكاراتيه	rank (n) (v) (ed)	مرتبة/يضع فى مرتبة
lecturer (n)	محاضر	role model (n)	قدوة/مثل أعلى
obstacle (n)	عقبة/عائق	round (n)	جولة (فى دورة تنس)
overcome (v) *	يتغلب على	stereotype (n)	صورة نمطية
pharmacist (n)	صيدلى		

* The ability to overcome your obstacles is a sign of wisdom.

Vocabulary on Reading

achievement (n)	إنجاز	defy (v) (y̶ied)	يتحدى
advance (n) (v) (d)	تقدم/يتقدم	demonstrate (v) (d)	يظهر/يبين/يدلل
association (n)	منظمة/رابطة	difficulty (n)	صعوبة/مشقة
assume (v) (d)	يفترض	electricity (n)	كهرباء
athlete (n)	رياضى	fans (n)	معجبون/مشجعون
attend (v) (ed)	يحضر	female (n) (adj)	أنثى/أنثوى
attitude (n)	شعور/اتجاه	fixed (adj)	ثابت/محدد
beat (v)	يهزم/يتغلب على	formula (n)	تركيبة
bronze medal (n)	ميدالية برونزية	fuel (n)	وقود
celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفى/يحتفل بـ	generate (v) (d)	يولد/ينتج
CEO (n)	رئيس تنفيذى	Grand Slam (n)	البطولات الأربع الكبرى للتنس
challenge (n) (v) (d)	تحدٍ/يتحدى	honour (v) (ed) (n)	يكرم/تكريم
championship (n)	بطولة	influence (v) (d) (n)	يؤثر على/تأثير
clinic (n)	عيادة	innovate (v) (d)	يبدع
competition (n)	منافسة/مسابقة	inspire (v) (d)	يلهم/يحث
confidence (n)	ثقة	invention (n)	اختراع
consider (v) (ed)	يعتبر	knowledge (n)	معرفة
court (n)	ملعب تنس	mathematics (n)	الرياضيات
creative (adj)	مبدع	medical (adj)	طبى
defeat (v) (ed)	يهزم	medicine (n)	طب/دواء

minor (adj)	ثانوى/غير رئيسى
natural (adj)	طبيعى
Olympics (n)	الألعاب الأولمبية
patience (n)	الصبر
physics (n)	الفيزياء
planet (n)	كوكب
private (adj)	خاص
prize (n)	جائزة
produce (v) (d)	ينتج
professional (n) (adj)	محترف/احترافى
recognise (v) (d)	يتعرف على/يدرك
remarkable (adj)	مميز/رائع
retire (v) (d)	يتقاعد
spark (v) (ed) (n)	يثير/شرارة
specialise (v) (d)	يتخصص
state (v) (d)	يعلن
straw (n)	قش
symbol (n)	رمز
technical (adj)	فنى
tournament (n)	دورة مباريات
training (n)	تدريب
treatment (n)	علاج
unfair (adj)	غير عادل
unique (adj)	متفرد/متميز
unreasonable (adj)	غير معقول
win (v) (n)	يفوز/فوز

Workbook Vocabulary

administration (n)	إدارة/قسم
aeronautics (n)	علم الطيران
aerospace (n)	الفضاء
career (n)	حياة مهنية
college (n)	كلية
community (n)	مجتمع
contribute (v) (d)	يساهم
degree (n)	درجة(وحدة قياس)/درجة (شهادة جامعية)
department (n)	قسم
determined (adj)	مصمم/عاقد العزم
device (n)	جهاز
emergency (n)	طوارئ
grade (n)	درجة/تقدير
graduate (v) (d) (n)	يتخرج/خريج
junior (adj)	ناشئ
master's degree (n)	درجة الماجستير
medal (n)	ميدالية
opportunity (n)	فرصة
organiser (n)	منظم
point out (v) (ed)	يلفت النظر
prejudiced (adj)	متحامل/متعصب
qualification (n)	مؤهل
review (v) (ed) (n)	يراجع/مراجعة
suburb (n)	ضاحية
successful (adj)	ناجح
tunnel (n)	نفق
volunteer (n)	متطوع
volunteering (n)	تطوع/عمل تطوعى
youth (n)	شباب

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

at that time	في ذلك الوقت	make a contribution to	يقوم بمساهمة لـ
do sport	يمارس رياضة	make ... successful	يجعل ... ناجحًا
give ... the confidence	يعطي ... الثقة	take advice from	يأخذ/يتبع نصيحة من
give advice	يعطي نصيحة	win an award	يفوز بجائزة أو وسام
contribute to	يساهم في	qualified as	مؤهل كـ
look up to	يتطلع إلى	return to	يعود/يرجع إلى
named after	مسمى باسم	specialise in	يتخصص في
need for	حاجة لـ		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	يحقق	achievement	إنجاز/تحقيق	achievable	يمكن تحقيقه
celebrate	يحتفل	celebration	احتفال	celebratory	احتفالي
compete	يتنافس	competition	منافسة	competitive	تنافسي
contribute	يساهم	contribution	مساهمة	contributory	مساهم
demonstrate	يظهر/يوضح	demonstration	إظهار	demonstrative	إيضاحي
generate *	يولد	generation	توليد/جيل	generative/generated	توليدي/مولد
inspire	يلهم/يوحي بـ	inspiration	وحي/إلهام	inspired	موحَى
invent	يخترع	invention	اختراع	inventive	إبداعي
produce	ينتج	production producer	إنتاج منتج	productive	منتج/مثمر
qualify	يؤهل/يتأهل	qualification	مؤهل	qualified	مؤهل
react	يقوم برد فعل	reaction	رد فعل	reactive	متفاعل
recognise	يتعرف على/يدرك	recognition	تمييز/إدراك	recognisable	يمكن تمييزه
treat	يعالج	treatment	علاج	treatable	يمكن علاجه

* The stations generate the power needed for the factories.
The generation of the power depends on fuel.
The generated power of the station is sufficient.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
achievement	إنجاز	accomplishment/success	defeat/failure	هزيمة/فشل
award	يمنح وساما	grant/present	refuse	يرفض
defy	يتحدى	challenge/oppose	assist/encourage	يساعد/يشجع
demonstrate	يظهر/يوضح	explain/illustrate	confuse/hide	يربك/يخفي
honour	يكرم	appreciate/praise	condemn/disregard	يدين
impressive	مؤثر	extraordinary/remarkable	common/unexciting	عادي/غير شيق
inspire	يلهم/يحث	influence/motivate	discourage/depress	يثبط/يحبط
prejudice	تعصب/تحيز	intolerance/bias	fairness/tolerance	عدالة/تسامح
professional	محترف	experienced/skillful	inefficient/untalented	غير كفء/غير موهوب

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Dr Magdy Yaccoub made a great .... to medicine especially heart surgery.
a) defection b) defeat c) contribution d) affection

2 The young writer has won a number of .... for the books she published during the last few years.
a) presents b) awards c) medals d) races

3 As a former footballer, he is well .... to talk about the game and give advice to the players.
a) qualified b) classified c) purified d) identified

4 Women still face .... in the workplace; they are offered less salaries than men.
a) reflection b) balance c) fairness d) prejudice

5 Nour El Sherbini is now .... number one in the list of professional squash players.
a) rested b) ranked c) reached d) completed

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)

People who inspire

Firsts for Egyptian women

This week, we are celebrating two remarkable Egyptian women who broke down stereotypes and prejudices, demonstrating that women's place in society is important and continues to grow.

Hilana Sedarous

1904–1998

Education: London Medical School

Hilana Sedarous was the first Egyptian woman to become a doctor in modern Egypt and in the Arab world, too. She was born in Tanta and was sent to London in 1922 to study mathematics with five other Egyptian students. However, while she was there, she decided to study medicine instead. They were considered to be the first medical students to study in England. In 1930, after going through many obstacles[1], she qualified[2] as a doctor and returned to Egypt where she opened a private clinic for women. She was treating patients until she was 70 years old. After retiring, she started writing and translating stories for children.

(1) عقبات
(2) يتأهل



Yasmeen Yehya Moustafa

Born: 1998

Awards: 1st place in the Intel Science and Engineering competition, NASA named a minor planet after her family (Moustafa 31910) recognising her contribution to science.

Education: Maadi STEM School for Girls, Middle East Technical University.

Yasmeen is a role model[3] for other young Egyptians. Born in Damietta, she defied stereotypes[4] by moving to Cairo alone to attend the Maadi STEM school. The CEO of Intel Egypt said that Yasmeen has received a "unique" honour, adding that her success in the field of scientific research is considered an achievement for all of the Egyptian society and for Intel which encourages youth to be creative.

Yasmeen's winning invention was sparked by the need for cleaner water in her village. She found that burning rice straw gave clean water and also produced a natural fuel which can be used to generate electricity. She says her school gave her the confidence to innovate and to defy prejudice[5]: 'I believe I can change the world', she proudly states.

(3) قدوة
(4) صور نمطية
(5) تحيز/تعصب

Reading Text (2)

2021: A great year for Egyptian women athletes!



(1) لعبة الكاراتيه
(2) صيدلى
(3) تُصنف
(4) يتغلب على
(5) تصميم/عزيمة

2021 was an amazing year for Egyptian female athletes. At the Tokyo Olympic Games, **Ferial Abdelaziz** became the first female Egyptian to win the karate[1] gold medal. Ferial studied to become a pharmacist[2], and had played karate since she was seven. Before she won the Olympic gold medal, she had already won a bronze medal at the World Championships in Spain and a silver medal at the 2019 Africa Games in Morocco.

However, Ferial was not the only Egyptian to win a medal at the Tokyo Olympics. **Giana Farouk** won a bronze medal at the same event. Giana had also won a gold medal at the Africa Games in Congo in 2015 and three gold medals at the World Championships (two in Germany in 2014 and one in Austria in 2016).

Also in 2021, Egyptian tennis player **Mayar Sherif** became the first Egyptian woman to be ranked[3] in the top 100 players of the Women's Tennis Association (WTA), reaching number 74 in September. This was after she reached the WTA finals in Romania, where she lost to Andrea Petkovic. Earlier in the year, she beat Chloe Paquet from France in the first round of the 2021 Australian Open. Up until then, no Egyptian woman had won a match in a Grand Slam tournament.

These great women athletes and many others faced many obstacles and challenges. However, they were able to overcome[4] them and proudly put Egypt on the world map of sports. The secret formula for their success was hard work, determination[5] and a lot of patience.

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

Dr Tahani Amer grew up in a suburb of Cairo. Her love of engineering started while she was watching her father repair a car engine when she was young, although she thought she would study medicine at university.

She then married when she was 17 and moved to the USA in 1983. Although she did not speak any English at that time, this did not stop her from doing well in maths and she got top grades in her exams. She took a two-year degree in science while she was bringing up two young children, and then took a higher degree in engineering. In 1992, she got a master's degree in aerospace engineering and another qualification (4) in engineering after that. It is easy to understand why she believes that education is the key to opportunity!

After she moved to the USA, she was determined to work for the National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) and she did some work for them while she was at college. This gave her the experience she needed to get a full-time job there. She became a manager at NASA in 2012. Since 2016, she has worked for NASA's technology department. During her time there, she has helped to program computers and test wind tunnels. She invented a new device and helped solve real-life problems. She now reviews NASA's space missions.

While living in the USA, Dr Tahani Amer also did a lot of volunteering for the community. She helps at afterschool science clubs, teaches Arabic and Islamic studies to young children and also works hard to help other women become successful in their careers. Dr Tahani Amer's work has contributed to the increase in the number of women who work at NASA. Today, around 30% of people who work for NASA are female.

Listening Text (Workbook)



In 2021, Fatma was 21. Before this time, Fatma had been playing top handball for many years. Before she went to university, Fatma had already played for the Egyptian youth team (the under 18s) and before she graduated, she had played for the junior team (the under 20s). She became one of the best women handball players in the country.

In 2021, Egypt did not have a handball team for players over 21. When we spoke to Fatma, she said that in the past the country had spent a lot of money on the men's handball team which helped it to become very successful. She hoped that the sports organisers would spend money on a women's team in the future.

She also pointed out that in the past, women had been very successful in other sports, such as Hedaya Malak and Sara Ahmed who won medals at the 2016 Olympics. She said there was no reason women handball players could not do extremely well too.

Let's hope that soon her dream will come true and that there will be an international Egyptian handball team for women over 21. We're sure that they will be very successful!

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My son .... from Cairo University with a degree in medicine.
   - a) applied
   - b) ruled
   - c) enrolled
   - d) graduated
2. As he is only 17 years old, Mike is a member of the club's .... team and hopes to be in the senior one soon.
   - a) professional
   - b) junior
   - c) allied
   - d) broad
3. The salesman at the gallery .... out that not one of the paintings is original.
   - a) aimed
   - b) placed
   - c) pointed
   - d) breathed
4. Hedaya Malak was .... to win a second Olympic medal in her new weight and she did.
   - a) determined
   - b) decided
   - c) depressed
   - d) blessed
5. The exhibition is a fantastic .... to see the great works of our favourite artist.
   - a) salary
   - b) wage
   - c) opportunity
   - d) competition

Check the answers at the end of the book

Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

lecturer محاضر
- a person who teaches at university

contribution مساهمة
- something you do to help make something successful or someone advance

physicist عالم فيزياء
- a scientist that/who specialises in the field of physics

role model القدوة/مثل أعلى
- a person young people can look up to and try to be like them

qualify يتأهل
- successfully finish a training course so you can do a job

stereotype صورة نمطية
- a fixed idea about what a person or thing is like

award وسام
- a prize or symbol given to recognise an achievement

prejudice تحيز/تعصب
- an unfair or unreasonable opinion because you do not have enough knowledge

Notes on Vocabulary

Court

تستخدم court بأكثر من معنى منها:

١- ملعب لبعض الرياضات مثل التنس

1 The tennis players are due on court in an hour.

٢- محكمة

Four people, who are charged with robbery, will appear in court today.

٣- بلاط ملكي

All court officials denied the rumours about the prince's marriage.

attend

١- يحضر مناسبة أو اجتماعًا

- The meeting is on the fifth and we're hoping everyone will attend.

٢- يداوم الذهاب أو الحضور إلى مكان مثل جامعة أو مسجد أو كنيسة

- Which school do your children attend?

٣- ينتبه/يعطى اهتمامًا لـ

- The customer service staff will attend to your complaints.

٤- يعتنى بشخص (خاصة عند مرضه)

- My grandmother is 70 years old and needs to be attended by us.

3

stereotype	صورة نمطية (رأى غالبًا غير صحيح)	The new film defies the stereotype of women as passive victims.
image	صورة (رأى عن شخص أو شيء خاصة عن طريق دعاية ما)	The company needs to create a new image for itself.
reputation	سمعة (رأى عن شخص أو شركة مثلًا بسبب الماضي)	The restaurant has an excellent reputation and attracts many customers.

4

present	هدية	I'm going to buy a wedding present for my sister.
prize	جائزة	You can win a prize if you practise harder for the race.
reward	مكافأة	The young clerk has received a reward for being hardworking at the office.
award	وسام/جائزة رسمية	Mohamed Salah received the Player of the Year Award in England in 2018.

5

recognise	١- يتعرف على (يعرف شخصًا أو شيئًا لرؤيته أو سماعه أو المرور به من قبل) ٢- يقبل ويعرف أهمية شيء	I didn't recognise you in your uniform. The new doctor tried to get his work recognised by the medical profession.
realise	١- يدرك (يعرف أو يفهم شيئًا) ٢- يحقق (شيئًا كان يتمناه)	Do you realise you're an hour late? She never realised her ambition of winning an Olympic gold medal.

Notes — Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

Did you notice these notes while reading?

- .... and became the first Egyptian woman to become a lecturer at a university.
  Hilana Sedarous was the first Egyptian woman to become a doctor in modern Egypt

لاحظ استخدام (المصدر + to) بعد التعبير (the first)

- After retiring, she started writing and translating stories for children.

لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد (After) لأنها لم يتبعها فاعل.

- Her love of engineering started while she was watching her father repair a car engine.

لاحظ استخدام المصدر بعد الفعل (watch) كما يمكن استخدام (verb + ing) فى بعض الحالات.

- After she moved to the USA, she was determined to work for the National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) ...

استخدام جملتين فى زمن الماضى البسيط بعد (After)؛ لأن استخدام الماضى التام هنا ليس ضروريًا، كما يلاحظ استخدام الحروف الكبيرة للكلمة المختصرة (NASA).

- This gave her the experience she needed to get a full-time job there.
  She invented a new device and helped solve real-life problems.

لاحظ استخدام الشرطة الواصلة (hyphen) فى الصفات المركبة.

Check Point 3 — Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 When he watched the TV show, he .... he'd seen it before.
a) realised b) recognised
c) organised d) forgot

2 The police offered a/an .... for any information about the robbery.
a) present b) award
c) reward d) prize

3 Many people still believe that old .... about women as a housewife only.
a) scene b) image
c) reputation d) stereotype

4 The boy is wrapping a/an .... for his mother on her birthday.
a) prize b) award
c) present d) reward

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Practice — Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(Key vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Workbook Vocabulary & Vocabulary Notes

1 Unfortunately, there is still some .... against women in positions of authority in some African countries.
a) excitement b) enthusiasm c) attitude d) prejudice

2 Many young women succeeded in challenging the .... about women in our society.
a) practices b) influences c) stereotypes d) records

3 The film is quite scary, but it might also .... young children's imaginations.
a) destroy b) spark c) specialise d) share

4 As Ashraf was not a hard worker, it took him seven years to .... in law.
a) qualify b) purify c) defy d) petrify

5 After I watch this match, I will have watched all the matches in this tennis ....
a) league b) trophy c) tournament d) race

6 The students who complete the course successfully will be .... a diploma.
a) awarded b) rewarded c) presented d) qualified

7 It is believed that Einstein, the great scientist, reshaped modern .... with his theories.
a) history b) geography c) maths d) physics

8 Tomorrow, there is an important meeting and the whole staff are expected to .... it.
a) consider b) agree c) attend d) depend

9 With the new players, our team will be a tough one to ....
a) win b) beat c) gain d) earn

10 My friend and I are going to enter an athletics .... We both hope to win something.
a) debate b) competition c) profession d) quiz

11 Our reliance on fossil fuels is a real .... to fighting pollution in the world.
a) merit b) treatment c) change d) obstacle

12 My parents always advise me to have more .... in my own abilities.
a) achievement b) confidence c) suspicion d) advance

13 In our company, there is a system for .... for employees who do their jobs well
a) presents b) gifts c) awards d) rewards

14 Mars is sometimes known as the Red .... because of its red rocks.
a) Region b) Planet c) Plant d) Space

15 I think it is a/an .... for all athletes to represent their country in the Olympics.
a) patience b) honour c) trouble d) emergency

16 Coal, gas and oil are kinds of fossil .... that cause pollution.
a) fuels b) liquids c) foods d) materials

17 Have you had any .... treatment during the last three years?
a) natural b) medical c) technical d) personal

18 In many countries, the wind is used to .... electricity.
a) invest b) do c) generate d) invent

19 Our teacher of English has a great ability to .... students to do better.
a) respire b) conspire c) aspire d) inspire

20 The local company don't really deserve the bad .... they have gained over the years.
a) image b) stereotype c) reputation d) view

21 Mohamed Salah is now .... in the top 10 of all African and world footballers.
a) marked b) rewarded c) ranked d) qualified

22 The hospital .... is working hard to improve the service presented to the patients.
a) customer b) contribution c) administration d) inspection

23 This test measures children's .... in reading, spelling and maths.
a) width b) achievement c) length d) height

24 Mohamed Salah has been a positive role .... for many young men all over the world.
a) symbol b) image c) model d) ego

25 Most young people get all their .... about politics from watching the television.
a) formula b) science c) attitude d) knowledge

26 The pilot was forced to make a/an .... landing when one of the engines failed.
a) emergency b) usual c) planned d) prior

27 The children's .... in my favourite clothes store sells a wide range of good quality clothes.
a) college b) department c) administration d) clinic

28 Florence Nightingale, the real founder of nursing, was a .... for the British Army during the war.
a) captain b) leader c) volunteer d) fighter

29 Part of the Giza metro line goes through a .... under the Nile.
a) spring b) road c) funnel d) tunnel

30 Hilana Sedarous was a very .... woman, so she achieved great success in her career.
a) private b) passive c) determined d) decided

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

31 The Olympic medal winners have recently .... awards for their achievement.
a) rewarded b) won c) gained d) rejected

32 My father's architecture office specialises .... interior design.
a) in b) for c) at d) on

33 She defied her parents and dropped out of school. The verb "defy" is the synonym of the verb "..............".
a) imply b) follow c) obey d) challenge

34 The businessman wanted to make a financial .... to the charity in the countryside.
a) contribute b) contribution c) contributory d) contributed

35 Forty members of our family got together to .... my grandfather's birthday.
a) celebrate b) celebration c) celebrated d) celebratory

36 Mr Sameh .... his doctor's advice and went on a low-fat diet.
a) done b) made c) took d) broke

37 After seven years at the university, my son qualified .... a doctor.
a) for b) to c) in d) as

38 I've always looked .... to my father for his courage and determination.
a) after b) for c) up d) through

39 There have been great advances in the .... of cancer in Egypt, especially the field of children's cancer.
a) treat b) treatment c) treated d) treatable

40 This business plan looks very professional. The adjective "professional" is the antonym of the adjective ....
a) gifted b) brilliant c) inefficient d) educated



Lessons 1 & 2



B Language

The Past Perfect and Past Perfect Continuous

الماضى التام والماضى التام المستمر

1 Past Perfect

الماضى التام

لبيان أن حدثًا تم قبل حدث آخر أو وقت معين فى الماضى.

Before last Friday	Last Friday	Now
ماضٍ تام	ماضٍ بسيط	الآن

He had become famous before 1990.

My father had saved money before he bought the car.

Form

Subj. + had + P.P. ▸ • By yesterday, I had read 5 stories.

Negative

Subj. + hadn't + P.P. ▸ • I hadn't seen him before he talked to me.

Interrogative

Had + subj. + P.P.? ▸ • What had she done before going out?
• Had Osama bought the tickets by yesterday?

Passive

Obj. + had been + P.P. ▸ • By yesterday, all the tickets had been sold.

Usage الاستخدام

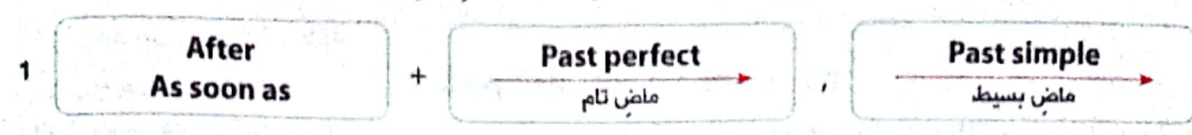
1. **For an action which happened before another past action or before a stated time in the past.**
يعبر عن حدث تم قبل حدث ماضٍ آخر أو قبل وقت محدد فى الماضى: الحدث الأول تام والثانى بسيط.
- I showed my mother what I had bought from the market.
- He admitted that he had lied to his father more than once.

2. **For an action which finished in the past and whose result was visible in the past.**
يعبر عن حدث انتهى فى الماضى ونتيجته كانت واضحة فى الماضى.
- There was glass on the floor as Osama had broken the window.

3. **For duration before something in the past with state verbs.**
يعبر عن حدث كان مستمرًا لفترة فى الماضى قبل حدث آخر مع الأفعال التى لا تستخدم فى الاستمرار.
- I had had the bike for ten years before I bought a car.
- By the time I got used to life in Cairo, I had been there for five years.

The past perfect is used with the following time expressions:

before, after, till/until, when, by, by the time, as soon as:



- After I had looked both ways, I crossed the street.



- Before I crossed the road, I had looked both ways.



- My son did not buy the phone until he had taken the money.

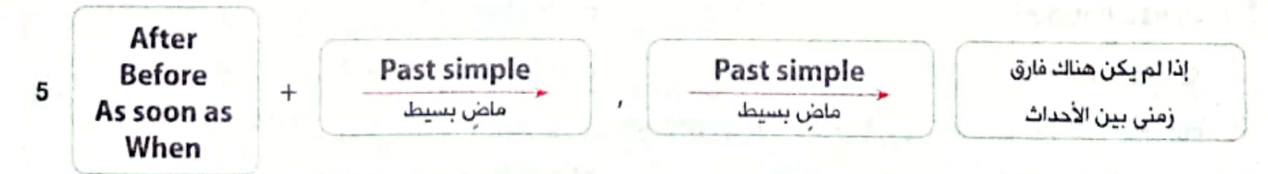


- She refused to marry him until he had bought a new flat.
- He waited at the station until the train arrived.
- I wasn't happy until I had passed my exams.
- I wasn't allowed to enter the country until I had shown my passport.
- He couldn't pass the driving test until he had practised enough.

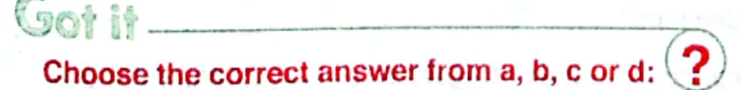


إذا لم يوجد فاعل بعد After أو Before نستخدم v.ing بشرط أن يكون فاعل الجملة الثانية هو الفاعل المحذوف.

- After finishing his work, he helped me. = After he had finished, ...
- Before helping me, he had finished his work. = Before he helped, ...



- When he entered the flat, he took off his shoes.
- After he paid the driver, he got out of the taxi.
- Before he left, he asked me to close the door behind him.
- As soon as he read the story, he gave it to me.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: ?

- They weren't happy because their team .... the final.

a) hasn't won   b) hadn't won

c) wouldn't win   d) hadn't been won

الإجابة هى (b) لأن عدم السعادة جاء بعد عدم المكسب

لاحـــظ

١) لاحظ الفرق بين جمل when الآتية:

When + Past simple, Past perfect

غادر القطار قبل وصولى (لم ألحق به)

- When I reached the station, the train had left.

When + Past simple, Past simple

غادر القطار عند وصوله (ربما لحقه أو رآه)

- When he reached the station, the train left.

When + Past simple, Past simple

وصلت المحطة قبل مغادرة القطار (لحقته)

- When I had reached the station, the train left.

٢) تستخدم ever/never/already/yet مع الماضى التام لبيان الحدث الأول.

- I saw Galal last night. I had never seen him before.

٣) إذا وجد أكثر من حدثين فى الجملة يجب تحديد الحدث الأول ليوضع ماضيًا تامًا والأحداث الباقية إما ماضٍ بسيط وإما مستمر حسب المعنى.

- As soon as I saw Ahmed, I realised that I had met him before.

لم نضع الماضى التام بعد as soon as مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول، فالحدث الأول هو (المقابلة).

- After he got to the station, he realised that he had left the train ticket at home.

لم نضع الماضى التام بعد After مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول، فالحدث الأول هو (ترك التذكرة فى المنزل).

- I was shopping with my friend when I realised that I had lost my wallet.

الحدث الأول فقدان المحفظة.

٤) يستخدم الماضى التام مع أفعال مثل think/say/know/realise عند استخدامها فى الماضى للحديث عن اعتقادات ومحادثات ومعرفة وإدراك لشىء سابق.

- I thought I had finished my homework, but I realised I had forgotten the last page.
- I knew where I had put the keys.

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Tamer .... all his exams by 5 o'clock yesterday.

a) had finished b) finished
c) has finished d) had been finished

2 He felt that he .... the question wrong.

a) has answered b) had been answering
c) was answered d) had answered

3 Before starting to eat, he .... down the table.

a) has laid b) was lying c) had laid d) lay

4 He .... my name, so I reminded him.

a) forgets b) had forgotten c) has forgotten d) was forgetting

5 The weather was worse last year than I .... it to be.

a) had expected b) have expected
c) expect d) was expected





Past Perfect Continuous الماضى التام المستمر

Form

Subj. + had been + v-ing ▶ • When I met Ali, he had been walking for 2 hours.

Negative

Subj. + hadn't been + v-ing ▶ • I wasn't tired as I hadn't been driving for long.

Interrogative

Had + subj. + been +v-ing? ▶ • What had they been doing before I met them?

Usage الاستخدام

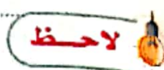
1. يعبر عن حدث كان مستمرًا فى الماضى (بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى) قبل وقوع حدث آخر.
   - They had been looking for a house for six months before they found the one they liked.

2. يعبر عن حدث استمر لفترة فى الماضى ونتيجته كانت واضحة فى الماضى.
   - She had been working hard that day, so she was tired.
   - At last, the bus came. I had been waiting for 30 minutes.

3. لا تستخدم أفعال الحالة stative verbs مع الماضى التام المستمر.
   - It was 5:00 p.m. He had had a headache all day.

4. يأتى الماضى التام المستمر عادة مع أفعال يمكن أن تستغرق فترة طويلة مثل:
   wait/do/study/live/work/stay/play/watch/sleep/paint/read/write/talk/run/walk/travel
   - She had been training for three years when she entered the race.
   - He was out of breath. It was clear that he had been running for a long time.

5. يستخدم الماضى التام المستمر مع الكلمات الآتية:
   for/since/how long/before/until
   - Ali had been trying to call me for 10 minutes before I finally answered the phone.



١) يرتبط الماضى التام المستمر والماضى التام بفعل ماضٍ آخر معه.

يرتبط المضارع التام المستمر والمضارع التام بفعل مضارع آخر معه.

- The garden is dirty because people have left litter everywhere.
- The garden was dirty because people had left litter everywhere.
- Ali is out of breath as he has been running for a long time.
- Ali was out of breath as he had been running for a long time.

٢) لاحظ الفرق بين الماضى التام المستمر والماضى المستمر الذى يعبر عن حدث كان مستمرًا وقطعه آخر:

- When the race started, it was raining and the streets were wet.

مازالت تمطر عندما بدأ السباق.

- When the race started, it had been raining and the streets were wet.

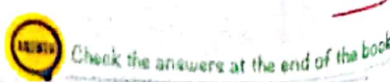
عندما بدأ السباق لم تكن تمطر ، كانت قد توقفت قبل بداية السباق ولكنها استمرت فترة قبل البداية.

٣) إذا ذكرنا مرات حدوث الفعل نستخدم الماضى التام وليس الماضى التام المستمر:

- When I met Ahmed, he had typed 3 reports.

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was very tired when I arrived home. I .... hard all day.
   - a) had been working
   - b) had worked
   - c) have been working
   - d) had been worked
2. He .... for 30 years when he finally gave it up.
   - a) was smoking
   - b) had smoked
   - c) had been smoked
   - d) had been smoking
3. My family .... an old car for 5 years before buying a smart one.
   - a) had been having
   - b) has had
   - c) had had
   - d) was having
4. What had he .... when the accident happened?
   - a) done
   - b) been doing
   - c) been done
   - d) had
5. We .... for 12 hours when he woke us up.
   - a) have slept
   - b) had been sleeping
   - c) were sleeping
   - d) had been slept





Language Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Check your understanding.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I .... for a long time when it suddenly began to rain.
a) had not been walking b) weren't walking
c) had walked d) had been walked

2 It was dark and cold. At one moment, he thought that he .... his way.
a) has lost b) had been losing
c) had lost d) was lost

3 How long .... English before she went to London?
a) had she been learnt b) was she learning
c) had she been learning d) has she been learning

4 I couldn't imagine what .... to her.
a) has been happened b) had happened
c) had been happened d) has been happening

5 He .... for less than an hour when he ran out of petrol.
a) had driven b) was driving
c) had been driven d) had been driving

6 I .... my homework when my mother came.
a) already did b) have already done
c) had already done d) already do

7 They were very tired in the evening because they .... on the farm all day.
a) had been helping b) had helped
c) have been helping d) were helping

8 We .... the station by 5 o'clock yesterday.
a) had been reaching b) were reaching
c) had reached d) reached

9 I .... all day; so I wasn't tired and visited my friend at night.
a) had been working b) had not been working
c) was working d) have been working

10 He .... his work before you came.
a) had been finishing b) finishes
c) has finished d) had finished

11 They .... all day so their legs were sore in the evening.
a) had been cycling b) had cycled
c) were cycling d) have been cycling

12 I woke up feeling tired this morning because I .... very well last night.
a) wasn't sleeping b) haven't slept
c) haven't been sleeping d) hadn't slept

13 They .... for over an hour before Samy arrived.
a) had been talking b) have talked
c) were talking d) had been talked

14 As soon as she .... out of bed, she got dressed.
a) gets b) has got c) had got d) would get

15 My father .... at the university for more than 30 years before he retired.
a) had worked b) had been working c) have been working d) was working

16 I knew that my uncle .... a new car.
a) had bought b) had been buying c) was buying d) has bought

17 We .... for her ring for two hours and then we found it in the bathroom.
a) had been looking b) had been looked
c) had looked d) were looking

18 I arrived at the bus station late yesterday. When I got there, my bus ....
a) left b) had been leaving c) had left d) has left

19 I met her at yesterday's party, but I .... her by sight for years before that.
a) have known b) had known
c) will have known d) had been knowing

20 He evidently .... his shoes for a very long time. They were worn-out.
a) has been wearing b) had been worn
c) was wearing d) had been wearing

21 She .... the house when I went to her after a long time.
a) will be cleaning b) had been cleaning
c) has been cleaning d) has cleaned/have been

22 Mother .... Ali that he .... to do the shopping after school.
a) reminded/will promise b) has reminded/promises
c) had reminded/promised d) reminded/had promised

23 When I checked my change, I realised they .... me 100 pounds too much.
a) gave b) had been giving c) had been given d) had given

24 Samy .... somewhere to live when his friend offered him a room.
a) found b) had already found
c) has already found d) had been finding

25 Did you know that their plans ....?
a) change b) have changed
c) had been changing d) had been changed

26 I left home before I realised I .... my mobile phone.
a) have forgot b) forgot
c) had forgotten d) had been forgetting

27 Why .... the bathroom before you took a bath?
a) didn't you clean b) hadn't you cleaned
c) haven't you been cleaning d) hadn't you been cleaning

28 Why did no one tell me that my glasses ....?
a) had smashed b) have smashed
c) were smashing d) had been smashing

29 Maher was very rude to Karim considering he .... him for a few days.
a) only knows b) knew only
c) had only been knowing d) had only known

30 Ahmed looks very tired. He .... on the garden for a long time.
a) worked b) was working c) has been working d) had been working

Test Yourself in 20 min

Take a Test

Unit 2
Lessons 1 & 2

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The tennis player had to withdraw ينسحب after reaching the third .... of the tournament because of an injury.
a) fight b) championship c) race d) round

2 The English Department at the college has a British .... on literature this week.
a) student b) lecturer c) official d) client

3 The famous player hopes to repeat his success on the grass .... of Wimbledon.
a) pitches b) gardens c) courts d) buildings

4 Through hard work, the Egyptian woman could change the traditional .... of women in society.
a) stereotype b) reputation c) expression d) location

5 Teaching young children is .... a challenging and rewarding job.
a) defied b) considered c) relied d) denied

6 Women still have to .... many challenges and difficulties to gain equality.
a) resign b) repair c) overcome d) respond

7 As a teacher, she has inspired generations of students. The verb "inspire" is a synonym of the verb " .... ".
a) aspire b) depress c) discourage d) motivate

8 I had really good teachers who .... me a lot of confidence in myself.
a) gained b) made c) gave d) won

9 He .... a camel before he came to Siwa.
a) has never seen b) did never see c) will never see d) had never seen

10 When she arrived, I was pretty fed up, because I .... since eight o'clock.
a) had been waiting b) have waited
c) have been waiting d) had waited

11 Last Sunday, we .... out of the house where we .... for five years.
a) had moved/lived b) have moved/had lived
c) moved/had been living d) will move/have lived

12 She .... unwell for several days when she was taken to hospital.
a) has been feeling b) had been feeling
c) was feeling d) had been felt

13 We spent hours talking about what we .... since we left school.
a) have been doing b) have done
c) were doing d) had been doing

14 I wasn't hungry at four because I .... a big lunch at one.
a) had had b) was having c) had been having d) have

15 The film .... when we reached the cinema.
a) has already started b) was already starting
c) had already started d) had already been starting

16 The day she agreed to marry him was the happiest he .... in his life.
a) had ever been having b) had ever had
c) will ever have d) has ever had

17 Which of these sentences has the comma in the right place?

a) Please, get me, some eggs milk and some butter.

b) Please, get me some eggs, milk and some butter.

c) Please, get me some eggs milk, and some butter.

d) Please, get me some eggs milk and, some butter.

18 Decide which part of speech is the underlined word.

If your car isn't working, you can take <u>mine</u>.

a) adjective b) noun c) pronoun d) adverb

19 Your conclusion should include all of the following EXCEPT ....

a) a restatement of your thesis statement b) a transition sentence

c) a re-connection with your lead d) supporting details

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

With the march[1] of time, people and their customs change. In China, before 1949, women were considered second-class people. Girls had to bind[2] their feet to stop them from growing because small feet were considered a sign of beauty. They suffered much and couldn't stay on a job for a long time. After the 1949 revolution[3], Maozedong, who had done much to make China better, said, "Women hold up half the sky." And from that time, women are treated as men's equals. Many women have become business owners and managers. New mothers are now allowed to take two years out of work to look after their babies. All this looks good but there is another side of the picture. Farm wives do most of the donkey work in their fields and spend about 12 hours a day working.

In the late seventies, a law came out and was obeyed by all. It ordered each family to have one child only, and in case parents had a second child, they had to get rid of him/her or lose their jobs. Many families wished to have a son. Therefore, if they had a baby girl, they drowned[4] her in the river or just threw her away. About half a million female babies were killed each year. Nowadays, there are 118 males for each 100 females. In spite of this, husbands treat their wives badly and beat them. Divorce[5] has become quite frequent[6].

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20 The Chinese government made the people obey the law by ....

a) allowing all working women to stay at home for two years

b) making those who had a second child lose their jobs

c) allowing parents to drown the baby girl

d) doing all these things

21 Chinese couples prefer to have a son because ....

a) sons love their parents more

b) sons have a much better future since women are treated as men's equals

c) girls are still considered a shame

d) of all the above reasons

22 Women in China suffered much because ....

a) they couldn't stay on a job for a long time

b) they were considered less important than men

c) they were business owners

d) they had small feet



(1) سير/زحف (2) يوثق (3) ثورة (4) أغرق (5) طلاق (6) متكرر

23 What does the underlined expression "get rid of" mean?

a) Throw away or destroy.
b) Keep in a bad place.
c) Throw from the window.
d) Send to another country.

24 Before 1949, Chinese girls ...., all the time; day and night.

a) had a continuous source of pain
b) had held great positions
c) had been considered a first-class people
d) had been less in number than men

25 Women consider Maozedong ....

a) the cause of their divorce
b) the cause of their agony
c) the greatest Chinese leader
d) the worst leader over the ages

26 The expression "Women hold up half the sky." means ....

a) women do nothing in society
b) women have a great role in the society like men
c) women should be killed
d) women do the hard jobs only

27 Although women are less in number than men, ...

a) they take most of the jobs
b) they treat their husbands badly
c) the man marries more than a woman
d) they are still treated badly

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d:

28 There have been so many celebrated famous women in history. They all make great role models to celebrate on International Women's Day and on trying to promote women's rights.

a) هناك الكثير من النساء المشهورات فى التاريخ وهن جميعًا يرفضن نماذج عظيمة نحتفى بهن فى يوم المرأة العالمى ومحاولة تعزيز حقوق المرأة.
b) هناك الكثير من النساء المشهورات فى التاريخ وهن جميعًا يمثلن أدوارًا عظيمة نحتفى بهن فى يوم المرأة العالمى ومحاولة تعزيز حقوق المرأة.
c) هناك الكثير من النساء المشهورات فى التاريخ وهن جميعًا يمثلن نماذج عظيمة نحتفى بهن فى يوم المرأة العالمى ومحاولة تعزيز حقوق المرأة.
d) هناك الكثير من النساء المشهورات فى التاريخ وهن جميعًا يمثلن نماذج عظيمة نحتفى بهن فى يوم المرأة العالمى ومحاولة تقنين حقوق المرأة.

29 The Egyptian government aims to empower poor women in Upper Egypt, in order to enjoy a better quality of life. It offers sustainable interventions that would have great impact on their livelihoods.

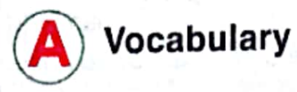
a) تهدف الحكومة المصرية إلى تمكين النساء الفقيرات فى صعيد مصر من أجل التمتع بنوعية حياة أفضل كما توفر تدخلات مستدامة من شأنها أن يكون لها تأثير كبير على سبل عيشهم.
b) تهدف الحكومة المصرية إلى تقوية النساء الفقيرات فى صعيد مصر من أجل التمتع بنوعية حياة أفضل كما توفر تطورات مستدامة من شأنها أن يكون لها تأثير كبير على سبل عيشهم.
c) تهدف الحكومة المصرية إلى تمكين النساء الفقيرات فى صعيد مصر من أجل التمتع بنوعية حياة أفضل كما توفر ورطات مستدامة من شأنها أن يكون لها تأثير كبير على سبل عيشهم.
d) تهدف الحكومة المصرية إلى تمكين النساء الفقيرات فى صعيد مصر من أجل التمتع بنوعية حياة أفضل كما توفر تدخلات مستدامة من شأنها أن يكون لها تأثير كبير على حيويتهم.

30 استخدام التكنولوجيا فى التعليم جعل منه أكثر متعة بالنسبة للطلاب، مما يزيد من دافعيتهم نحو التعلم، إذ يمكن للدروس المملة أن تصبح أكثر مُتعة لهم عن طريق الأجهزة الحديثة.

a) The use of technology in education has made it more enjoyable for students, which increases their push towards learning, as boring lessons can become more enjoyable for them through modern devices.
b) The use of technology in education has made it more enjoyable for students, which increases their innovation towards learning, as boring lessons can become more enjoyable for them through modern devices.
c) The use of technology in education has made it more enjoyable for students, which decreases their motivation towards learning, as boring lessons can become more enjoyable for them through modern devices.
d) The use of technology in education has made it more enjoyable for students, which increases their motivation towards learning, as boring lessons can become more enjoyable for them through modern devices.



Lessons 3 & 4



A Vocabulary

★ I never argue with my father about his decisions.

Vocabulary on Reading

adventure (n)	مغامرة	key (adj) (n)	رئيسي/مفتاح
alternative (n)	بديل	majority (n)	أغلبية
argue (v) (d) ★	يجادل/يخالف الرأي	minority (n)	أقلية
author (n)	مؤلف	naughty (adj)	مشاغب/شقي
bar graph (n)	رسم بياني	note (v) (d)	يلاحظ
care (n) (v) (d)	اهتمام/رعاية/يهتم	noticeable (adj)	ملحوظ
cheerful (adj)	مرح/مبتهج	obvious (adj)	واضح
cross (adj)	شديد الغضب	pattern (n)	نمط
cruel (adj)	قاسٍ	percentage (n)	نسبة مئوية
development (n)	تطور/تنمية	quarter (n)	ربع
disabled (adj)	معاق	raise (v) (d)	يرفع/يثير
economic (adj)	اقتصادى	reflect (v) (ed)	يعكس
equal (adj)	متساوٍ	region (n)	إقليم
equality (n)	مساواة	related (adj)	متصل/مرتبط
eye contact (n)	اتصال بصرى	result (n)	نتيجة
figure (n)	رقم	significant (adj)	هام/ذو مغزى
good-natured (adj)	لطيف	speculate (v) (d)	يتأمل
grumpy (adj)	غاضب/سريع الاستثارة	statistics (n)	إحصاء
heart (n)	قلب	summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
impatient (adj)	غير صبور	swing (n)	أرجوحة
inspiration (n)	إلهام/وحي	well-behaved (adj)	حسن السلوك

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

abilities (n)	قدرات	classmate (n)	زميل الفصل
activist (n)	ناشط	colonial (adj)	استعماري
Alzheimer's disease (n)	مرض الزهايمر	confident (adj)	واثق
ambition (n)	طموح	conform to (v) (ed)	يتفق/ينسجم مع
bright (adj)	لامع/ مشرق	cure (n) (v) (d)	علاج/يعالج
carry on (v) (ied)	يستمر	fair (n)	معرض

generation (n)	جيل	rule (n) (v) (d)	حكم/يحكم
inequality (n)	عدم المساواة	scientific (adj)	علمى
march (n)	مسيرة/يقوم بمسيرة	sign (n)	لافتة
motivate (v) (d)	يحفز	statement (n)	بيان
parliament (n)	البرلمان	typical (adj)	نموذجى
podcast (n)	تدوين صوتى	vision (n)	رؤية
protest (n) (v) (ed)	احتجاج/يحتج	vote (v) (d)	يصوت فى انتخابات
purify (v) (y ied)	ينقى	worldwide (adj)	عالمى

Workbook Vocabulary

aim (v) (ed) (n)	يهدف/هدف	formal (adj)	رسمى
character (n)	شخصية	hide (v)	يخفى
communicate (v) (d)	يتواصل/يوصل (رأى/معنى)	organiser (n)	منظم
complain (v) (ed)	يشكو	unable (adj)	غير قادر
disagree (v) (d)	يعترض		

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

around the world	حول العالم	have equal opportunities	لديه فرص متساوية
a big inspiration to	مصدر إلهام كبير لـ	in other words	بكلمات أخرى/بمعنى آخر
for a while	لفترة قصيرة	make the best of things	يستغل أفضل ما فى الأشياء
get into trouble	يدخل/يتورط فى المتاعب	inspiration to	إلهام لـ
argue with	يتجادل مع	look after	يعتنى بـ
care about	يهتم بـ	pattern to	نمط/نموذج لـ
confident about	واثق بشأن	related to	مرتبط بـ
cross with	غاضب من		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
argue	يجادل	argument	جدال	argumentative	جدلى
develop	يطور	development	تطور/تنمية	developed developing	متطور نامٍ
economise*	يقتصد	economy	اقتصاد	economic economical	اقتصادى اقتصادى (توفيرى)
notice	يلاحظ	notice	ملاحظة	noticeable	ملحوظ
reflect	يعكس	reflection	انعكاس	reflective	انعكاسى
speculate	يتأمل	speculation	تأمل	speculative	متأمل
summarise	يلخص	summary	ملخص	summarised	ملخَّص

* - In war time, people should economise on their consumption.
- The economy of the our country will improve soon.
- There should be economic solutions to the current crisis.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
alternative	بديل	option/substitute	obligation ضرورة
argue	يجادل/يخالف	disagree	agree يتفق
development	تطور	progress/evolution	backwardness تخلف
equality	مساواة	fairness	prejudice/bias تحيز/تعصب
pattern	نمط	motif/design	disorder اضطراب/خلل
reflect	يعكس	indicate/show	cover/ignore يغطي/يتجاهل
related	مرتبط	connected/relevant	alien/different غريب/مختلف
speculate	يتأمل	contemplate/figure out	disregard/neglect يهمل/يتجاهل
well-behaved	لطيف	polite	impolite/naughty مشاغب/غير مؤدب

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Developing transport plays an important part in the .... progress of any country.

a) trivial b) funny
c) literary d) economic

2 My son works with a support group for .... people who were hurt in accidents.

a) natural b) healthy
c) disabled d) strange

3 To stay competitive, producers have to increase product .... as well as cutting prices.

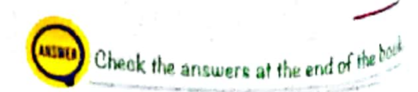
a) styling b) development
c) establishment d) custom

4 All universities should have .... academic standards for male and female students.

a) equal b) local
c) helpless d) unfair

5 There is a .... difference in prices between small shops and hypermarkets which make huge sales.

a) minor b) displayed
c) significant d) distressed



Reading Text (1)

Book of the week

What Katy Did, written by the American Susan Coolidge in 1835, is still an inspiration[1] to many of today's female authors. The story follows the adventures of 12-year-old Katy and her younger brothers and sisters. Katy had no mother and her father was a busy doctor, so the children were looked after by their kind aunt.

Katy wanted to be like a mother to her brothers and sisters, but was often impatient[2], naughty and liked to have dangerous adventures. One day, she decided to use a new swing[3], although her aunt had told her not to use it because it was broken. Katy fell from the swing and badly hurt her back. She could not walk and had to stay in bed. This made her very unhappy and cross[4], until she was visited by her cousin Helen.

Helen was disabled[5] and she taught Katy to be patient. She also showed her how to behave[6] in a more caring way to her younger brothers and sisters. After her aunt became ill and died, Katy became the head of the family. At the end of the book, she had become a wiser, better person, and she learnt to walk again.

(1) إلهام
(2) غير صبورة
(3) أرجوحة
(4) غاضب
(5) معاق
(6) يتصرف

What Katy Did

Reading Text (2)

Share of female doctors in selected countries as of 2015

Country	Share
Latvia	74.3%
Estonia	73.3%
Netherlands	51.7%
Spain	51.6%
United Kingdom	45.8%
Italy	40.3%
Australia	39.4%
United States	34.1%
Japan	20.3%

Source: OECD Health Statistics 2016

Female doctors by country

The bar graph shows the percentage[1] of female doctors in certain given countries around the world. It can be seen that there is a very significant[2] difference across countries, from a majority[3] of women doctors in some countries to a small minority[4] in others.

The country with the highest number of women doctors is Latvia which has nearly three-quarters of female doctors, while the country with the smallest number is Japan, where less than a quarter of doctors are women.

(1) نسبة ملوية
(2) هام/ذو مغزى
(3) أغلبية
(4) أقلية

Netherlands and Spain have very similar numbers of women doctors; around half the doctors in those countries are women. However, another European country Italy has around 10% fewer women doctors.

In conclusion, the most surprising thing about the figures[5] is the big differences across different countries, which do not seem to be related[6] to region, or size or economic development[7] of the country. In other words, there does not seem to be any obvious pattern to the results. It is especially interesting to note the very low number of women doctors in Japan. That may reflect[8] the stereotype that Japanese women are usually expected to look after the home, rather than work in medical or other fields.

(5) أرقام

(6) مرتبط

(7) تطور/تنمية

(8) يعكس

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)



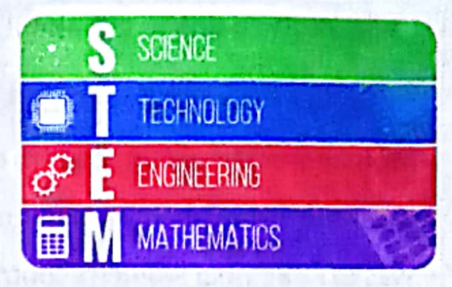
From the graph, it can be seen that there is a significant difference between people's opinions when asked the question in the graph. The highest number of people who agreed were in India, where the majority of people (80%) thought things would be better if women had more important jobs in government and business.

Perhaps the most surprising thing about the figures is that nearly 70% of people in the less developed countries, such as South Africa and Turkey, agreed with the question. However, in some of the more developed countries such as Sweden and the USA, fewer than 60% of the people agreed, while in South Korea, over half the number of people disagreed. It is especially interesting to note that in Japan, only 43% agreed. That may reflect the fact that Japan is a very traditional society.

In conclusion, we can see that in most countries, people believe that things would be better if women had more important jobs in business or government.

Listening Text (1)





Why don't more girls study STEM subjects? Despite the fact that in most countries there are more girls at university than boys, fewer girls than boys complete STEM university degrees. More girls are in school today than ever before, but they don't always have the same opportunities[1] as boys to choose the education or subjects they want. Too many girls are held back by gender biases, stereotypes, and social norms and expectations, which influence the subjects they study. Research has shown that even though girls often get better grades than boys in STEM subjects in lower school, they choose not to carry on[2] studying them later on because they worry they won't be able to follow classes and they will get poor grades.

Well, one answer to this is all - girls schools, where it seems that girls are less likely to conform[3] to stereotypes and tend to be more confident[4] about their abilities[5]. One school in Cairo has gone one step further than this, the Maadi STEM school for girls, is a school, which specialises in STEM. It is one of two new secondary schools which have opened in Egypt that focus on STEM. One of its students is Hoda Mamdouh, a 17-year-old girl from the Nile Delta. Like most teenagers, she loves playing sport and listening to music, but what makes her different is the scientific research she is doing at her school. Last May, she and two other students took third place in an International Science and Engineering Fair where 1600 of the best and brightest students in the world had presented their ideas. Together these girls have found a way to purify[6] drinking water using 24% less energy than typically used. Hoda says what they study there is far more interesting than in her old school. She says, "We do real research. Here everyone's a teacher, and everyone's a student."

The aim of the school is to raise a generation of critical thinkers and leaders. Certainly, the girls at Maadi seem inspired and motivated[7] to become the next leaders. Hoda's ambition after she graduates is to find a cure for Alzheimer's disease[8], a disease which affects the brains of older people.

(1) فرص
(2) يستمر
(3) يتفق/ينسجم
(4) واثق
(5) قدرات
(6) ينقى
(7) متحفز
(8) مرض الزهايمر

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

Today, I'm going to talk about Women's Day in Egypt.

Egypt's Women's Day is on 16 March, but in 2019, there was a special '16 Days of Egyptian Women' from the 1st to the 16th of March. The organisers had chosen these days to remember the events in 1919, when women marched on the street to complain about colonial rule. This event was to remember women's contribution to Egyptian society.

In my opinion, women are increasingly important in Egyptian society. For example, there are now around 90 ; women who are members of parliament, more than ever before. In 2021, many women have become judges for the first time. The future is bright for Egyptian women.

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 This young player is very talented and has a/an .... future.

a) uncertain
b) dim
c) bright
d) devastated

2 All workers have to .... to safety rules in the building site and this is inspected regularly.

a) conform
b) contradict
c) puzzle
d) produce

3 The water used to make juice is .... by passing it through a special filter.

a) remade
b) disposed
c) damaged
d) purified

4 The people who planned the New Capital had a .... of clean modern housing for everyone.

a) sight
b) vision
c) picture
d) review

5 Only three workers said their supervisors know what .... them to do their best work.

a) motivates
b) silences
c) punishes
d) threatens



Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

cross غاضب
- angry or annoyed

development تطور/تنمية
- the process of gradually becoming bigger, better, stronger, or more advanced

majority أغلبية
- most of the people or things in a group

swing أرجوحة
- a seat hanging from ropes or chains, usually used by children to play on by moving it forwards and backwards using their legs

Notes on Vocabulary

1

disabled = handicapped
معاق جسديًا أو ذهنيًا (بسبب مشكلة دائمة)

disabled = handicapped: not able to use a part of your body properly or not able to learn normally, because of a permanent problem
- Disabled people should have the same rights and choices as everyone else.
- The charity provides opportunities and facilities for disabled people to take part in sport.

special needs
احتياجات خاصة

if someone has special needs, they have physical or mental disabilities
- Children with special needs are allowed to join the same schools with other normal ones.

learning difficulties/ disabilities
صعوبات تعلم

if someone has learning difficulties, they have difficulty learning basic skills or information
- Our school has special courses for students with learning difficulties/disabilities such as dyslexia. عسر القراءة

figure

تستخدم كلمة figure بمعانٍ مختلفة، منها:

١- رقم يمثل كمية محددة (مثل تقديرات رسمية أو حكومية).
- Official figures show that crime rate is falling.

٢- مقدار محدد من المال.
- The cost of the new project may be an estimated figure of 200 million.

٣- شخص مهم أو مشهور في شأن ما.
- Usain Bolt is one of the most popular figures in athletics

٤- قوام (شكل الجسم وخاصة الخاص بالنساء).
- Most women are keen on watching their figure.

٥- شكل أو رسم توضيحي في كتاب أو مطبوعات.
- The results are illustrated in figure 3 opposite.

2

3

programme برنامج (تشاهده في التليفزيون أو تستمع له في الإذاعة)

something that you watch on television, or listen to on the radio
- What's your favourite television programme?
- I watched an interesting programme about the elections last night.

documentary فيلم وثائقي

a programme that gives you facts and information about a serious subject, such as history, science, or social problems
- I watched a moving documentary about homeless people.

podcast تدوين صوتي (ملف صوتي أو صور يمكن تحميله من الإنترنت)

a file of recorded sound and sometimes pictures that you can download from the Internet
- The interview is available as a podcast.

4

grade تقدير شهادة/امتحان، صف دراسي
- He got a grade A in his university degree.
- My brother is in grade six.

rank رُتْبَة (عسكرية/اجتماعية)
- My brother was promoted to the rank of captain.
- This hotel was used only by people of high rank.

5

classmate زميل دراسة
- Osama has been my classmate for years. We are in the same class.

colleague زميل عمل
- Friends and colleagues will remember him with affection.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- What Katy Did, written by the American Susan Coolidge in 1835, is still an inspiration to many of today's female authors.

لاحظ استخدام الفاصلتين هنا وحذف ضمير الوصل، فالجملة أصلها:

What Katy Did, which was written by the American Susan Coolidge in 1835, is still an inspiration (1) to many of today's female authors.

- .... which do not seem to be related to region, or size or economic development of the country.

لاحظ استخدام (to be + p.p.) بعد (seem) في حالات المبني للمجهول.

- Like most teenagers, she loves playing sport and listening to music.

لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد (love).

- Certainly, the girls at Maadi seem inspired and motivated to become the next leaders.

لاحظ استخدام الصفة بعد الفعل (seem) مثل (verb to be).

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Our channel made a TV .... about the Grand Egyptian Museum to be shown on the occasion of its inauguration.

a) podcast
b) show
c) documentary
d) programme

2 When my brother started his new job, all his .... were friendly and helpful.

a) rivals
b) competitors
c) classmates
d) colleagues

3 The head teacher said that the fifth .... will perform their annual play this week.

a) rank
b) degree
c) grade
d) course

4 These figures mean that almost 7% of the working population is unemployed. We can replace "figures" here by ".............."

a) numbers
b) shapes
c) characters
d) bodies

5 To download the .... of the lecture, click on the link below.

a) programme
b) podcast
c) show
d) documentary





Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Workbook Vocabulary & Vocabulary Notes

1 The researchers .... the results of the study in three main tables.
a) phrased b) devised c) raised d) summarised

2 Because of the danger of burning fossil fuels, we must use .... sources of energy more and more.
a) traditional b) alternative c) economic d) consumed

3 Sameh has a good working relationship with his new .... who are very friendly.
a) colleagues b) classmates c) companions d) advisers

4 We have enjoyed a period of steady .... growth for a few years which resulted in more jobs.
a) social b) economic c) cultural d) electric

5 Although they have gained many of their rights, women have not yet achieved full .... with men in the Arab World.
a) bias b) quality c) equality d) ability

6 The official .... for April show a slight improvement on previous months.
a) diaries b) visions c) sums d) figures

7 The .... of the students like the new school; only two students said it was bad.
a) maturity b) minority c) majority d) possibility

8 Many people have changed their spending .... in response to changing conditions.
a) times b) patterns c) losses d) profits

9 The lawyer .... for a reduction in the sentence مدة حبس of his client.
a) voted b) charged c) hid d) argued

10 Whether you can go to a good faculty or not depends on what exam .... you get.
a) grades b) ranks c) degree d) angles

11 My grandfather suffers from memory loss .... to his Alzheimer's disease.
a) puzzled b) inspected c) related d) reflected

12 According to the health ...., eight people die each day waiting for a transplant.
a) facility b) care c) searches d) statistics

13 STEM students have a higher level of mathematical .... than other students of their age.
a) ability b) statement c) fiction d) reflection

14 Cairo Book .... is one of the most important cultural events in the Arab world.
a) Feast b) Gallery c) Conference d) Fair

15 The .... of the musical event said that all the money collected would go to charities.
a) organisers b) authors c) editors d) customers

16 The bar .... shows sales on the left and cost of sales on the right.
a) data b) signal c) graph d) study

17 My mother gets .... with my sister if she leaves the kitchen in a mess.
a) relaxed b) cross c) delighted d) content

18 The .... of the scientific experiment surprised everyone that read about it.
a) result b) reason c) opinion d) importance

19 The young writer's new book clearly .... his beliefs about life.
a) reacts b) reflects c) perfects d) conforms

20 The news about the agreement .... hopes for peace in the area.
a) faded b) lost c) rose d) raised

21 It is worth .... that the most successful companies had the lowest prices.
a) ignoring b) noting c) denying d) condemning

22 In a formal interview, try to maintain a good eye ....'with the interviewer.
a) communication b) figure
c) contact d) cure

23 Our grandfather always used to tell us about his .... at sea when he worked on a fishing boat.
a) experiments b) marches c) training d) adventures

24 The young businessman had a clear .... of what he wanted to achieve, so his business succeeded.
a) sight b) vision c) right d) view

25 Movies are the best way to .... ideas especially to the young men and women nowadays.
a) link b) contact c) tie d) communicate

26 More and more people are watching cookery .... on TV especially by well-known chefs.
a) programmes b) documentaries c) podcasts d) serials

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

27 The government is working hard to facilitate .... and economic activity that provides jobs.
a) develop b) developing c) development d) developed

28 Women achieve great results if they .... equal opportunities with men.
a) give b) have c) lose d) miss

29 My younger brother is a naughty boy and always gets .... trouble at school.
a) into b) at c) to d) for

30 I trust that my son is well-behaved and wouldn't do anything wrong at the party. The synonym of the adjective "well-behaved" is ....
a) bad-tempered b) cruel c) active d) polite

31 The young actor took direct .... from the films of Adel Emam.
a) inspire b) inspiration c) inspired d) inspiring

32 You must feel confident .... your ability to succeed in life.
a) in b) with c) out d) about

33 In these critical conditions, we must .... the best of things and not waste anything.
a) take b) make c) work d) do

34 After two days, there was a .... improvement in my mother's health.
a) notice b) noticing c) noticeable d) noting

35 These women are demanding fairness and equality in their pay. The antonym of the noun "equality" is ....
a) patience b) justice c) prejudice d) determination





Lessons 3 & 4

B Language

Past perfect (extra points)

1.

No sooner Hardly Scarcely	+	لم يكد ...... حتى ...... had + subject + P.P. did + subject + Inf. الماضى التام أو البسيط فى شكل سؤال	+	than when when	+	Past simple

- No sooner had Marwa found the money than she reported the police.
- No sooner did Marwa find the money than she reported the police.

إذا جاءت هذه الكلمات فى أول الكلام تكون القاعدة السابقة، وإذا لم تأتِ فى أول الكلام يكون الآتى:

Subject + had	no sooner hardly scarcely	+ P.P. +	than when when	+	Past simple ماضٍ بسيط

- Marwa had hardly found the money when she reported the police.

2. On + v.ing = When + clause

- On looking at the question, I knew the answer. = When I looked ....., I knew .....

3. Having + P.P. = After + Past perfect

- Having booked the tickets, I took the train to Assuit. = After I had booked .....

4. It was only when إنه فقط عندما / It wasn't until لم يكن حتى + ماضٍ تام + that + ماضٍ بسيط

- It was only when he had finished his work that he helped me.
- It wasn't until he had finished his work that he helped me.

لاحظ

١) يجب ملاحظة المبنى للمجهول جيدًا إذا بدأت الجملة بالمفعول، وهنا نستخدم had been + P.P. للماضى التام وwas/ were + P.P. للماضى البسيط.

- After the food had been cooked, it was eaten.
- Before the email was sent, it had been written.

٢) يمكن استخدام الاسم بعد after/before/until وليس جملة كاملة.

- My friends visited me after lunch yesterday.
- Before the war, the two countries had threatened each other.

٣) يمكن أن يستخدم الماضى التام للإشارة إلى حدث تم فى وقت محدد على عكس المضارع التام، وفى هذه الحالة يمكن استخدام الماضى البسيط بدلًا منه.

He had been to Aswan once in 2000 before he moved there in 2015.
He went to Aswan once in 2000 before he moved there in 2015.

ولكن إذا أشار الماضى التام إلى خبرة وليس حدث محدد لا يمكن استخدام الماضى البسيط.

He had never seen snow until he moved to Europe. NOT ~~He never saw snow~~...

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 After the house ...., it was furnished.

a) had been painted b) has painted c) had painted d) is painted

2 After .... in the company for ten years, he left it.

a) works b) worked c) had worked d) working

3 No sooner .... a new flat than he moved in.

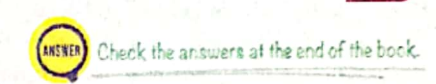
a) he had found b) he found c) had he found d) was he finding

4 On .... the sign "No Parking", he looked for another place to park.

a) seeing b) had seen c) saw d) he had seen

5 Having .... the land for cultivation, he sowed the seeds.

a) been prepared b) had prepared c) prepare d) prepared



Past tenses (Summary)

Tense	Form	Usage
Past simple الماضي البسيط	كل الضمائر + التصريف الثاني	For actions which happened immediately one after the other in the past. للأحداث التي حدثت تباعًا واحدًا تلو الآخر في الماضي.
		- Ola helped the children with their homework when her husband came home. رجع زوجها ثم ساعدوا الأطفال معًا في الواجب. (ليس هناك فارق زمني بين الرجوع والمساعدة)
Past continuous الماضي المستمر	was/were + v-ing	For an action which was in progress when another action interrupted it. يستخدم لحدث كان مستمرًا (حدث طويل) عندما قطعه حدث آخر (حدث قصير).
		- Ola was helping the children with their homework when her husband came home. كانت تساعد الأطفال في واجبهم عندما رجع زوجها. (المساعدة مستمرة والرجوع قاطع)
Past perfect الماضي التام	had + P.P.	For an action which happened before another past action. يعبر عن حدث تم قبل حدث ماضٍ آخر في الماضي؛ الحدث الأول تام، والثاني بسيط.
		- Ola had already helped the children with their homework when her husband came home. كانت قد انتهت بالفعل من مساعدة الأطفال في واجبهم عندما رجع زوجها. (المساعدة أولًا والرجوع ثانيًا)
Past perfect continuous الماضي التام المستمر	had been + v-ing	For an action which started and finished in the past before another past action. حدث بدأ واستمر فترة وانتهى قبل حدوث آخر في الماضي.
		- Ola had been helping the children for hours when her husband came home. كانت تساعد الأطفال لمدة ساعات عندما رجع زوجها. (كانت المساعدة مستمرة لفترة وانتهت قبل رجوع الزوج)

Adjectives (comparatives – superlatives)

	adjective		Comparison		Superlative
			er + than		The + est
One syllable	tall	طويل	taller	than	the tallest
	young	صغير السن	younger	than	the youngest
	soft	ناعم	softer	than	the softest
			r + than		The + st
One syllable ending in (e)	large	واسع	larger	than	the largest
	wide	عريض	wider	than	the widest
One syllable	تضعيف الحرف الساكن وإضافة				
			er + than		The + est
consonant + vowel + consonant	big	كبير الحجم	bigger	than	The biggest
	hot	ساخن	hotter	than	the hottest
	نحذف حرف y ونضيف				
			ier + than		The + iest
Two syllables ending in (y)	heavy	ثقيل	heavier	than	the heaviest
	happy	سعيد	happier	than	the happiest
			More + adjective		The most + adj.
Two or more syllables	modern	عصرى	more modern	than	the most modern
	expensive	غالِ	more expensive	than	the most expensive
	حالات خاصة تحفظ				
Irregular adjectives	good	جيد	better than		the best
	bad	سيئ	worse than		the worst
	little	قليل	less than		the least
	much/ many	كثير	more than		the most
	far	بعيد	farther/further than		the farthest/furthest

Got it

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I think nobody is .... than Hisham; he wins all the races.

a) fast **b)** more fast **c)** most fast **d)** faster

الإجابة هى (d) لأنها صفة قصيرة والمقارنة بين طرفين.

as + adj. + as/not as (so) + adj. + as	تساوى وعدم تساوى الصفات
Omar is as clever as Ahmed.	فى التساوى الصفة بين as ... as
Eman isn't so/as young as her sister Rana.	فى نفى التساوى isn't as/so ... as
Special cases	حالات خاصة
Rana is the younger of two sisters.	فى التفضيل بين اثنين the+er/ more
Gold is much/ a lot more expensive than wood.	قبل المقارنة مع الفارق الكبير much/ a lot
Silver is a bit / a little cheaper than gold.	عند الفرق القليل a bit/ a little
No boy in class is cleverer than Ahmed.	نستخدم no فى المقارنة.
I've never met a stronger person than Ali.	نستخدم never فى المقارنة.
Ali is the strongest person I've ever met.	نستخدم ever فى التفضيل.
Summer is less cold than winter.	Less قبل أى صفة فى المقارنة.
The fewer mistakes you make, the higher marks you get.	The + صفة مقارنة, the + صفة مقارنة كلما ..... كلما ....



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- No sooner had my dad .... the corporation than he asked me to work there.

a) found b) find c) founded d) been found

Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... animal which I have seen in Egypt is a camel.
   a) most big b) biggest
   c) more big d) bigger
2. I'm not keen on football. For me, it is .... important thing.
   a) the least b) the most
   c) the best d) the little
3. Mr Naser is the .... director that can solve your problems.
   a) more intelligent b) intelligent
   c) most intelligent d) intelligence
4. Video cassettes are not .... DVDs.
   a) moderner than b) so modern so
   c) as modern like d) as modern as
5. Some think that the more money you have, the .... you become.
   a) happy b) happier
   c) happiest d) more happy

Check the answers at the end of the book.



Language Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Check your understanding.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Sara went into the kitchen and found lots of fresh bread on the table. Her mother ....
a) has been baking
b) was baking
c) baked
d) had been baking

2 When he arrived at school, Ahmed's hair was wet. It ....
a) was being raining
b) had been raining
c) has rained
d) rained

3 By the time he was 12, my brother .... three languages. He spoke Arabic, English and French.
a) learnt
b) was learning
c) had learnt
d) had been learning

4 When I went to my friend's flat, she .... for school.
a) had already left
b) has already left
c) had been leaving
d) already left

5 Last year, I spent a month in France. I .... of going there since I was a child.
a) have dreamed
b) had dreamed
c) dreamed
d) was dreaming

6 I apologised for coming late because I .... for my glasses.
a) had been looking
b) looked
c) have been looking
d) had looked

7 My mother is two years .... than my father.
a) youngest b) young c) smaller d) younger

8 The little children's clothes were dirty because they .... in the park all day.
a) have been playing
b) were playing
c) had been playing
d) played

9 We recently learned that Samia .... as a secret agent for years.
a) has acted
b) had been acting
c) acted
d) is acting

10 Mona was tired yesterday because she .... for the test all day.
a) had been revising
b) had revised
c) revised
d) revising

11 He noticed that I .... the car. It was smooth and shiny.
a) was cleaning
b) had been cleaning
c) had cleaned
d) have cleaned

12 We .... 500 miles and we needed some rest.
a) have driven b) were driving c) had been driving d) had driven

13 After the first course, Dalia became much .... in learning English than before.
a) interested
b) more interested
c) interesting
d) more interesting

14 Osama has .... friends than I do.
a) few
b) fewer
c) less
d) several

15 He found everything rather strange as he .... never .... abroad before.

a) has/been
b) hasn't/been
c) had/been
d) hadn't/been

16 It was the first time she .... ever .... a prize.

a) would/win
b) had/won
c) had/been winning
d) has/won

17 By the time I got to the stadium, they .... for ten minutes.

a) were playing
b) had already played
c) have already played
d) had already been playing

18 The manager gave the employees .... instructions on how to operate the new machines.

a) far
b) farther
c) further
d) both b & c

19 Hardly .... the phone down when it started ringing again.

a) I had put
b) will I have put
c) had I put
d) have I put

20 .... seeing the policeman, the thief ran away.

a) While
b) On
c) As soon As
d) Hardly

21 How many hours .... when you woke him up?

a) had he slept
b) had he been sleeping
c) has he slept
d) did he sleep

22 I .... only three pounds, so I couldn't take a taxi. I had to walk.

a) have had
b) was having
c) had been having
d) had had

23 After ...., the food was eaten.

a) cooking
b) been cooked
c) being cooked
d) had been cooked

24 My brother likes the .... fashion in European countries.

a) later
b) late
c) last
d) latest

25 After I .... out of the exam, I realised that I had answered one question wrong.

a) had got
b) got
c) getting
d) had been got

26 It wasn't until last March that I .... about the death of my uncle in Australia.

a) had informed
b) informed
c) was informed
d) was informing

27 At first I was very sad, but after a while I .... to be happy.

a) had begun
b) have begun
c) was beginning
d) began

28 The student decided not to make that mistake again after .... by the teacher.

a) being punished
b) punishing
c) had punished
d) had been punished

29 As soon as the girl ...., we told the police.

a) had been disappeared
b) disappeared
c) was disappeared
d) has disappeared

30 The pharaohs believed in life after ....

a) they had died
b) had died
c) death
d) they die







Lessons 3 & 4

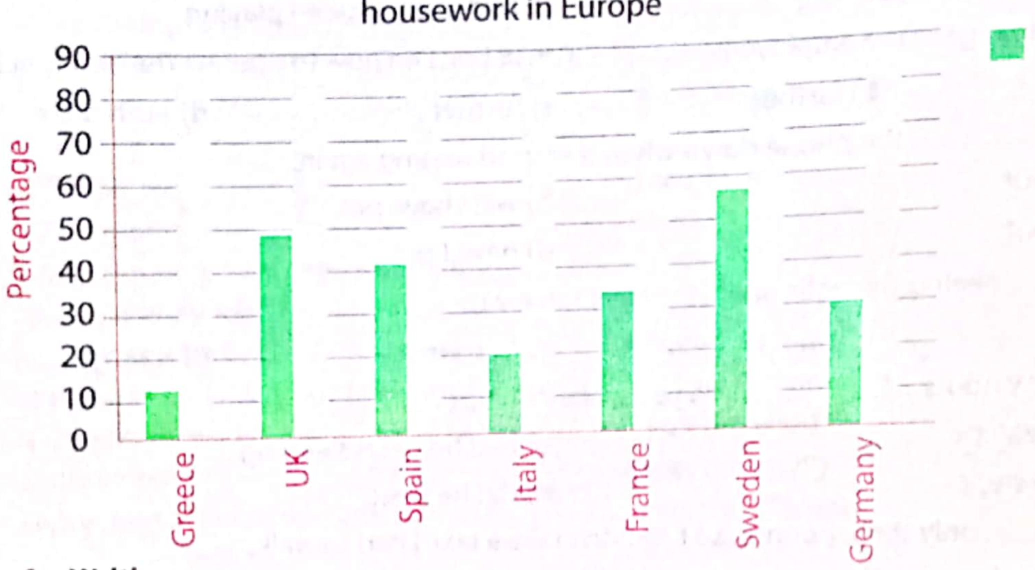
Don't forget to study this part from the Skills Booklet.

C General Skills

Writing

Report writing

Write a report based on the following graph.



Tips for Writing:

- Start by saying exactly what the graph shows. ابدأ بذكر ما يظهره الرسم البياني بالضبط.
- Describe the change as precisely as you can. صف التغير بشكل دقيق بقدر الإمكان.
- Use the data and numbers from the graph. استخدم البيانات والأرقام من الرسم البياني.
- Compare the information. قارن المعلومات.
- Talk about the differences and similarities. تحدث عن الاختلافات والتشابهات.
- Conclude by saying what the main changes and their meanings are. اختتم بقول ما هي التغييرات الرئيسية وما تعنيه.



The bar graph shows the percentage of men and women doing housework in Europe. It is clearly seen that there is a very significant difference across countries, from a majority of men, to a small minority in others. Nevertheless, there are no significant differences in the numbers concerning women doing housework in these countries.

The country with the highest number of men doing housework is Sweden where nearly 60% of men do housework, while the country with the smallest number is Greece, where less than 15% of men do housework.

Greece, England, Italy and Spain have very similar numbers; more than 80% of women do housework. However, in France and Sweden around 80 % of women do housework. The country with the smallest number is Germany, where about 70% of women do housework.

In conclusion, the most surprising thing about the figures is the big similarity across different countries concerning women and a slight difference concerning men. It is especially interesting to note that Sweden has the majority of men and women doing housework. It may show that people in this country share an approach of sharing the responsibilities of life.

Test Yourself in 20

Unit 2
Lessons 3 & 4

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Leila is one of a small .... of women working in the engineering department in the company. There are only three.
a) majority b) minority c) maturity d) priority

2 There is no .... distinction between the two designs. They look very similar.
a) unclear b) vague c) obvious d) minor

3 Students who are .... need extra support and special facilities at school.
a) normal b) disabled c) ordinary d) super

4 A developed society is the one where women and men are .... partners.
a) equal b) biased c) unfair d) vain

5 Since my father stopped smoking, he has become so .... that he gets angry at any time.
a) excited b) pleased c) relaxed d) grumpy

6 I have known my friend Samy since we were .... in high school.
a) buyers b) bosses c) classmates d) colleagues

7 Hilana Sedarous's life can be an inspiration .... young women to succeed in life.
a) in b) to c) for d) with

8 Technology will play a .... role in classroom teaching in the next few years in Egypt.
a) complicated b) trivial c) minor d) significant

9 I .... to make an appointment with the manager for two days before I finally succeeded.
a) had tried b) had been trying c) was trying d) have been trying

10 How many times .... to the North Coast before you bought a chalet there?
a) were you b) have you been
c) had you been being d) had you been

11 Salma .... at Cairo University for 4 years before she qualified.
a) had been studying b) had studied
c) has been studying d) was studying

12 The storm .... the house that they had built.
a) destroyed b) had been destroyed
c) was destroying d) had destroyed

13 We .... at the same supermarket for fifteen years, so we were sad when it closed.
a) were shopping b) had shopped
c) have been shopping d) had been shopping

14 My grandfather is the .... member in our family.
a) eldest b) oldest c) elder d) both a & b

15 Mr. Hamdy is the .... teacher I've ever had. His students respect him much.
a) inspiring b) most inspiring
c) much inspiring d) more inspiring

16 Hoda cooked lunch after she .... the house.
a) has been cleaning b) had cleaned
c) had been cleaning d) was cleaning

17 Which of the following sentences is punctuated correctly?
a) The women's' s dresses are on the second floor.
b) The woman' dresses are on the second floor.
c) The women's' dresses are on the second floor.
d) The women's dresses are on the second floor.

18 What should the last sentence in the introduction paragraph be?

a) thesis statement
b) topic sentence
c) closing sentence
d) transition sentence

19 "I've never forgotten this bad experience, and I'd like to advise everyone not to drive when he/she is very tired."

The sentence above is ....

a) an introduction to a narrative essay
b) the final outcome and the message when concluding an essay
c) a topic sentence to narrate an incident
d) a supporting sentence to persuade the reader to do something

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

"Today is spring cleaning day!" mother announced cheerily[1]. Gehad and her sister groaned[2]. This could only mean one thing – a lot of hard work. However, they put on a brave smile and got ready to work. They knew that their mother needed their help. She was already working two jobs to support them and had very little spare time. So, they quickly got on with the job. The two sisters were helpful and grateful[3]. They wouldn't let their mother do the cleaning alone.

Gehad opted[4] to clean the study while her sister was asked to clean their room. While dusting[5] and rearranging the book and stuff[6] in the study, Gehad came across a picture of her late father. It was a picture of them having a wonderful day at the beach. Gehad felt tears coming to her eyes. She really missed her father. When her mother came in, Gehad quickly wiped[7] her tears and busied[8] herself with the shelves. She did not want to upset her mother. She knew her mother missed him just as much as her.

Gehad suddenly went to her mother and hugged[9] her tight. "What's wrong, Gehad?" asked her mother. "Nothing, I just want to tell you that I love you very much. Don't work too hard, Mum," said Gehad. Her mother just smiled at her. The mother thanked her daughters a lot. After the cleaning was over, they had a well-deserved treat[10] at McDonalds.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20 The best title to the passage is ....

a) The good and cooperative family
b) Gehad and her sister
c) The meal at the restaurant
d) The good mother

21 The synonym of the word "groan" is ....

a) run
b) moan
c) help
d) accept

22 "They had a well-deserved treat at McDonalds". Treat here means ....

a) discuss
b) cure
c) meal
d) behave

23 The two children groaned because ....

a) their mother punished them
b) they wanted to do their homework
c) they wanted to have a meal at McDonalds
d) they knew that spring cleaning meant a lot of hard work.

24 Gehad's mother worked two jobs because ....

a) she had to support the whole family
b) she wanted to save much money
c) the father was ill and they wanted money
d) she had much spare time

(3) ممتن (4) فضلت (5) تنظيف (6) أغراض (7) مسحت (8) انشغلت (9) احتضنت (10) عزومة

25 The words 'late father' mean that ....

a) Gehad's father immigrated
b) Gehad's father escaped
c) Gehad's father died
d) Gehad's father was imprisoned

26 Gehad didn't want her mother to see her crying because ....

a) she didn't want her to know that her father died
b) she didn't want to be punished
c) she didn't want to upset her mother
d) she didn't want to stop cleaning

27 What kind of girl do you think Gehad is?

a) She is a hard-working girl.
b) She is a wasteful girl.
c) She is a cruel and aggressive girl.
d) She is a loving and thoughtful girl.

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d:

28 Egypt celebrates Women's Day on the 16th of March which is a special day in the history of Egyptian women's struggle towards her rights. It dates back to its first participation in political demonstrations during the1919 revolution.

a) تحتفل مصر بيوم المرأة فى السادس عشر من مارس، وهو يوم خاص فى تاريخ نضال المرأة المصرية من أجل واجباتها ويعود إلى مشاركتها الأولى فى التظاهرات السياسية خلال ثورة ١٩١٩.
b) تحتفل مصر بيوم المرأة فى السادس عشر من مارس، وهو يوم خاص فى تاريخ انتصار المرأة المصرية من أجل حقوقها ويعود إلى مشاركتها الأولى فى التظاهرات السياسية خلال ثورة ١٩١٩.
c) تحتفل مصر بيوم المرأة فى السادس عشر من مارس، وهو يوم خاص فى تاريخ نضال المرأة المصرية من أجل حقوقها. ويعود إلى مشاركتها الأولى فى الإظهارات السياسية خلال ثورة ١٩١٩.
d) تحتفل مصر بيوم المرأة فى السادس عشر من مارس، وهو يوم خاص فى تاريخ نضال المرأة المصرية من أجل حقوقها. ويعود إلى مشاركتها الأولى فى التظاهرات السياسية خلال ثورة ١٩١٩.

29 ستستضيف مصر الدورة السابعة والعشرين لمؤتمر المناخ فى نوفمبر المقبل فى شرم الشيخ. وتأمل أن يكون نقطة تحول على صعيد عمل المناخ الدولى.

a) Egypt will host the 27th tournament of the Climate Conference next November in Sharm El-Sheikh. It hopes it will be a turning point for international climate action.
b) Egypt will host the 27th championship of the Climate Conference next November in Sharm El-Sheikh. It hopes it will be a turning point for international climate race.
c) Egypt will host the 27th session of the Climate Conference next November in Sharm El-Sheikh. It hopes it will be a turning point for international climate action.
d) Egypt will host the 27th session of the Climate Conference next November in Sharm El-Sheikh. It hopes it will be a backward point for international climate action.

30 يسعى المجلس القومى للمرأة إلى ترسيخ الاعتراف بالقيمة الجوهرية لحقوق المرأة المصرية وعلى تفعيل واحترام وحماية هذه الحقوق.

a) The National Council for Women seeks to consolidate the recognition of the intrinsic value of Egyptian women's rights and to activate, respect and protect these rights.
b) The National Council for Women seeks to stabilise the recognition of the intrinsic value of Egyptian women's rights and to prohibit, respect and protect these rights.
c) The National Council for Women seeks to settle down the recognition of the intrinsic value of Egyptian women's rights and to prospect, respect and protect these rights.
d) The National Council for Women seeks to consolidate the admittance of the intrinsic value of Egyptian women's rights and to rehabilitate, respect and protect these rights.

Study

Chapter 2 (Great Expectations)

Vocabulary

bride (n)	عروس	inn (n)	حانة
candle (n)	شمعة	lamb (n)	حمل /خروف صغير
common (n)	غير مهذب/ عامى	nearby (adj)	مجاور
curtains (n)	ستائر	position (n)	موقف /مركز
daylight (n)	ضوء النهار	practise (v) (d)	يمارس
dressing room (n)	غرفة الملابس	shake (v)	يهز
eagle (n)	نسر	stir (v) (red)	يقلب
education (n)	تعليم	tears (n)	دموع
fortune (n)	ثروة	turn away	يبتعد
gate (n)	بوابة	ugly (adj)	قبيح
grateful (adj)	شاكر /ممنون	veil (n)	حجاب /طرحة

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

A broken heart	قلب محطم حزنًا	In the distance	على البعد
had a better education	حصلوا على تعليم أفضل	shake my head	أهز رأسى
had a good heart	كان طيب القلب	tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة
ashamed of	خجلان من	grateful to	ممتن لـ
go out	ينطفئ (مصباح)	hear of	يسمع عن



Great Expectations Exercises
Chapter (2)

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 On her wedding day, the .... looked truly beautiful.
a) groom b) bridegroom c) bride d) pride

2 Yasser just .... his head when I asked him if he was sick.
a) stirred b) caught c) waved d) shook

3 My grandfather .... a good heart, and he loves to help people.
a) remains b) has c) stays d) takes

4 I'm .... for all the help you've given me.
a) grateful b) ashamed c) proud d) ungrateful

5 It'll cost you a .... if you stay in hotels instead of youth hostels.
a) deal b) fortune c) benefit d) loss

6 The .... which my daughter chose in her wedding day covered her face.
a) tail b) vain c) vein d) veil

7 When the electricity was cut off, we used a ....
a) candle b) scandal c) candy d) chandler

8 She has a .... heart because she has lost her only son.
a) break b) broke c) breaking d) broken

9 He was deeply .... of his bad behaviour.
a) shy b) ashamed c) happy d) pleased

10 You'd better .... your tea; I put some honey in it, and it all sank to the bottom.
a) scare b) stare c) stir d) make

11 I am very grateful .... my parents for supporting me while I studied English in America.
a) with b) for c) to d) at

12 Stella thought Pip was very .... and uneducated.
a) respected b) literate c) celebrated d) common

13 A lot of people were moved to .... by the story of the homeless child.
a) fun b) joy c) tears d) fierce

14 Salim's main aim is to improve his social .... through education and hard work.
a) location b) position c) account d) balance

15 My father always tells me that it's better to .... the truth.
a) tell b) ask c) hide d) prevail

Unit 2

Advanced & Open
General Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

إجابة هذه التدريبات موجودة بنهاية الكتاب.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Mr Ehab's short time in the army doesn't .... him as a military expert as he had little experience.
a) reward b) retrain c) qualify d) mature

2 The team captain's heroic effort .... great determination among other players.
a) accepted b) inspired c) aspired d) intended

3 Children like to have all kinds of juice through a ....
a) hay b) straw c) barrow d) stick

4 Although it is expensive, mother insists on buying only organic .... from the market.
a) produce b) product c) productive d) producer

5 Many people applied for these jobs, but only a few make the ....
a) access b) certificate c) degree d) grade

6 The new law will help small businesses to compete on .... terms with large multinational corporations.
a) straight b) twisted c) equal d) wealthy

7 The customer service department .... the client into withdrawing his complaint.
a) fought b) accepted c) agreed d) argued

8 The age of .... in Britain was reduced from 21 to 18 in 1970.
a) majority b) minority c) priority d) superiority

9 The workers are unhappy with this year's pay.................... . They wanted it to be higher.
a) prize b) award c) present d) trophy

10 We finally made it through the bureaucratic .... course and got our visas.
a) academic b) practical c) obstacle d) training

11 Did you know that Hady .... behind because of his bad behaviour?
a) had left b) has left c) had been leaving d) had been left

12 Ola looked relaxed because she .... to music the moment I saw her.
a) listened b) was listening c) had been listening d) has been listening

13 On seeing the thief, ...
a) he ran away b) the car stopped c) the police chased him d) he was arrested

14 I'd rather you .... to school yesterday.
a) had gone b) went c) was going d) had been going

15 I wish I .... that slow bus to the Book Fair. It took three hours.
a) took b) take c) hadn't taken d) was taking

16 Ahmed's house is .... to school than mine
a) further b) farther c) far d) both a & b

17 Messi .... for Barcelona from 2004 to 2021.
a) had played b) played c) was playing d) playing

18 Hany looks tired. He .... on the garden for 5 hours.
a) had been working b) had worked c) has been working d) was working

19 .... a celebrity before 2020?
a) Had you really never seen
b) Did you really never see
c) Have you really never seen
d) Are you really never seen

20 I .... that Sarah was American not Egyptian.
a) had always been thinking
b) did never think
c) had always thought
d) have never thought

Unit 2  Al-Adwaa Test

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The caller made an important .... to the debate in the programme.
a) aspiration b) inspection c) production d) contribution

2 We should avoid negative .... regarding women's role in society.
a) paintings b) stereotypes c) surveys d) reputations

3 The government is taking more steps to eliminate all forms of .... against women.
a) history b) research c) justice d) prejudice

4 The village's crowded classrooms .... the need for building another school schools there.
a) ignore b) argue c) demonstrate d) condemn

5 The Egyptian turtle, which is very rare, is mainly located in the Mediterranean .... in Egypt and Libya.
a) district b) zone c) region d) village

6 There is a vegetarian .... on the menu for those who don't eat meat every day.
a) alternative b) constitution c) prescription d) intention

7 My pen-friend claims to be distantly .... to the British royal family.
a) related b) attracted c) suck d) communicated

8 The story reflects very modern concerns and issues. The verb "reflect" is the antonym of the verb ....
a) care b) show c) ignore d) believe

9 How long .... to contact Sarah before you gave up?
a) will you try b) had you been trying
c) have you been trying d) were you trying

10 I .... my driving test before I bought the car.
a) had been passing b) have passed
c) had passed d) have been passing

11 I .... in the boat for two hours when I caught a huge fish.
a) was sitting b) sat
c) have been sitting d) had been sitting

12 When she died, they .... married for 40 years.
a) had been b) had been being c) have been d) were

13 The apple tree and the pear tree are both the same height. They are .... each other.
a) as tall as b) taller than c) most taller d) most tallest

14 My father .... as a police officer for 30 years before he finally retired.
a) had been working b) has been working
c) worked d) was working

15 Tennis is a far .... game than football.
a) hardest b) hard c) harder d) hardly

16 Tarek explained that they were hot because they .... tennis for 2 hours.
a) would play b) had been playing
c) are playing d) have been playing

17 Which words of the following sentence have the correct place of the hyphen?
The novel The Martian Chronicles has twenty two chapters.
a) novel-The Martian Chronicles b) twenty-two-chapters
c) twenty-two d) Correct as is

18 Choose the sentence with the correct punctuation.
a) You asked for forgiveness, he granted it to you.
b) You asked for forgiveness; he granted it to you.
c) You asked for: forgiveness. He granted it to you.
d) You asked for forgiveness he granted it to you.

19 Which of the following is NOT part of the writing process?

a) planning b) drafting c) revising d) audience

20 In an essay about the advantages and disadvantages of a thing, the introduction sentence should ....

a) refer to the two different points of view
b) refer to the writer's point of view
c) refer to one point of view
d) refer to other people's opinion

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

One of England's greatest writers, Charles Dickens, was born in 1812. His father was careless with money. When he was 12, he had to leave school to work in a shoe-dye[1] factory in London because his father had been imprisoned for debt. This experience deeply shamed and frightened the young boy, and those feelings were later expressed in his writing, particularly in his descriptions of the working conditions of the poor Victorian factories.

When his father came into inheritance[2], young Dickens could return to his school, but the family's fortunes were never very secure. At the age of 15, he left school to join a law firm as a clerk. Then, after four years, he went into journalism, reporting law cases and parliamentary debates. These work experiences helped to develop still further his social awareness, which again would later be reflected in his novels.

Dickens' success as a writer began when he started writing *The Pickwick Papers* in 1836. These were originally intended as a humorous[3] narrative to accompany[4] a series of drawings. Within four months, he had become famous. The Pickwick Papers was not only humorous, but also made a serious attempt to look at the legal system and to show how justice was applied. Also, interestingly, it is a clear illustration[5] of how Dickens' private life was reflected in his work, as Mr. Pickwick spent some time in a debtor's prison, just like Dickens' own father.

Dickens' early life had clearly enabled him to write about the poor and dispossessed[6] with understanding and compassion[7]. This compassion also made itself to be felt in practical ways. He helped to establish a home for destitute[8] women and encouraged slum[9] clearance and developments in sanitary[10] provisions[11].

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 Charles Dickens was born in the .... century.

a) 19th b) 20th c) 17th d) 18th

22 Why did Charles have to work at an early age?

a) Because his father had gone to prison.
b) Because his father was careless.
c) Because he wanted to leave school.
d) Because his father died.

23 Dickens' family didn't have enough money although his father ....

a) came to an inheritance
b) went to prison
c) let him leave school
d) allowed him to join a law firm

24 Dickens was deeply affected by ....

a) his father's imprisonment
b) his early working in a factory
c) working conditions of the poor
d) all of these

25 This passage speaks about Dickens as a .... more than a writer.

a) humanitarian
b) decision-maker
c) social reformer
d) social worker

صبغ الأحذية ميراث (3) خفيف الظل (4) يصطحب (5) توضيح (6) عطف (7) يجرد (8) معدم (9) حي فقير (10) صحي (11) مؤن

26 The synonym of the word "humorous" is ....

a) funny b) dull c) dangerous d) serious

27 The best title to the passage is '......................'.

a) Dickens' suffering in the factory
b) Dickens as a writer
c) Dickens' suffering and interest in society
d) Dickens' early life

28 The underlined word 'These' refers to ....

a) Dickens' novels
b) Pickwick Papers
c) Dickens' bad conditions
d) Dickens' work experiences

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Life was not always a bed of roses for Hanan. She was born into a life of poverty and suffering. Her parents were lowly-paid farmers who barely made ends meet. They did not have the means to send Hanan to school.

When Hanan was nine, her parents passed away due to exhaustion and ill health. She was then sent to the local orphanage. There, she was finally given a chance to learn. She was a very bright student who was hungry for knowledge and learnt very quickly. Two years later, Hanan was finally adopted by a rich businessman and his wife.

Hanan lived happily with her new adoptive parents. They sent her to a proper school and enrolled her in many classes to help her catch up with her peers. She devoted much time to her studies and got good grades in school. Her adoptive parents were very proud of her.

Hanan continued to thrive under the loving care of her new attentive and supportive parents. Hanan continued to excel in her studies. This was because she came from a poor background and treasured the chance to be given a proper education. She eventually did well enough to go to university.

There, Hanan studied psychology. She was interested in specialising in child psychology. She wanted to be able to make a difference in their lives. She started volunteering her time and services at an orphanage during her free time. She often told the children in the orphanage her own life experiences. She was a motivation to many of them there. It made her appreciate her life more and strengthened her determination to help other children like herself.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

29 The best title to the passage is ....

a) Hanan's determination to excel
b) Hanan's miserable life
c) Hanan's supportive parents
d) Life with poor children

30 The expression "her parents passed away" means ....

a) her parents were very ill
b) her parents immigrated
c) her parents dismissed her
d) her parents died

31 According to paragraph one, why did Hanan not attend school?

a) She was suffering from ill health.
b) She wanted to lie in a bed of roses.
c) Her parents could not afford to send her to school.
d) She wanted to play with other children.

32 Which one of the following pieces of information is not true?

a) Hanan spent two years in the orphanage.
b) Hanan was deprived of food at the orphanage.
c) Hanan's parents passed away when she was nine.
d) Hanan was given education at the orphanage.

33 How did Hanan find her adoptive parents?

a) She was devoted to them.
b) She was supportive of them.
c) She was very proud of them.
d) She slowly grew to have an affection for them.

34 What does 'this' refer to?

a) Hanan's doing well in her studies.
b) Hanan's loving for her adoptive parents.
c) Hanan's coming from a poor background.
d) Hanan's treasuring the chance to receive a proper education.

35 Why did Hanan choose to study child psychology?

a) She wanted to volunteer at the orphanage.
b) She wanted to be different from her parents.
c) She wanted to help other children who had a similar background to hers.
d) She wanted to find out why children like herself turned out that way.

36 The underlined word "there" refers to the ....

a) orphanage
b) university
c) village
d) school

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d:

37 The National Road Project in Egypt will not only improve internal trade but also increase foreign trade and economic movement. Therefore, economic growth will be boosted.

a) لن يؤدى مشـروع الطرق القومى فى مصر إلى تحسـين التجارة الداخلية، بل سيؤدى أيضًا إلى زيادة التجارة الخارجية والحركة الاقتصادية لذلك، سيتم تعزيز النمو الاقتصادى.
b) لن يؤدى مشـروع الطرق القومى فى مصر إلى تحسـين التجارة الداخلية، بل سيؤدى أيضًا إلى زيادة التجارة الخارجية والحركة الاقتصادية لذلك، سيتم جذب النمو الاقتصادى.
c) لن يؤدى مشـروع الطرق القومى فى مصر إلى تحسـين التجارة الداخلية فحسـب، بل سـيؤدى أيضًا إلى زيادة التجارة الخارجية والحركة الاقتصادية لذلك، سيتم تعزيز النمو الاقتصادى.
d) لن يؤدى مشـروع الطرق القومى فى مصر إلى تحسـين التجارة القومية فحسـب، بل سـيؤدى أيضًا إلى زيادة التجارة الخارجية والحركة الاقتصادية لذلك، سيتم تعزيز النمو الاقتصادى.

38 Youth is the future of society. When the young man contributes his/her ideas and energy to resolve social issues, he becomes a leader and can also make a difference in the lives of others.

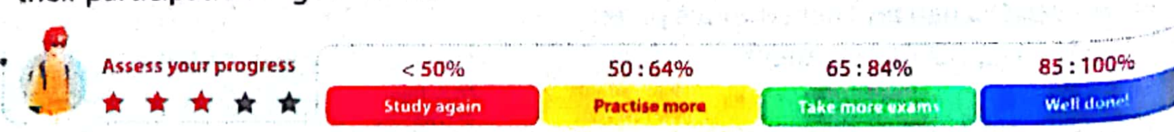
a) الشباب هو مستقبل المجتمع فعندما يساهم الشاب بأفكاره وطاقته لحل القضايا الاجتماعية، يصبح قائدًا ويمكنه أيضًا أن يختلف عن حياة الآخرين
b) الشباب هو مستقبل المجتمع فعندما يساهم الشاب بأفكاره وقوته لحل القضايا الاجتماعية، يصبح قائدًا ويمكنه أيضًا أن يختلف عن حياة الآخرين
c) الشباب هو مستقبل المجتمع فعندما يساهم الشاب بأفكاره وأنشطته لحل القضايا الاجتماعية، يصبح قائدًا ويمكنه أيضًا أن يحدث فرقًا فى حياة الآخرين
d) الشباب هو مستقبل المجتمع فعندما يساهم الشاب بأفكاره وطاقته لحل القضايا الاجتماعية، يصبح قائدًا ويمكنه أيضًا أن يحدث فرقًا فى حياة الآخرين

39 لم يكد مدير الشركة يتسلم عمله حتى بدأ الاعداد لخطط جديدة لتطوير إدارات الشركة وخاصة خدمة العملاء.

a) No sooner the company manager had taken over his job than he started preparing new plans to develop the company's departments, especially customer service.
b) No sooner had the company manager taken over his job than he started preparing new plans to develop the company's departments, especially customer service.
c) No sooner had the company manager taken over his job until he started preparing new plans to develop the company's departments, especially customer service.
d) No sooner does the company manager taken over his job when he starts preparing new plans to develop the company's departments, especially customer service.

40 لقد أدركت الشـعوب أهمية تعليم الفتيات ومشـاركتهن الفعالة فى المجتمع لذا تهتم الحكومات ببناء المدارس لهم وتعزز مشاركتهم فى الحياة العامة.

a) Peoples have realised the importance of girls' education and their active participation in society, so governments pay attention to building schools for them and enhancing their participation in public life.
b) Peoples have achieved the importance of girls' education and their active participation in society, so governments pay attention to building schools for them and enhancing their participation in public life.
c) Peoples have boosted the importance of girls' education and their active participation in society, so governments are interested in building schools for them and enhancing their participation in general life.
d) Peoples have recognised the importance of girls' education and their active participation in society, so governments are interested in building schools for them and enhancing their participation in general life.



Unit 3



Beyond imagination

Objectives

- **Reading** : A scientific text
- **Writing** : Online comments about the impact of technology; An argumentative essay about green technology
- **Listening** : A discussion about innovations in medicine
- **Speaking** : Making predictions about the future of technology
- **Language** : Future tenses; present perfect for future use
- **Life skills** : Problem solving; Critical thinking





Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

approach (n)	مفهوم/منهج
astronaut (n)	رائد فضاء
astronomer (n)	عالم فلك
experiment (v) (ed) (n)	يجرى تجربة/تجربة
immerse (v) (d)	يحيط/يغمر
implement (v) (ed)	ينفذ/يجرى/يحقق
inconvenient (adj)	غير ملائم/غير مناسب
mass-produce (v) (d)	ينتج بالجملة
planet (n)	كوكب
process (n) (v) (ed)*	عملية/يقوم بإجراء
solar system (n)	المجموعة الشمسية
spacecraft (n)	سفينة فضاء
speaker (n)	سماعة/مكبر صوت
spectacularly (adv)	بصورة مذهلة
surface (n)	سطح
surround (v) (ed) (n)	يحيط/إحاطة
universe (n)	الكون

* Students should be actively involved in the learning process.

Vocabulary on Reading

advance (n) (v) (d)	تقدم/يتقدم
advertise (v) (d)	يعلن عن
adverts (n)	إعلانات
application (n)	تطبيق
audio (adj)	صوتى
basic (adj)	أساسى
burning (adj)	مشتعل/عاجل
Celsius (n)	مئوية
competitive (adj)	تنافسى
conquer (v) (ed)	يقهر/يغزو/يتغلب على
constantly (adv)	بشكل دائم
create (v) (d)	يخلق/ينتج
curious (adj)	فضولى/غريب
director (n)	مخرج/مدير
Dolby Stereo (n)	نظام صوتى مجسم
essential (adj)	ضرورى
evidence (n)	دليل
expand (v) (ed)	يمد/يوسع/يتمدد
extreme (adj)	شديد/مفرط/متطرف
illustrated book (n)	كتاب مصور
immersive (adj)	غامر/محيط
innovation (n)	إبداع
instead (adv)	بدلا من ذلك
introduce (v) (d)	يقدم
likely (adv)	من المحتمل
liquid (n)	سائل
method (n)	طريقة
minus (prep)	سالب/ناقص

packaging (n)	التعبئة والتغليف
paper-thin (adj)	في سُمك الورقة
permanent (adj)	دائم
potentially (adv)	من المحتمل
practical (adj)	عملى
predict (v) (ed)	يتنبأ بـ
printing (n)	الطباعة
provide (v) (d)	يزود/يوفر
quality (n)	نوعية/جودة
require (v) (d)	يتطلب/يحتاج
roll (n)	لفة
science fiction (n)	خيال علمى
space (n)	الفضاء
step (n)	خطوة
survive (v) (d)	ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة
system (n)	نظام
technology (n)	التكنولوجيا
teen (n)	مراهق
temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة
tin (n)	علبة صفيح لحفظ الطعام
totally (adv)	كليًا/تمامًا
visuals (n)	مرئيات/مؤثرات بصرية

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

adapt (v) (ed)	يتأقلم
falcon (n)	الصقر
frozen (adj.)	متجمد
inch (n)	بوصة (وحدة قياس)
lie (v) (d)	يقع
queue (n)	صف/ طابور
Saturn (n)	كوكب زحل
scare (v) (d)	يرعب
suppose (v) (d)	يفترض/ يظن
trainers (n)	حذاء رياضى
tutor (n)	معلم خاص

Workbook Vocabulary

cancel (v) (led)	يلغى
college (n)	كلية
cycle lane (n)	ممر/حارة للدراجات
educational (adj)	تعليمى
explore (v) (d)	يستكشف
face (v) (d)	يواجه
popular (adj)	محبوب/شعبى
powerful (adj)	قوى
seat (n)	مقعد
shape (n)	شكل
square (n)	مربع

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

after all	على أى حال	on a big scale	على نطاق كبير
at a competitive price	بسعر منافس	on average	فى المتوسط
make noises	يصدر صوتًا/ضوضاء	on display	فى العرض
(be) able to	قادر على	find out about	يكتشف عن
discuss with	يناقش مع	interested in	مهتم بـ
essential for/to	ضرورى لـ	search for	يبحث عن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
advertise	يعلن	advertisement	إعلان	advertised	معلن عنه
create	يخلق/ينتج	creation creator	خلق/إبداع منشئ/مبتكر	creative	مبدع/خلاق
expand*	يمد/يتوسع/يتمدد	expansion	تمدد/توسع	expandable	يمكن مده
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginative imaginary	خيالى (مبدع) خيالى (غير واقعى)
implement	ينفذ/يجرى/يحقق	implementation	إجراء/تنفيذ	implemented	مُطبَق/منفذ
innovate	يبدع	innovation	إبداع	innovative	مبدع/إبداعى
introduce	يقدم	introduction	تقديم/مقدمة	introductory	تقديمى
process	يجرى عملية/يعالج	process	عملية	processed	معالَج
provide	يزود/يوفر	provision	توفير/إمداد	provisional	تمويلى/إمدادى
require	يتطلب	requirement	متطلبات	required	مطلوب
surround	يحيط بـ	surround surroundings	إحاطة الأشياء المحيطة/البيئة المحيطة	surrounding	محيط بـ
survive	ينجو	survival survivor	النجاة ناجٍ	surviving	ناجى

* - The company expands its business in the city.
- The expansion in the city will benefit their capital.
- Their type of business is expandable.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
basic	أساسى	main/major	minor/unimportant	فرعى/غير هام
conquer	يقهر/يتغلب على	defeat/overcome	surrender/assist	يستسلم/يساعد
curious	فضولى	interested	unconcerned	غير مهتم
essential	ضرورى	necessary/obligatory	optional/free	اختيارى/حر
expand	يمد/يتوسع	extend/enlarge	decrease/shrink	يقل/ينكمش
imagine	يتخيل	fancy/suppose	neglect/disregard	يهمل/يتجاهل
implement	ينفذ/يجرى	carry out/enforce	cancel/give up	يلغى/يستسلم
innovation	إبداع	creativity	tradition/imitating	تقليد
method	طريقة	technique/way	disorganisation/chaos	عدم تنظيم/فوضى
practical	عملى	feasible/pragmatic	irrational/impractical	غير عقلانى/غير عملى
predict	يتنبأ بـ	anticipate/foresee	ignore	يتجاهل
require	يتطلب/يطلب	need/desire	dislike/refuse	يكره/يرفض
spectacularly	بشكل رائع	amazingly/extraordinarily	badly/poorly	بشكل سيئ/بشكل ضعيف
survive	ينجو	remain/last	die	يموت
totally	كليًا/تماما	entirely/absolutely	incompletely/partially	بشكل غير كامل/جزئيًا

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many scientists believe that the Earth is the only .... that has life in the solar system.
   a) plant b) galaxy c) planet d) comet
2. When .... go to space, they float due to the lack of gravity, so they should be trained for this.
   a) astronomers b) astrologers c) ostriches d) astronauts
3. The results about the new vaccine were obtained from four independent ....
   a) experiences b) experiments c) exams d) examples
4. My friend called me at a/an .... time, nearly 3 o'clock in the morning.
   a) inconvenient b) perfect c) modular d) interesting
5. An interview normally forms part of the .... of selecting a new employee.
   a) survey b) process c) search d) pressure



Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)

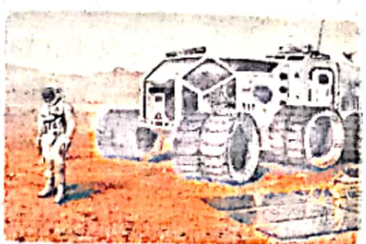


(1) سماعات
(2) محاط بـ
(3) يغمر
(4) ينفذ/يجرى
(5) بشكل رائع
(6) غير مناسب/غير ملائم
(7) مفهوم
(8) يجرى تجربة
(9) عملية
(10) ينتج على نطاق واسع

'Surround sound' is a system that uses 3 or more speakers[1] to make you feel like you are 'surrounded[2] by sound. Surround sound experiments go as far back as the 1930s. In fact, the technology was first introduced in 1940 in the Walt Disney Film Fantasia, which used Fantasound. This was a system designed to totally immerse[3] the audience in the film like the visuals did. Unfortunately, it was too expensive to implement[4] on a big scale, as Fantasound needed 54 speakers. It wasn't until 1975, with the invention of Dolby Stereo, requiring just four basic speakers that 'surround sound' became practical. It was used spectacularly[5] in the film Star Wars. True surround sound in the home, however, didn't arrive until 1982, with the introduction of Dolby Surround technology. But this still required four speakers, making it expensive and inconvenient[6].

Now, a whole new approach[7] has been developed by scientists at the Chemnitz University of Technology in Germany, which uses paper instead of speakers. The team had experimented[8] before; in 2015, they created an illustrated book which had speakers hidden inside the pages that made noises as readers turned them. Now they have developed a printing process[9] which can print whole rolls of the paper-thin speakers, rather than one sheet at a time. They have used this to make the T-ring, a 360-degree paper speaker, a sound experience more immersive than even a cinema, and can be potentially mass-produced[10] at a competitive price. Professor Hubler, from the university predicts that one major use of this new idea will be for audio advertising and packaging. Imagine the packaging on bottles and tins playing music or adverts for you in your local supermarket!!

Reading Text (2)



Teen Astronomers is a website for young people who are interested in finding out about the world they live in. If you have any burning questions, please email us at teenastronomers@theconversation.edu.au.

Why has nobody found any life outside of Earth? – Tarek, age 17, Zagazig, Egypt.

Thank you for your question, Tarek. Astronomers[1] like us are constantly searching for planets[2] which may support human life, but they're not easy to find. To start with, it's likely that if such a planet exists, it will be outside our solar system[3]. Until we have invented the technology to get us to these planets, we won't be able to study the conditions there.

But we'll keep using the technology we have to find out what we can, until we have found some evidence.

(1) علماء الفلك

(2) كواكب

(3) المجموعة الشمسية

(4) رواد الفضاء

(5) الكون

One of the most important things is to find a planet with water, because it is essential for all life forms. Scientists recently discovered that there is permanent liquid water on Mars, which made a lot of people excited. After all, it is the closest planet to Earth. However, on average, the temperature on Mars is about minus 60 degrees Celsius. In winter it can go down as low as 125 degrees below freezing. When we've found a way for astronauts[4] to survive these extreme temperatures, they'll be able to spend enough time on the surface of Mars to collect useful data.

Mars is hopefully just one step into the universe[5]. Once we've conquered Mars, it will be easier to expand into the universe beyond, with future advances in space technology.

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

Technology in the cinema

When you watch a good film, it is easy to forget where you are. Technology, however, is making the film experience even more real.

In the 1970s, a company called IMAX took a different approach. Their films were shown on very large, tall screens. Special speakers were put behind the screen, which helped to make the sound better and louder. In addition, the films were made using a special process which made the pictures look much more 'real'.

The problem with these types of films was the cost. They had to build special square cinemas, because people needed to watch the film in seats which all faced the screen. You also needed special cameras and couldn't make films of more than an hour long. So these films were nearly all educational, often about nature. One of the most popular was about climbing Mount Everest and when you watched it, you really felt you were surrounded by snowy mountains.

Since 2000, however, similar technology has allowed traditional films to be made in the same way. These are mass-produced and shown in traditional cinemas. As a result, many modern films sound great. Many are in 3D, so that the pictures look real and not flat. Some cinemas even have seats that move while you watch the film to immerse you even more into the experience. Other cinemas have even experimented with allowing you to 'feel' the film using smell, rain and wind. However, the cost of this will probably mean this technology won't be in most cinemas.

Listening Text (Workbook)



Journalist **:** Today, I'm talking to a space scientist and astronomer, Professor El-Taweel, about where we are most likely to find life in our solar system. So, Professor, I suppose most people think we'll first find life on Mars, is that right?

Professor : Well, many countries are sending spacecraft to that planet at the moment, so it's possible, yes. I think we'll certainly find water. But once we've finished exploring Mars, I think that we'll find other places that are just as likely to have life.

Journalist **:** Really? Can you give me an example?

Professor : Yes. Enceladus is one of the planet Saturn's many moons, but it is very interesting. In 2005, a spacecraft took photos of a huge amount of water coming up from the surface of the moon then flying out into space. Once we've sent a spacecraft back to Enceladus that can take some of this water, we'll know where it comes from and if there is life on the moon.

Journalist **:** That's amazing. Are there any other places like this?

Professor : Yes, Saturn's largest moon, called Titan, has lakes on the surface. These are probably made from gases, not water, but we have already sent a small spacecraft to Titan. When we've sent another one that can study the lakes, we will know more.

Journalist **:** Anywhere else?

Professor : Yes, there is also one of the planet Jupiter's moons, called Europa. Some scientists think there might be more water here than on Earth. The problem is that the water on Europa lies about 15 kilometres below a frozen surface. We won't be able to study this until we've got powerful machines that can dig into the moon.

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The gardener advised me to .... the roots of the house plant in water for a while if it looked dry.
 a) flood b) dive
 c) immerse d) drown

2 The publishing company is specialised in .... books for nursery and primary school students.
 a) academic b) immersive
 c) expanded d) illustrated

3 The .... system is the sun and all the planets that move around it.
 a) lunar b) solar
 c) space d) security

4 Climate change is one of the .... international problems at the present time.
 a) burning b) flipping
 c) persuasive d) affecting

5 The new 3D wallpaper cost me three hundred pounds a ....
 a) gram b) roll
 c) weight d) speck

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book

Vocabulary in Use



FOCUS on Vocabulary

implement — ينفذ/يطبق
- start using a system

mass-produced — منتج بكميات كبيرة
- made cheaply and in large numbers with a machine

approach — مفهوم
- series of steps leading to producing something

spectacularly — بشكل رائع
- extremely good, exciting or surprising

inconvenient — غير مناسب/غير ملائم
- causing difficulty or problems

process — عملية
- way of viewing or doing something

surround — يغمر
- be all round (someone or something)

speaker — سماعة/مكبر صوت
- device through which sound is heard

experiment (v) — يجرى تجربة
- use scientific methods to find something out or discover something

immerse — يحيط
- involve yourself deeply in

Is there a clear difference between "process" and "operation"?

Notes on Vocabulary

1

approach
مفهوم (طريقة تعامل مع مشكلة أو موقف بطريقة مخططة أو مجربة).
a way of dealing with a particular problem or situation, especially a way that has been carefully planned
- Today's approach to raising children is very different from 40 years ago.

method
طريقة (طريقة أداء شيء خاصة معروفة أو مستخدمة غالبًا).
a way of doing something, especially one that is well known and often used
- You can choose whichever method of payment you prefer.

means
وسيلة (شيء تستخدمه لفعل أو إنجاز شيء)
a thing that you use to do something or achieve something
- E-mail has become the most convenient means of communication.

technique
أسلوب/تقنية (طريقة محددة لفعل شيء تحتاج إلى مهارة يتم تعلمها أو ممارستها)
a particular way of doing something, for which you need a skill that has to be learned and practised
- More patients are surviving thanks to improved surgical techniques.

2

evidence
دليل (حقائق أو علامات تظهر وجود أو صدق شيء بوضوح)
facts or signs that show clearly that something exists or is true,
- Scientists are hoping to find evidence that there was once life on Mars.
- There was not enough evidence to convict يدين him of the murder.

لاحظ يمكن استخدام (sign) أو (indicator) بهذا المعنى

symptom
عرَض (علامة على وجود مرض أو مشكلة خطيرة)
a sign that someone has an illness or that a serious problem exists
- Some of the symptoms of COVID-19 disease are tiredness and bone pains.

signal
علامة (تدل على أنك يجب أن تفعل شيئًا أو أن لديك اتجاهًا محددًا)
a sign that shows that you should do something, or that you have a particular attitude
- Severe chest pain is a warning signal that cannot be ignored.

3

expand
يتمدد/يتوسع (يزيد في الحجم أو يوسع نشاطًا)
to become larger in size, or to include a wider range of activities
- The business has expanded at a rate of 15% per year.

increase
يزيد (يصبح أكبر في العدد أو الكمية أو الدرجة)
to become larger in number, amount, or degree
- Sales increased by 25%.
- The level of violence has increased.

double/triple
يتضاعف أو يزيد ثلاث مرات
to become twice as much or three times as much
- Since 1950, the number of people dying from cancer has almost doubled.
- The company's profits tripled last quarter.

4

process
١- عملية طبيعية أو صناعية لحدوث أو إنتاج شيء
٢- عملية إجرائية (سلسلة من الخطوات لإتمام شيء)
- Coal forms by a slow process of chemical change.
- Learning a language is a slow process.

operation
١- عملية جراحية
٢- عملية إنجاز (عمل/نشاط)لشركة أو منظمة
- She's going to have an operation on her knee.
- A huge rescue operation was launched after two divers were reported missing.

instead
بدلا من ذلك (تستخدم لربط جملتين أو تأتى فى نهاية جملة)

- I couldn't afford a new car. Instead, I bought a used one.
- We didn't have enough money for a movie, so we went to the park instead.

5 **instead of**
بدلا من (يتبعها اسم أو v-ing)

- You should talk to your teacher instead of just complaining to me about the problem.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

Did you notice these notes while reading?

- Unfortunately, it was too expensive to implement ....

لاحظ استخدام (too ... to) بمعنى (جداً لدرجة أن لا).

- In fact, the technology was first introduced in 1940.
- Until we have invented the technology to get us to these planets, ...

لاحظ استخدام (the) قبل (technology) رغم أنها من أسماء المعانى (abstract nouns) للإشارة إلى تكنولوجيا محددة
أما إذا كانت بشكل عام فلا تسبقها أداة مثل الجملة الأخيرة فى النص الثانى.

- .... with future advances in space technology.

- But this still required four speakers, making it expensive and inconvenient.

لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) اختصارا لجملة الوصل فالجملة أصلها.

- But this still required four speakers, which made it expensive and inconvenient.

- Teen Astronomers is a website for young people who are interested in finding out about the world they live in.

لاحظ استخدام (n/v-ing) بعد (interested in).

- Scientists recently discovered that there is permanent liquid water on Mars, which made a lot of people excited.

لاحظ استخدام (which) للإشارة إلى الجملة كلها.

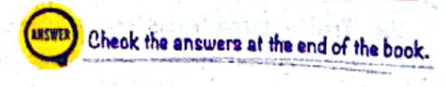
Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It is a known fact that metals .... when they are heated.
a) increase b) double c) triple d) expand

2 The criminal's wife was charged with giving false .... in court to free her husband.
a) symptom b) signal c) evidence d) note

3 Repetition can help the learning .... especially for primary school pupils.
a) process b) operation c) option d) intention

4 Speed bumps are an effective .... of stopping cars from going too fast.
a) approach b) technique c) means d) method





Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Workbook Vocabulary & Vocabulary Notes

1 The modern .... to grammar teaching should make it easier to learn.
a) means b) approach c) application d) placement

2 With new space technology, ... will continue to discover new stars.
a) astronomers b) astrologers c) astronauts d) chemists

3 Mona was so .... in her studies that she forgot all about her friends' affairs.
a) persecuted b) expected c) immersed d) implemented

4 The government has .... a series of reforms in the economy during the last few years.
a) appeared b) reflected c) implanted d) implemented

5 The new machine was simpler and easier to mass- .... than the old one.
a) introduce b) present c) produce d) innovate

6 The car had a powerful sound system with four.................. .
a) receivers b) speakers c) recorders d) stereos

7 Although there are different opinions, no one is sure if there is intelligent life elsewhere in the ....
a) universe b) verse c) star d) planet

8 The first man who was sent into space was a Russian .... called Yuri Gagarin.
a) intruder b) alien c) trainer d) astronaut

9 It was a difficult .... to collect much information about this boring subject.
a) technique b) operation c) work d) process

10 There are plans to .... the airport in Sharm El-Sheikh to hold bigger planes.
a) expand b) increase c) double d) triple

11 Recent .... in IT have led to important changes in the work of offices.
a) powers b) respects c) advances d) hindrances

12 After the injury of his shoulder, the footballer is getting fit again, which has been a long slow ....
a) operation b) process c) system d) treatment

13 Water is one of the .... necessities of life which we can't live without.
a) basic b) minor c) extreme d) worthless

14 From 1960 to 1965, the Soviets launched twenty-six known .... into space.
a) systems b) moons c) vehicles d) spacecrafts

15 Yousif Shaheen is considered one of the best film .... in Egypt throughout history.
a) astronomers b) clients c) directors d) customers

16 Universities .... the country with highly qualified young people.
a) offer b) introduce c) provide d) give

17 Many recent studies could .... new ideas in treating people of some serious diseases.
a) introduce b) prevent c) deduce d) design

18 Computers and the internet have become a/an .... part of modern life.
a) curious b) essential c) secondary d) audio

19 The new magazine is mainly addressing .... between 13 and 19.
a) adults b) infants c) teens d) elders

20 Traffic problems are made better by the huge project of improving the road .... in Egypt.
a) processions b) successions c) presentations d) systems

21 Applicants for the job should have training and .... experience in electronics.
a) practical b) valueless c) visual d) terrible

22 Industry leaders .... that another 8,000 jobs could be available by the end of the year.
a) talk b) predict c) reflect d) speak

23 As soon as the actress went out of the studios, she was suddenly .... by a crowd of excited fans.
a) ignored b) required c) detached d) surrounded

24 The cause of the accident is still unclear and .... further investigation.
a) requires b) inquires c) finds d) acquires

25 We were .... to know why our friend Waleed left the party suddenly.
a) helpful b) irresponsible c) curious d) immersive

26 Essam inherited his .... personality from his father, who was another great athlete.
a) competitive b) comparative c) relative d) speculative

27 The young man wasn't offered the job as he doesn't have suitable .... qualifications.
a) normal b) popular c) educational d) talented

28 I changed my computer with a new and more .... model.
a) offensive b) powerful c) useless d) permanent

29 Our manager is going to .... offers from all companies before deciding what to choose.
a) deploy b) defy c) discover d) explore

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

30 She was determined to conquer her fear of flying. The verb "conquer" is the synonym of the verb "..................".
a) miss b) overcome c) attack d) submit

31 My uncle sent me an illustrated book which .... noises when I turned the pages.
a) sends b) receives c) makes d) absorbs

32 The River Nile is essential .... people's lives in Egypt.
a) about b) at c) in d) for

33 Various projects for constructing new bridges and roads are under .... in Egypt.
a) implement b) implementation c) implemented d) implements

34 The new COVID-19 vaccine is now produced on a big .... in many countries.
a) scale b) space c) distance d) road

35 I am used to discussing all my problems .... my family.
a) for b) in c) with d) at

36 I learned about the job from an .... in the newspaper.
a) advertise b) advertisement c) advertised d) advertising

37 The gallery's focus will expand to include the work of modern artists. The antonym of the verb "expand" is ....
a) raise b) grow c) increase d) shrink

38 Mary is so .... that she can make her own clothes.
a) create b) creation c) creative d) created

39 On ...., prices of food products have increased about eight percent.
a) average b) expected c) placement d) degree

40 At the Summer Sale, most products are sold .... a competitive price.
a) with b) on c) about d) at





Lessons 1 & 2

B Language

The present perfect for the future المضارع التام للتعبير عن المستقبل

يستخدم كل من المضارع البسيط والمضارع التام للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد روابط زمنية معينة:

Future simple (will, be going to + inf.)	after, before, till/until, when, as soon as, once, now that, the moment	Present simple Present perfect

- After Ahmed finishes/has finished his exams, I'll take him for a picnic.
- The manager is going to see you as soon as he comes out of the meeting.
- He won't say anything until the boss tells him.
- Call me as soon as you get back. لاحظ أن الفعل الأمر يحل محل المستقبل
- I won't touch (Don't touch) anything before the police arrive.

فى الجمل السابقة استخدمنا المستقبل لحدث سوف يتم بعد حدث آخر فى المستقبل أو قبله ولكن إذا كان الأمر عادة أو شيئًا دائم الحدوث نستخدم المضارع البسيط فى الجملتين مع أداة الربط:

- After I finish my homework, I usually help my sister with hers.
- I always have a cup of tea before I leave for work.
- I never buy canned food until I check the expiry date.

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'll be at the airport when ....
   a) you will get there b) the plane will take off
   c) the plane landed d) you arrive
2. I .... ready as soon as you phone me.
   a) had been b) was c) will be d) could be
3. We will start having dinner as soon as my mother .... the food.
   a) has cooked b) cooked c) is cooking d) had cooked
4. We'll stay here till she ....
   a) returned b) returns c) had returned d) return
5. I .... her the news before she leaves.
   a) had told b) told c) will be told d) 'm going to tell



Check the answers at the end of the book.

ملاحظات هامة

١) نستخدم while لحدث سوف يحدث أثناء حدوث الآخر فى المستقبل ويأتى بعدها المضارع البسيط أو المضارع المستمر.

While I look for a job, I'll continue to study.

٢) هناك أفعال تعبر ضمنيًا على أنها مستقبل ولكن شكلها مضارع بسيط مثل:
want, need, must, have to, are to, etc. فنستخدم معها نفس القاعدة.

I want you to be in charge until I get back from holiday.

٣) يستخدم v-ing بعد after/before/while إذا لم يأت فاعل بعدهم على أن يكون الفاعل فى الجملتين واحدًا.

After doing my exercise, I'll help you.

٤) لا يأتى المستقبل أبدا بعد الروابط الزمنية

After I will finish my work, I'll help you. (✗)
After I finish/have finished my work, I'll help you. (✓)

٥) يمكن استخدام المبنى للمجهول فى المضارع البسيط أو التام والمستقبل.

When this letter is written, it will be sent.





Language Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Check your understanding.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I'll help you with your homework after I .... the dishes.
a) will wash b) washed
c) had washed d) wash

2 I .... this report before I go home.
a) finish b) had finished
c) 'll finish d) finished

3 He won't go home until he .... this report.
a) had written b) has written
c) write d) wrote

4 He will wash up before he .... to bed.
a) goes b) went
c) have gone d) had gone

5 Once it .... cold, I'll light the fire.
a) will get b) gets
c) had got d) was getting

6 I will pay you when I .... my cheque.
a) am getting b) will get
c) have got d) had got

7 She will stay in bed till the clock .... seven.
a) strike b) strikes
c) had struck d) struck

8 She .... on working until he tells her to stop.
a) will go b) would go
c) goes d) has gone

9 When he ...., I'll give him the key.
a) returned b) will return
c) return d) returns

10 By the time he .... thirty, he will have a job and get married.
a) was b) will be
c) is d) be

11 I .... until the January sales start to buy a new jacket.
a) will have waited b) 'm going to wait
c) wait d) have waited

12 After I .... , I'll go out to book the tickets.
a) have taken a shower b) will phone you
c) went to bed d) would have a cup of coffee

13 I hope he gets here .... the train leaves. There isn't another train today.
a) while b) after
c) until d) before

14 We can leave as soon as ....
a) the plane will take off b) they are going to phone
c) you are ready d) the train arrived

15 You must wait .... the traffic light changes to green.

a) before
b) until
c) as soon as
d) after

16 When I .... the car, I'll join you.

a) polished
b) was polished
c) will polish
d) have polished

17 .... the price of petrol is so high, I can't afford to run a car anymore.

a) Now that
b) Until
c) As soon as
d) Before

18 .... the film is over, I'll go to bed.

a) Just as
b) Until
c) Once
d) While

19 It is raining now. We'd better wait until it ....

a) will stop
b) stops
c) stop
d) stopped

20 Please, ... us when you arrive.

a) will call
b) calls
c) have called
d) call

21 They always .... their curtains once they get home in the evening.

a) have closed
b) will close
c) close
d) closed

22 I like to have the radio on while ....

a) I study
b) I'm studying
c) studying
d) all are possible

23 Always turn your television off ....

a) before you leave home
b) when you went to bed
c) as soon as you got bored
d) after you have fallen asleep

24 He'll drive you there .... you need.

a) until
b) whenever
c) after
d) before

25 Don't worry! I'll watch you while you .... in the lake.

a) swam
b) were swimming
c) swim
d) swimming

26 He'll drink his coffee while he .... for the bus.

a) is waiting
b) wait
c) was waiting
d) has waited

27 You can't get experience .... you have got a job.

a) while
b) as soon as
c) after
d) until

28 He .... the letter before he put the stamp on the envelope.

a) writes
b) had written
c) will write
d) can write

29 Now that the rain's stopped, ... to walk?

a) can you want
b) may you want
c) do you want
d) have you wanted

30 The lift .... until you press that button.

a) will not start
b) starts
c) will start
d) has started



Unit 3
Lessons 1 & 2

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Many people agree with the right of scientists to .... on animals because this helps us.
a) experience b) experiment c) revise d) improvise

2 The sun is the centre of the .... system whose planets orbit it.
a) solar b) lunar c) electric d) space

3 I think visiting your friends without telling them is probably .... as they would like to be ready.
a) terrifying b) suitable c) delightful d) inconvenient

4 We should improve the .... of our products in order to be able to export them.
a) quantity b) ability c) quality d) possibility

5 There were several .... of wallpaper on shelves at the back of the shop.
a) rolls b) cubes c) rules d) pipes

6 Only a few of the earlier paintings of Leonardo, the famous painter, still ....
a) fade b) diminish c) survive d) observe

7 'Surround sound' is a great .... which helped movie audience to enjoy art more and more.
a) reflection b) perception c) intention d) innovation

8 Because of pollution, the .... of many parts of the world was very high last summer.
a) grade b) degree c) temperature d) snow

9 I .... the exam after I study all these books.
a) will be taken b) take c) am going to take d) have taken

10 Until I finish this report, I .... home.
a) will go b) can go c) have gone d) won't go

11 When the president .... , the audience will stand up.
a) is arriving b) arrives c) has been arrived d) arrive

12 She will give the children their dinner before her husband .... home.
a) comes b) is coming c) came d) will come

13 He'll have to behave better when he .... to school.
a) is going b) will go c) went d) goes

14 We can't do anything before ....
a) the doctor comes
b) the doctor didn't come
c) the doctor will come
d) the doctor doesn't come

15 .... I've finished *"A Tale of Two Cities*, I'll read *"Oliver Twist"*.
a) While b) Now that c) Until d) Even if

16 Once we hear any news, we .... you.
a) call b) won't call c) 'll call d) have called

17 Which of the following sentences is punctuated correctly?
a) He said "I want to go to the party"
b) He said, "I want to go to the party".
c) He said "I want to go to the party."
d) He said, "I want to go to the party."

18 When we write a biography, we should ....
a) invent incidents to make the person famous
b) tell facts about the person
c) say nothing about the person's wrong deeds
d) force people to love the person

19 Narrative essays ....

a) should be interesting to impress the reader
b) should contain imaginative incidents to make suspense
c) can tell real or imaginative stories
d) all of the above

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Heba was a member of the school's football team. Last Tuesday, her school had a friendly match against another school. It was a gruelling(1) match as both teams were equally skilled. Many of Heba's schoolmates were at the stadium to lend the team their support. They had banners, pom-poms and the school flag.

At one point in the match, Heba had the ball. She was dribbling(2) it towards the goal when suddenly, she was tackled(3) by a member of the other team. She tripped(4) and fell. A spasm(5) of pain shot up her leg and she cried out in agony. Immediately, she was taken off the field. It turned out that she had fractured(6) her shinbone(7).

As a result of that match, Heba's leg was in a cast(8). She had to be pushed around in a wheelchair for the next three weeks. She felt so incapacitated(9). Heba's classroom was on the third floor. However, due to her temporary immobility(10), the school principal had granted(11) special approval(12) for her class to shift to the ground floor until her leg had healed.

Despite this, there were still several classes that simply could not accommodate(13) such a move. The music class was on the second floor and the science laboratories were on the third floor. Heba would have to wheel herself to the stairs, then make use of a pair of crutches(14) to ascend the stairs slowly and carefully. Thankfully, she had wonderful classmates who were ready to help whenever needed.

Heba never forgot the kindness of her classmates. Heba's parents invited them all to their house and treated them to pizza as a way of showing their appreciation. Heba felt very fortunate to have such amazing friends.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20 The best title to the passage is " ....".

a) Heba's injury and the kind people
b) The kind school principal
c) The kind classmates
d) Heba's troubles at school

21 According to paragraph one, why were Heba's schoolmates at the stadium?

a) They wanted to watch a gruelling match.
b) They wanted to support the football team.
c) They wanted to see the skills of the football team.
d) They wanted to show off their pom-poms and banners.

22 Which one of the following pieces of information is not true?

a) Heba fell because she felt a spasm in her leg.
b) Heba was in considerable pain after she was tackled.
c) Heba was heading towards the goal when she was tackled.
d) Heba was taken off the field immediately after she sustained an injury.

23 What was Heba's condition when she returned to school?

a) She was as active as usual.
b) She was troubled by her studies.
c) She was not able to do things normally.
d) She did not recognise her surroundings.

24 The school principal proved to be ....

a) kind and understanding
b) cruel
c) aggressive
d) unpleasant



(1) شاق (2) المحاورة بالكرة (3) عُرقلت (4) تعثرت (5) تقلص عضلي (6) كسرت (7) قصبة الساق (8) جبيرة (9) عاجز (10) عدم الحركة (11) أعطى (12) موافقة (13) استوعب (14) عكاز

25 What does 'this' in paragraph four refer to?

a) Heba's injury.

b) Heba's class shifting to the ground floor.

c) Heba's classmates helping her up the stairs.

d) Heba's classes which were conducted in a different place.

26 Why did Heba feel very fortunate?

a) She had recovered fully from her injury.

b) Her parents had organised a party for her.

c) Her friends liked the pizza her parents ordered.

d) Her friends had been supportive and helpful.

27 The expression "treated them to pizza" means ....

a) they treated them kindly

b) they had a meal of pizza

c) they offered them a pizza drink

d) they looked at them happily

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d:

28 Technology is important in our lives because it helps to deal with everyday activities. Technology offers various tools to boost development and to exchange information.

a) التكنولوجيا مهمة فى حياتنا لأنها تساعد فى التعامل مع الأنشطة اليومية كما تقدم التكنولوجيا أدوات متنوعة لتعزيز التنمية وتبادل المعلومات.

b) التكنولوجيا مهمة فى حياتنا لأنها تساعد فى التعامل مع الأنشطة اليومية كما تقدم التكنولوجيا أدوات متنوعة لاستخدام التنمية وتبادل المعلومات.

c) التكنولوجيا مهمة فى حياتنا لأنها تساعد فى علاج مع الأنشطة اليومية كما تقدم التكنولوجيا أدوات متنوعة لتعزيز التنمية وتبديل المعلومات.

d) التكنولوجيا مهمة فى حياتنا لأنها تساعد فى علاج مع الأنشطة اليومية كما تقدم التكنولوجيا ماكينات متنوعة لتعزيز التنمية وتبادل المعلومات.

29 Entertainment technology helps people not only to relax and enjoy free time. The latest technology has been revolutionised daily entertainment. With computer technology, ways of being entertained have optimized greatly.

a) لا تساعد تكنولوجيا الترفيه الناس على الاسترخاء والاستمتاع بوقت الفراغ حيث أحدثت أحدث التكنولوجيا ثورة فى مجال الترفيه اليومى ومع تكنولوجيا الكمبيوتر، تم تحسين طرق الترفيه بشكل كبير.

b) تساعد تكنولوجيا الترفيه الناس ليس فقط على الاسترخاء والاستمتاع بوقت الفراغ حيث أحدثت أحدث التكنولوجيا ثورة فى مجال الترفيه اليومى ومع تكنولوجيا الكمبيوتر، تم تحسين طرق الترفيه بشكل كبير.

c) لا تساعد تكنولوجيا الترفيه الناس على الاسترخاء والاستمتاع بوقت الفراغ حيث وفرت أحدث التكنولوجيا ثورة فى مجال الترفيه اليومى ومع تكنولوجيا الكمبيوتر، تم تحسين طرق الترفيه بشكل كبير.

d) تساعد تكنولوجيا الترفيه الناس ليس فقط على الاسترخاء والاستمتاع بوقت الفراغ حيث أجلت أحدث التكنولوجيا ثورة فى مجال الترفيه اليومى ومع تكنولوجيا الكمبيوتر، تم تخزين طرق الترفيه بشكل كبير.

30 إن ترشيد المياه واجب قومى لتجنب مشاكل نقص المياه وضمان توفر المياه للأجيال القادمة حيث لا يجب أن يتجاوز استهلاك المياه العذبة معدل الإحلال الطبيعى لها.

a) Water rationalisation is a local duty to avoid water shortage problems and ensure the availability of water for future generations. The consumption of fresh water should exceed its natural replacement rate.

b) Water rationalisation is a global duty to avoid water shortage problems and ensure the availability of water for future generations. The production of fresh water should not exceed its natural replacement rate.

c) Water rationalisation is a national duty to avoid water shortage problems and ensure the availability of water for future generations. The consumption of fresh water should not exceed its natural replacement rate.

d) Water rationalisation is a national duty to avoid water shortage problems and ensure the availability of water for future generations. The consumption of fresh water should not reduce its natural replacement rate.





Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

drugs (n)	عقاقير/أدوية/مخدرات	surgeon (n)*	جراح
operation (n)	عملية جراحية	surgery (n)	جراحة
record (n) (v) (ed)	تسجيل/يسجل	treatment (n)	علاج/معاملة
sensor (n)	مستشعر/جهاز استشعار		

* Do you know a famous surgeon in Egypt?

Vocabulary on Reading

addicted (adj)	مدمن	global (adj)	عالمى
advanced (adj)	متقدم	hacker (n)	مخترق/قرصان (إنترنت)
benefit (n) (v) (ed)	فائدة/يستفيد	harm (n)	ضرر
blog (n)	مدونة	individual (n) (adj)	فرد/فردى
case (n)	حالة/قضية فى محكمة	issue (n)	قضية/مسألة
cause (v) (d)	يسبب	log in (v) (ged)	يدخل على موقع نت
comment (n) (v) (ed)	تعليق/يعلق	nature (n)	طبيعة
complicated (adj)	معقد	organisation (n)	منظمة
cure (n) (v) (d)	علاج/يعالج	register (v) (ed)	يسجل/يدرج اسمه
cyber (adj)	إلكترونى	safety (n)	أمان
earthquake (n)	زلزال	security (n)	أمن
everyday (adj)	يومى	simple (adj)	بسيط
gamer (n)	لاعب (ألعاب فيديو)	solve (v) (d)	يحل

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

accuracy (n)	دقة	human (adj)	بشرى/إنسانى
Artificial Intelligence (n)	الذكاء الاصطناعى	involve (v) (d)	يتضمن
autonomously (adv)	بشكل مستقل	monitor (v) (ed) (n)	يراقب/شاشة
carry out (v) (y ied)	يجرى/ينفذ	normally (adv)	بشكل طبيعى
consultant (n)	استشارى/مستشار	perform (v) (ed)	يؤدى
diabetes (n)	مرض السكرى	replace (v) (d)	يستبدل
distant (adj)	بعيد	surgical (adj)	جراحى
dramatically (adv)	بشكل كبير	task (n)	مهمة
empathy (n)	تعاطف	transform (v) (ed)	يحول
handle (v) (d)	يتعامل مع/يتولى أمر		

Workbook Vocabulary

decade (n)	عقد	recycle (v) (d)	يعيد تدوير
shop assistant (n)	بائع فى محل	equipment (n)	معدات
self-driving (adj)	ذاتى القيادة	terrible (adj)	فظيع
repair (v) (ed)	يصلح	last (v) (d)	يدوم
measure (v) (d)	يقيس	throw away (v)	يرمى/يتخلص من
fuel (n)	وقود		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

do research	يقوم ببحث	on the one hand	من ناحية
do tasks	يؤدى مهامً	on the other hand	من ناحية أخرى
keep in touch	يبقى على اتصال	on the whole	على العموم
on balance	بعد أخذ كل الاعتبارات/بعد تفكير	stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
addicted to	مدمن على	important for/to	مهم لـ
depend on	يعتمد على	prefer ... to	يفضل... على
disagree with	يختلف مع	talk about	يتحدث عن
log in/on (to something)	يدخل على		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
addict	يدمن	addiction	إدمان	addicted	مدمن
hack*	يخترق	hacking hacker	اختراق مخترق	hacked	مخترق
operate	يجرى عملية/يشغل	operation	عملية	operated	مُشغل
organise	ينظم	organisation	منظمة	organised	منظم
perform	يقوم بـ/يؤدى	performance performer	أداء مؤدى	----------------------	
record	يسجل	record recording	سجل تسجيل	recorded	مسَجل
register	يسجل/يدرج اسمه	registration	تسجيل اسم	registered	مدرج اسمه
replace	يستبدل	replacement	استبدال/بديل	replaced	مستَبدل
secure	يؤمن	security	أمن	secure	امن

* - Someone is trying to hack my phone.
- The hacker sends viruses through links.
- My phone is already hacked.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
benefit	فائدة	advantage/profit	disadvantage/harm	عيب/ضرر
complicated	معقد	complex/problematic	easy/simple	سهل/بسيط
distant	بعيد	faraway/remote	near/nearby	قريب
handle	يتعامل مع	manage/deal with	ignore/disregard	يتجاهل
intelligence	ذكاء	wisdom/brilliance/wit	stupidity foolishness	غباء حماقة
monitor	يراقب	control/observe	neglect	يهمل
perform	يؤدى	carry out/accomplish	avoid/forget	يتجنب/ينسى
record	يسجل	videotape	forget/ignore	ينسى/يتجاهل
safety	امان	protection/security	danger/jeopardy	خطر/تعريض للخطر
simple	بسيط	plain/easy	complicated/difficult	معقد/صعب
task	مهمة	duty/work	irresponsibility	انعدام المسئولية

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I asked my son to .... the football match for me as I had an important meeting at that time.
   a) transform b) broadcast c) record d) replay
2. Scientists hope to find a .... for all kinds of cancer someday.
   a) result b) cure c) theory d) release
3. Students' future .... on how well they do in these exams.
   a) depends b) gives c) builds d) bases
4. Some people have .... more from modern technology than others.
   a) won b) moved c) wasted d) benefited
5. After consulting two specialists, it was decided that my father required heart ....
   a) surgery b) healing c) process d) implementation

Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)

Posted 8 Sept 2021, 17.30 **Eduardo**

Technology is very important for us here in Mexico City. We depend on[1] smartphones, tablets, computers and especially the internet. I am lucky to have a computer in my house, because my father doesn't live with us, so it helps me keep in touch with him. On a bigger scale, technology has helped save lives in Mexico. We have very advanced warning systems which give people more time to escape to safety if an earthquake is coming. On the other hand, cyber[2] security has become a big issue[3]. Computer hackers can cause serious harm to individuals and organisations. Important information can be stolen. There have been many cases where this has happened in Mexico, and I'm sure there will be more in the future.

(1) يعتمد على
(2) إلكتروني
(3) قضية
(4) ينجو
(5) مدمن
(6) فوائد
(7) علاجات

Posted 9 Sept 20221, 13.50 **Hadia123**

Technology surrounds us. It's everywhere. It's hard to imagine a life without technology. But, of course, we could live without it. Only forty years ago people survived[4] without smartphones or the Internet. On the whole, I think technology can be dangerous because people can become addicted[5] to it. They forget about simple things like walking in nature and being with friends.

Posted 11 Sept 2021, 16.30 **Joat19**

I don't agree with the last comment. The benefits[6] of technology in medicine are obvious. People's lives are saved every day because of new technology in hospitals! In the future, it'll be even more important. It will help us discover new cures[7] for lots of diseases. Of course, technology has some negative effects, but on balance, we can't live without it now.

Log in or register to post comments

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

Possible future uses of AI

Experts all agree that we will see more artificial intelligence (AI) in the future, but how will this affect our lives?

Factories already use AI to build cars and machines. Work that used to be done by factory workers is now done by computers. In the next few decades, computers will also do some work that is now done by office workers and shop assistants. That means many shops and businesses won't need to close: they will be open for 24 hours.

When you use the internet, AI quickly knows what you are interested in and sends you advertisements to sell you things. In the future, AI will know enough about you to be able to tell factories to make things just for you: the things won't need to be mass-produced.

Many people think that self-driving cars will have replaced traditional cars within the next few decades. We will all be calling self-driving cars to take us where we want to go, just like we call a taxi today.

Soon, AI will also be helping us to learn new skills. It will help people produce amazing art or music. AI will also help us to communicate in any language. Mobile phones have changed the way we live in just a few years. In the near future, our lives will have changed again thanks to AI.

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

The advantages and disadvantages to evolving technology

Technology is always changing. Every few years, you can buy televisions that have larger screens or better pictures. Mobile phones can do more and more things. On a bigger scale, computers in businesses, at airports and in almost every organisation become more and more powerful. We now depend on everything becoming better, bigger and faster.

On the one hand, this makes things easier for all of us. It is not very expensive to buy televisions that are almost as good as cinema screens. Mobile phones mean that you can be connected to the internet anywhere, so you can always find out information or know where you are. Planes and cars are safer and businesses work better.

On the other hand, new technology is very bad for the environment. We all want to buy the latest phone, television or computer game, but that often means throwing away the old ones. You can recycle some parts of old equipment, but a lot of it is never used again. Who wants an old phone that does not connect to the internet?

On the whole, it is good that technology changes. We all want to have things that can improve our everyday lives. On balance, however, I think that we have to find a way to use new technology on old equipment. It is terrible that we have to throw away good equipment just because it does not use the latest technology. If we could build phones, TVs and computers that could last for decades, we could have a cleaner, greener world.



Listening Text

Presenter : In the last 70 years, technology has changed dramatically in the field of medicine. Back then they didn't have computers, smart phones or even the internet. These days robots are used to carry out operations. They are still controlled by humans but using robots allows doctors to perform the operations with more control and accuracy. But will robots be performing operations completely on their own one day? Let's ask our medical expert, Reuben.

Reuben : One thing you may've heard about is Artificial Intelligence[1] or AI. A number of companies think within the next year or two, robots will have started to perform some very simple operations autonomously[2] run by computers. Soon surgeons won't even need to be in the room. It'll even be possible to perform an operation from another country.

Presenter : Wow! Incredible. Another really exciting development is how we can use our smartphones to monitor[3] our health. What have you got here?

Reuben : Well, this app is connected to a little sensor on my arm. It tells me my blood sugar level. I click a button on my phone and place it near the sensor[4]. It makes a little sound, and there you can see my glucose level is 7.3. It's especially helpful for people with diabetes, which is a disease which occurs when your blood sugar is too high.

Presenter : Amazing! So, what next?

Reuben : Well, it's my belief that by the next decade AI in particular, will have transformed health care completely, and will be saving lives. Using data from patients' medical records, AI will be able to identify and name illnesses, design treatment plans, and create new drugs way faster than any doctor or consultant[5]. Some people worry that AI systems will replace doctors and nurses, but I don't think so. They'll be able to concentrate on tasks which depend uniquely on human skills instead, such as empathy[6]. But what is certain is that we'll all be healthier and living longer due to new technology.

(1) الذكاء الاصطناعى
(2) بشكل مستقل
(3) يراقب
(4) جهاز استشعار
(5) استشارى
(6) تعاطف

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The factory needs a better system for .... the quality of the products.
a) damaging b) monitoring c) imaging d) shooting

2 My journey to work .... takes an hour in the underground.
a) amazingly b) repeatedly c) surprisingly d) normally

3 A .... is a person who uses computers to get access to data in somebody else's computer or phone system without permission.
a) technician b) electrician c) hacker d) robber

4 After discovering the vaccines, the number of new .... of the illness appears to be declining.
a) causes b) cases c) issues d) rules

5 Computers have .... the way work is done in hospitals, factories and many other places.
a) transformed b) transmitted c) transported d) damaged

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary in Use

FOCUS on Vocabulary

drugs عقاقير/أدوية
- medicines or substances for making medicines

operation عملية جراحية
- the process of cutting into someone's body to repair or remove a part that is damaged

record يسجل
- to store music, sound, television programmes, etc. on a disc or tape so that people can listen to them or watch them again

sensor مستشعر/جهاز استشعار
- a piece of equipment used for discovering the presence of light, heat, movement, etc.

surgeon جراح
- a doctor who does operations in a hospital

surgery جراحة
- medical treatment in which a surgeon cuts open your body to repair or remove something inside

treatment علاج
- something that is done to cure someone who is injured or ill

Notes on Vocabulary

1

organisation
منظمة (تضم مجموعة من الناس أو الشـركات أو البلاد تم إنشاؤها لغرض محدد)

a group of people, companies, or countries, which is set up for a particular purpose

- The World Health Organisation is urging the government to provide people with COVID-19 vaccines more quickly.

institution
مؤسسة (منظمة/شركة هامة مثل بنك أو جامعة)

a large important organisation such as a bank or university

- Cairo University is an important academic institution in the Middle East.

association
منظمة/اتحاد (مجموعة من الأشخاص فى مهنة أو رياضة أو نشاط لتمثيل الأعضاء بشكل رسمى)

an organisation for people in a particular profession, sport, or activity, which officially represents its members

- The Football Association is on a meeting to choose a new president.

2

global
١- عالمى/كونى
٢- شامل

1. affecting or including the whole world
2. considering all the parts of a problem or situation together

- The rise of temperature is a global climate problem.
- We are taking a global view of our business.

international
دولى/بين أكثر من دولة

concerning more than one nation

- Surely, the international trade was affected by COVID-19 precautionary measures.

3

comment
تعليق شفوى أو مكتوب للتعبير عن رأى

something that you say or write in order to give your opinion

- All website members are invited to send in their comments and suggestions.

remark
ملاحظة (شفوية)

something that you say

- We must ignore Wael if he starts making rude remarks.

point
نقطة (شـىء مذكور عن موضوع فى مناقشة أو مناظرة أو مقال)

something that someone mentions about a subject in a discussion, argument, article

- He mentions a number of important points in his article.

4

treat
يعالج شخصًا/يتعامل مع

- Patients are treated with a combination of medication معالجة and exercise.

cure
يشفى/يعالج من مرض

- Many formerly fatal diseases can now be cured.

a cure (n)
علاج

- There's no cure for diabetes but the symptoms can be managed.

heal
يندمل/يلتئم (مع الحروق والقطع والجروح والإصابات)

heal (wounds/cuts/injuries/burns)

- Vitamin K is needed by the body for healing cuts and bruises.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

Did you notice these notes while reading?

- .... so it helps me **keep** in touch with him.

On a bigger scale, technology has helped **save** lives in Mexico. It will help us **discover** new cures.

لاحظ استخدام فعل فى المصدر بدون (to) بعد (help) كما يمكن أيضًا استخدام (المصدر + to)

- They forget about simple things like **walking** in nature and **being** with friends.

لاحظ استخدام الأفعال قبل وبعد (and) فى صيغة واحدة (verb + ing)

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Readers of our Facebook page are invited to send in their .... and suggestions.
   a) recipes
   b) observations
   c) remarks
   d) comments
2. Burning oil, coal and gas has a great effect on making .... warming worse.
   a) global
   b) international
   c) local
   d) national
3. I've broken my leg, but the doctor says it should .... easily as it's a clean break.
   a) treat
   b) heal
   c) cure
   d) stop
4. Egypt joined the International Football .... (i.e. FIFA) in 1925.
   a) Party
   b) Organisation
   c) Association
   d) Institution

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

دعوه حلوه للشخص اللي صور الكتاب دا ولك بالمثل،،



Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Workbook Vocabulary & Vocabulary Notes

1 Many doctors have carried out extensive research into the effects of the new .... for cancer on children.
a) sensor b) symptom c) drug d) case

2 The young doctor referred احال me to the hospital consultant of .... to make a decision about my knee operation.
a) chemistry b) surgery c) radiology d) invention

3 The enemy soldiers were accused of inhumanity in their .... of the war prisoners.
a) treatment b) elimination c) solution d) accuracy

4 Doctors warn us that smoking can .... serious respiratory diseases.
a) reason b) research c) cause d) result

5 Many cancer victims can be .... if the disease is detected early enough.
a) operated b) healed c) processed d) cured

6 Scientists believe that a child's .... develops rapidly between the ages of four and five.
a) intelligence b) infection c) mistake d) fault

7 Pollution is a .... problem which needs the cooperation of all countries.
a) local b) simple c) national d) global

8 It is the responsibility of each .... to defend Egypt against enemies.
a) individual b) hacker c) teacher d) surgeon

9 El Orman is a famous non-governmental charitable .... that is mainly concerned with helping the poor.
a) company b) department c) organisation d) section

10 All .... employees receive basic safety training before any new building project.
a) immunity b) popularity c) charity d) security

11 .... intelligence is the science of how to make computers do things that usually need human intelligence.
a) Normal b) Artificial c) Natural d) Industrial

12 The new factory will bring a lot of .... to the area by employing people and refreshing the economy.
a) harms b) troubles c) benefits d) interests

13 The .... shook buildings throughout the small town, but no serious damage was made.
a) earthquake b) accident c) tsunami d) storm

14 The team's coach was .... last week after losing five successive matches.
a) lost b) replaced c) placed d) detected

15 The old secretary was fired for not .... her duties and this resulted in the delay of many projects.
a) working b) carrying c) performing d) producing

16 Hurghada was .... from a quiet farming village into a busy tourist resort .
a) transformed b) transmitted c) transfused d) returned

17 It was thought that most animal diseases could not be passed to .... beings.
a) humane b) human c) inhuman d) humanness

18 The bank installed security lights with an infrared .... that come on when a person is near them.
a) monitor b) machine c) reactor d) sensor

19 The police officer reported that street-fights are a/an .... occurrence in this area of slums.
a) every day b) everyday c) day d) days
20 The coach said he didn't have any .... after losing the match.
a) estimations b) accounts c) comments d) issues
21 The supermarket owner decided to install a new .... system after it was robbed.
a) transport b) surgery c) maturity d) security
22 The computer programmer has the difficult .... of organising the information.
a) task b) profession c) position d) work
23 Dr Magdy Yaccoub is one of the most famous heart .... all over the world.
a) chemists b) surgeons c) patients d) leaders
24 Rubbish bags are made of plastic .... from old packaging material.
a) invented b) reprinted c) recycled d) renewed
25 Dr Magdy Yaccoub is one of the doctors who contributed much to ways of .... heart treatments.
a) distant b) explanatory c) autonomous d) surgical
26 The hospital staff .... the situation of the bus accident very well.
a) handled b) headed c) dealt d) posed
27 Critics don't agree that the success of a movie is .... by the enjoyment of the audience.
a) combined b) treated c) measured d) healed
28 It is believed that the 1990s were a/an .... of rapid advances especially in communication technology.
a) decade b) millennium c) reign d) age
29 Running your own business usually .... working long hours, but it's worth the effort.
a) consists b) involves c) refuses d) inspects
30 The young doctor got a job in a .... village in Upper Egypt away from his hometown.
a) relieved b) sided c) dramatic d) distant

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

31 In this way, students will gain maximum benefit from their classes.
The synonym of the word "benefit" is ....
a) profit b) loss c) difficulty d) ignorance
32 Youssef says that he doesn't want to depend too much .... his parents.
a) for b) on c) at d) with
33 This research was .... by a team of scientists at Alexandria University.
a) detained b) carried c) made d) done
34 Computer .... can be defined as the excessive use of the computer.
a) addict b) addiction c) addicted d) predicted
35 Nowadays teamwork is important .... companies, so it helps to be sociable.
a) for b) about c) with d) at
36 Most young men and women .... in touch with their friends through social media.
a) turn b) miss c) keep d) win
37 How many students were able to .... for English classes?
a) register b) registration c) registered d) registering
38 If you want to .... healthy, you should have a healthy diet and a good lifestyle.
a) leave b) stay c) lose d) spend
39 The company hasn't achieved more profits, but on .... it has had a successful year.
a) account b) advance c) balance d) remark
40 The efficient doctor is very good at handling her patients. The antonym of the word "handle" is "..................".
a) deal b) care c) ignore d) treat





Lessons 3 & 4

B Language

Future tenses

1) Future simple (will/won't + inf.) المستقبل البسيط

e.g. I think it will be fine tomorrow. **Form:** (will/won't + inf.)

(will + inf.) is used with the following:

1 On-the-spot decisions (Quick decisions) القرارات الفورية

- I like these shoes. I'll buy them.
- Father: I'm thirsty. Son: I'll get you some water.

2 Future facts حقائق المستقبل (شيء لا نتحكم فيه)

- Mazen will be 9 years old next month.
- Today is the 10th of Sept. Tomorrow will be the 11th.

3 Predictions based on what we think (without evidence) التنبؤ القائم على الاعتقاد (بدون دليل)

- Egypt will win the next World Cup.
- It will rain heavily tomorrow.

4 Some verbs, expressions and adverbs:

- Verbs : think/believe/expect/promise/hope/predict
- Expressions : be sure/be afraid
- Adverbs : perhaps/certainly/probably/possibly

- I promise I will give you the money needed when I get a pay rise.
- I hope my brother will pass his driving test.
- My parents think that I'll become an artist one day.
- I'm sure Osama will win the race.
- Perhaps, my boss will punish me for being late.
- The police will probably find the criminal.

5 Offer العرض

- I see that you have difficulty with these questions. Wait a minute and I'll help you.
- Since you're tired, I'll cook dinner tonight.

6 Request الطلب

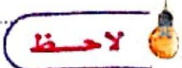
- Will you help me with my homework, Hazem?
- Will you get me two kilos of sugar when you go to the market?

7 Threat التهديد

- If you make these mistakes again, I'll punish you.
- Behave well or I'll tell your father.

8 Warning التحذير

- Factories must stop polluting the air or we won't be able to breathe.
- If we don't arrive early, we won't find a place to park.



hoped, thought + would	I thought (didn't expect) that she would visit us.
promise + to + inf.	I have promised them to come early tonight.
فعل امر + or + will (won't)	Get up early or you won't catch the train.

2) Be going to (am/is/are going to + inf.)   المستقبل بـ Going to + inf.

e.g. There are black clouds in the sky. It's going to rain.

Form: (am/is/are (not) going to + inf.)

(Be going to) is used with the following:

1 For plans and decisions we have already made للخطط والنوايا والقرارات التى اتخذناها بالفعل.

- He's going to employ more staff. (plan خطة/intention نية)
- I'm going to move to a bigger house next year. (decision قرار)

2 To make predictions with present reality or evidence: التنبؤ بدليل (شىء نراه أو نعرفه)

- Look at him! He is going to win the race. (He is ahead of the other runners).
- The wall is moving. It is going to fall.

هناك طرق أخرى للتعبير عن المستقبل:

3) Present simple   المضارع البسيط

e.g. The train to Assuit leaves at 6 o'clock tomorrow morning.

Form : He/She/It + v. + (s, es, ies). I/They/We/You + inf.

(Present simple) is used with the following:

When we refer to programmes or timetables (planes/trains/buses, etc.).

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الجداول المحددة والبرامج والمواعيد الثابتة، مثل: مواعيد الطائرات والأتوبيسات والقطارات والسينما والمسرح والتلفزيون والامتحانات ... إلخ.

- The film starts at 9 p.m. (cinema programme)
- The plane arrives at Cairo Airport at 7:30. (timetable)

4) Present continuous (am/is/are + v-ing)   المضارع المستمر

e.g. I am meeting Mr Ibrahim at his office at 10 a.m. tomorrow.

Form : (am/is/are + v-ing)

(Present continuous) is used with the following:

For fixed arrangements in the near future.

- يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الأشياء التى تم الترتيب لها فى المستقبل القريب.

- I'm flying to London tomorrow morning. (I've got the ticket.)
- We're giving a party tomorrow. (Everything has been arranged.)



Important points

١) الفعل think يأتى معه will ولكن إذا كان هناك دليل نستخدم بعده be going to.

Bahaa is a careless driver. I think he will have an accident one day.

Look! Bahaa is driving dangerously fast. I think he is going to have an accident.

٢) الصفات الثابتة والحقيقية ليست دليلًا على حدوث الفعل، مثل:

Salah is a clever player. I think he will score a goal the next match. (not going to)

Salah is shooting a penalty. I think he is going to score a goal. (هذا دليل)

٣) تدل جمل التحذير (Be careful! – Look out! – Take care!) غالبًا على قرب حدوث الفعل.
فالشخص يرى شيئًا قريب الحدوث فيحذر منه، لذلك نستخدم بعد هذه الأفعال be going to.

Look out! We are going to crash! There is a car coming.

- وأما إذا كان التحذير عامًا نستخدم will .

Be careful or you will fall in the newly dug hole on your way to the market.

٤) بعد الأفعال think/expect/predict/be sure نستخدم will.
أما بعد الأفعال thought/expected/predicted/was sure/were sure نستخدم would.

I thought they would phone me that evening.

5 be to/be about to/be due to/be sure to + inf.

Rule		Example
a) be to	يجب أن	- The president is to visit America next Friday.
b) be about to	على وشك	- Look! The train is about to leave.
c) be due to (timetables)		- Their flight is due to arrive at 8:20.
d) be sure/certain to	بالتأكيد	- This plan is sure to succeed.

6 Shall

Usage		Example
a) To make an offer	للعرض	- Shall I carry the bag for you?
b) To make a suggestion	للاقتراح	- Shall we go out for dinner tonight?
c) To ask for suggestions or instructions	تعليمات	- What shall we do tonight?

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The milk is boiling. I .... the gas off.

a) turn b) am going to turn c) am turning d) will turn

2 We .... to Alexandria in July. All things are okay.

a) will be moved b) are moving c) move d) will move

3 My brother has decided to immigrate. He .... next month.

a) will travel b) travels c) is going to travel d) is travelling

4 My English lesson .... at ten-tomorrow morning.

a) starts b) is starting c) will start d) will be starting

5 Look! That boy .... It seems he can't swim.

a) is going to drown b) will drown c) is drowning d) drowns

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

7 Future continuous المستقبل المستمر

Form

Subj. + will be + v-ing ▸ • I'll be playing at 7 p.m. tomorrow

Negative

Subj. + won't be + v-ing ▸ • I won't be waiting for you at 10 p.m. tomorrow.

Interrogative

Will + subj. + be + v-ing? ▸ • Will you be painting your room at this time next week?

Usage الاستخدام

1 For actions that will be in progress at a stated future time.

يستخدم للأحداث التى ستكون مستمرة عند وقت محدد فى المستقبل.

Don't phone me at 11 p.m. as I'll be sleeping at this time.

2 For actions that will definitely happen in the future as a result of a routine or arrangement (instead of the present continuous).

يستخدم للأحداث التى سوف تحدث بالتحديد فى المستقبل كنتيجة لروتين أو ترتيب. (بدلًا من المضارع المستمر).

I'll be playing golf on Friday.
(I play golf every Friday - it's part of my routine)
I'll be seeing Fathy tomorrow. (**seeing** here means **meeting**.)
(We work in the same office so we will definitely meet.)

3 When we ask politely about people's arrangements to see if they can do something for us or because we want to offer to do something for them.

يستخدم عندما نسأل بأدب عن ترتيبات الأشخاص لنرى ما إذا كانوا يستطيعون فعل شيء لنا أو لأننا نريد أن نفعل شيئًا لهم.

Will you be going to the supermarket? Can you buy me some tea?

4 We use may be + v-ing to refer to future events or trends which are possible but not certain:

يستخدم may be + v-ing للتعبير عن الأحداث التى من الممكن أن تحدث ولكن لسنا متأكدين منها.

Many more people may be living in Cairo in the next 50 years.

5 The future continuous is used with the following time expressions:

يستخدم المستقبل المستمر مع التعبيرات الزمنية الآتية.

- All night/day tomorrow/next week, etc.
- This time tomorrow/next week - At + مدة tomorrow/next week - From .... to .... tomorrow.
- In an hour's time

Advanced Points

١) أفعال الحالة stative verbs لا تستخدم في الاستمرار لذلك لا تستخدم مع المستقبل المستمر ولكن إذا تغير معناها يمكن أن تستخدم في الاستمرار مثل:

This time next year, I will have had my graduation certificate.

- لا يمكن استخدام will be having لأن الفعل يملك لا يستخدم مستمرًا.

This time tomorrow, I will be having my dinner with my family.

- الفعل have هنا ليس بمعنى يملك بل بمعنى يتناول لذلك استخدم في الاستمرار.

٢) لو وجد رابط زمني نستخدم بعده المضارع البسيط أو المستمر ولا نستخدم المستقبل .

I'll be studying my lessons while my father is watching the match tomorrow.

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think that I .... on the project for the next 15 to 20 years
   a) will work b) may work
   c) 'll be working d) will have worked
2. In 20 years, Khaled .... his own business.
   a) will be running b) will be run
   c) runs d) ran
3. Half an hour from now, the cinema will be full. Everyone .... the film.
   a) will watch b) will be watching
   c) watch d) will have watched
4. I can't visit you because I .... for my sister's wedding all next afternoon.
   a) might have prepared b) won't prepare
   c) will prepare d) will be preparing
5. Hopefully, I .... medicine at university this time next year.
   a) may study b) 'll study
   c) 'll be studying d) shall study



8) Future perfect المستقبل التام

Form
Subj. + will have + P.P. ▶ • I will have finished this report by midday.

Negative
Subj. + won't have + P.P. ▶ • I won't have finished this report until 5 o'clock.

Interrogative
Will + subj. + have + P.P.? ▶ • Will you have typed all these letters by the time the boss arrives?

Passive
Obj. + will have been + P.P. ▶ • Our car will have been repaired by tomorrow.



1 For actions that will or will not be completed before a specific time in the future.

يعبر عن حدث سوف (سوف لا) يكون قد اكتمل قبل وقت محدد فى المستقبل.

- By 8 o'clock tomorrow, I'll have sent all these invitation cards.
- By next October, the new company building will have been built.

2 For actions that will or will not be completed before another action in the future.

يعبر عن حدث سوف (سوف لا) يكون قد اكتمل قبل حدث آخر فى المستقبل.

- I will have read the book before I return it to the library.
- By the time my father arrives, I'll have finished my homework.

3 The future perfect is used with the following time expressions:

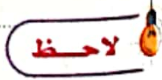
- Before, by + فترة فى المستقبل (21:00), by the time, till/until, in a year's (2 years') time.

- My wife won't have finished preparing the lunch till 4 o'clock.
- In a week's time, we'll have finished our exams.

لاحظ استخدام الروابط الزمنية مع المستقبل التام.

Future perfect (will have + P.P.)	Before, till/until, by the time, by	Present simple Present perfect

- Before he arrives, I'll have completed the report.
- By the time he has finished doing the homework, his father will have returned back home.



1) نستخدم by/by the time/before لنقصد قبل وقت محدد فى المستقبل.

- We will have taken the test by/before June.
- I won't have done all of my homework by the time/before you get home.

2) ونستخدم in (a year's/week's/2 weeks') time لنقصد فى نهاية هذا الوقت فى المستقبل.

- In five years, I will have started work.
- How much will you have done on your project in two months' time?

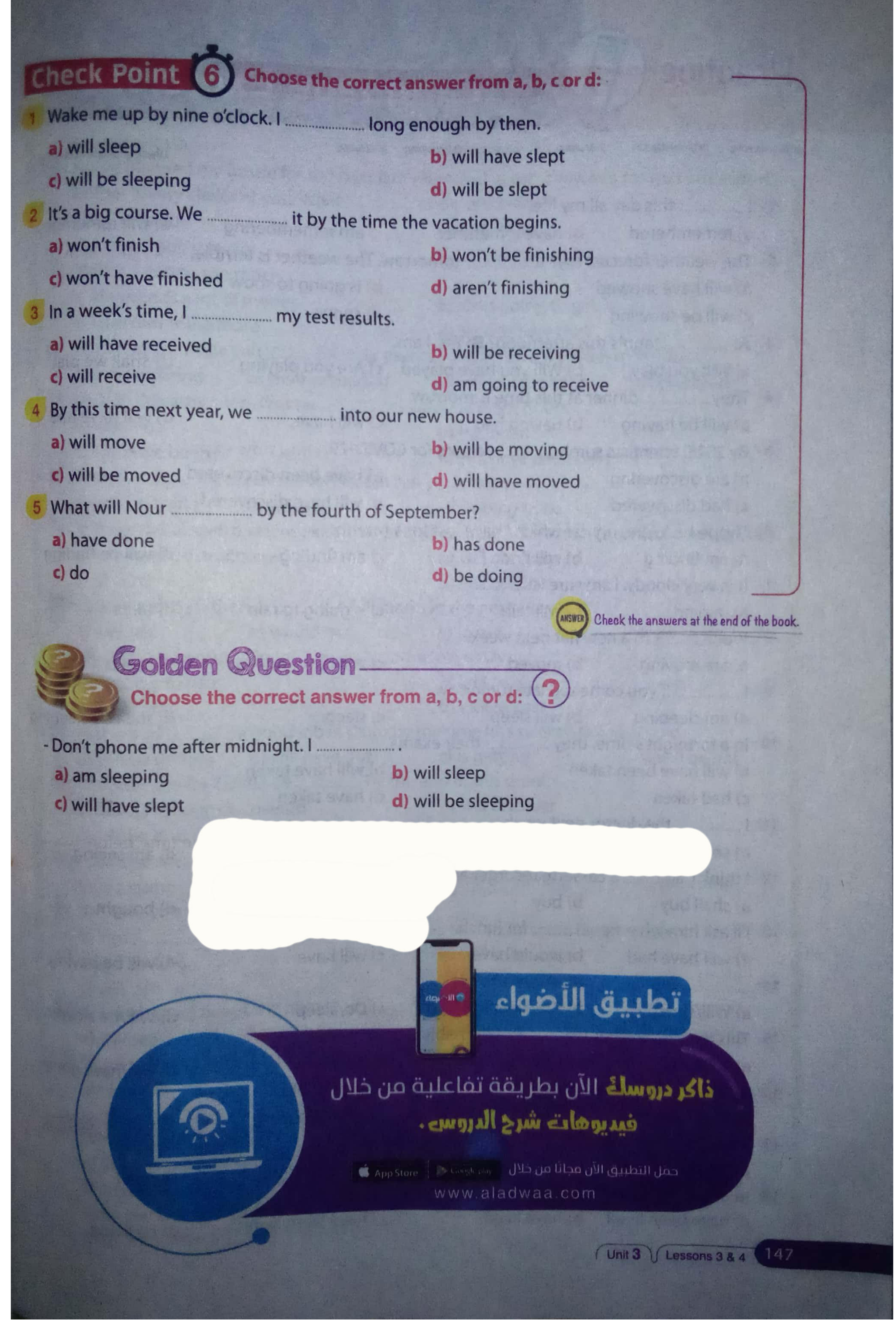
Extra Points

هناك أفعال تعبر عن المستقبل تلقائيًا عند استخدامها فى صيغة المضارع مثل:

want, expect, hope, predict, wish, need, etc.

وعند استخدام to بعدها نستغنى عن will وعند استخدام المستقبل التام نستخدم بعدهم to have + p.p. وفى المجهول to have been + p.p.

- By 2030, we expect to have built flats for all people in Egypt.
- The food is expected to have been prepared by 6 pm today.



Check Point 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Wake me up by nine o'clock. I .... long enough by then.
   a) will sleep b) will have slept
   c) will be sleeping d) will be slept
2. It's a big course. We .... it by the time the vacation begins.
   a) won't finish b) won't be finishing
   c) won't have finished d) aren't finishing
3. In a week's time, I .... my test results.
   a) will have received b) will be receiving
   c) will receive d) am going to receive
4. By this time next year, we .... into our new house.
   a) will move b) will be moving
   c) will be moved d) will have moved
5. What will Nour .... by the fourth of September?
   a) have done b) has done
   c) do d) be doing

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Golden Question

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Don't phone me after midnight. I ....
  a) am sleeping b) will sleep
  c) will have slept d) will be sleeping



Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Check your understanding.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I .... this day all my life.
a) remembered b) have remember c) am remembering d) will remember

2 The weather forecast says it .... tomorrow. The weather is terrible.
a) will have snowed b) is going to snow
c) will be snowing d) snows

3 **A:** .... tennis this afternoon? **B:** Yes, I am.
a) Will you play b) Will you have played c) Are you playing d) Shall we play

4 They .... dinner at this time tomorrow.
a) will be having b) having had c) will have d) will have had

5 By 2025, scientists surely .... a cure for COVID-19.
a) are discovering b) have been discovered
c) had discovered d) will have discovered

6 I hope I .... my car which I have lost for a month.
a) am finding b) will find c) am finding d) will be finding

7 It is very cloudy. I am sure it ....
a) raining b) will rain c) is going to rain d) rains

8 We .... to a new flat next week.
a) are moving b) moved c) will have moved d) move

9 I .... if you come too late tomorrow.
a) am sleeping b) will sleep c) sleep d) shall be sleeping

10 In a fortnight's time, they .... their exams.
a) will have been taken b) will have taken
c) had taken d) have taken

11 I .... the doctor next week.
a) see b) will have seen c) have seen d) am seeing

12 I think I .... a cassette recorder and use it in class.
a) shall buy b) buy c) am buying d) bought

13 I'll ask him what he .... for lunch.
a) will have had b) would have c) will have d) will be having

14 .... you .... at 6 tomorrow?
a) Will/sleep b) Are/sleeping c) Do/sleep d) Will/be sleeping

15 This time tomorrow, we .... probably .... fishing.
a) are/will b) shall/be c) do/are d) will/have gone

16 By the end of the first term, we .... many English books.
a) shall be read b) are going to read c) will have read d) will be reading

17 It's no trouble, really. I .... Samir tomorrow anyway.
a) am meeting b) have met c) will have met d) meet

18 In about forty years' time, we'll probably .... on pills.
a) have been lived b) have lived c) have been living d) be living

19 A: Why have you set your alarm clock to go off at 5.30?
B: Because I .... then. I have to catch the early train.
a) was going to get up
b) am going to get up
c) have got up
d) get up

20 A: I've planned my future for the next five years.
B: That is very clever of you. What .... when you retire?
a) will you do
b) have done
c) are you going to do
d) do you do

21 Maher is eating too much. ....
a) He spends a lot of money
b) He is going to get fat
c) Give him some more
d) He was very thin

22 Next August, while you .... for your exams, I will be on a Mediterranean beach.
a) are preparing
b) were preparing
c) will be preparing
d) prepared

23 By 5.30 this afternoon, Osama .... at work for eight hours.
a) won't be
b) has been
c) will have been
d) will have been being

24 There .... more electric vehicles in ten years' time.
a) will be being
b) will be
c) is going to be
d) are

25 In the years ahead, it seems likely that people .... even greater control over nature.
a) will have been acquired
b) will be acquired
c) to acquire
d) will acquire

26 I promised my father .... the full marks in the next exam.
a) will get
b) would get
c) to get
d) am going to get

27 My friend is very intelligent. He .... the test easily.
a) is going to pass
b) will pass
c) is passing
d) would pass

28 Mahmoud .... a good job in Cairo by the time he's twenty-five years old.
a) will be getting
b) will have got
c) is getting
d) will be got

29 I hope a cure for COVID-19 .... by the end of this month.
a) will have been discovered
b) will discover
c) will be discovering
d) will be discovered

30 Look out! A car .... towards you.
a) is coming
b) is going to come
c) will be coming
d) will come

31 A: "Have you made plans for tonight?"
B: Yes. I .... my sister after work. We need to discuss some family matters.
a) am visiting
b) will have visited
c) will visit
d) won't be visiting

32 I'll tell Hesham about the party. I .... him at work anyway.
a) will see
b) will be seeing
c) may see
d) was seeing

33 "Shall I carry your bag for you?" We use this structure in a/an ....
a) request
b) promise
c) offer
d) on-the-spot decision

34 Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect ....
a) In two hours' time, I'll be booking the tickets.
b) In two hours' time, I will have booked the tickets.
c) By yesterday, I had booked the tickets.
d) By tomorrow, I'll book the tickets.



C General Skills

Don't forget to study this part from the Skills Booklet.





Writing

Online comments تعليقات على الإنترنت

لكتابة تعليق جيد هناك بعض القواعد التى يجب عليك اتباعها ومنها:

1. Make it clear by using simple language. 2. Avoid sarcasm. 3. Avoid unnecessary abbreviations. 4. Use facts. 5. Don't confuse facts with opinions.	- اجعل الأمر واضحًا باستخدام لغة بسيطة. - تجنب السخرية. - تجنب الاختصارات غير الضرورية. - استخدم الحقائق. - لا تخلط بين الحقائق والآراء.

Model comment

Write a comment on the positive and negative effects that technology has on everyday life in your country.

Posted 3 October 2021, 17.30 **Nourhan**

Technology, especially the internet, has become an important part of life in Egypt. It has helped the government to provide fast service. Now people can get many online governmental services such as traffic services, getting official documents and even arranging for travel online. Through tablets and broadband internet connections at school, the Ministry of Education could improve education in secondary school. Through social media, people can communicate with each other easily. However, the internet and mobile overuse have affected our social life much. Young people now lack a lot of communication skills. Moreover, online games have taken the place of practising sports which affected people's health and physical fitness badly. That's why we need to train our children and young people how to use technology more wisely.



Unit 3
Lessons 3 & 4

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The famous band has just .... its new album in Paris.
a) revolved b) damaged c) purchased d) recorded

2 A group of .... broke into the bank's system yesterday and stole millions of pounds.
a) tracers b) crackers c) hackers d) gamers

3 The President's speech addressed a number of important political ....
a) tissues b) issues c) trials d) records

4 A .... is a web page containing information or opinions from a particular person or about a particular subject.
a) blog b) paper c) diary d) dairy

5 .... crimes such as phishing and hacking have become common in some countries.
a) Motor b) Lawful c) Cyber d) Economical

6 Mum has proven that she can .... any problem inside the house.
a) handle b) register c) preach d) retreat

7 The patient is carefully .... after the open-heart operation.
a) revealed b) monitored c) healed d) approved

8 The website has games to appeal to both the PC beginners and the dedicated ....
a) racers b) fighters c) boxers d) gamers

9 Wait! I .... you to the station.
a) drive b) will be driving c) am driving d) will drive

10 The English lesson .... at 8:45.
a) is starting b) will start c) starts d) will be started

11 Are you still writing your essay? When you ...., we will go for a walk.
a) finished b) finish c) had finished d) will finish

12 We .... dinner at a seaside restaurant on Sunday. It's planned.
a) are going to have b) have
c) will have had d) will have

13 Hossam .... to London on Monday morning.
a) will fly b) will have flown c) flies d) is flying

14 You're carrying too much. I .... the door for you.
a) will be opening b) am going to open c) will open d) will have opened

15 When they get married in March, they .... each other for six years.
a) will have been knowing b) will have known
c) will know d) are going to know

16 I don't think you .... any problems when you land in France.
a) will have b) won't have c) will have had d) will be having

17 Which of the following is correctly punctuated?
a) mr Ayman, who was sitting behind the desk, gave me a big smile.
b) Mr ayman :who was sitting behind the desk: gave me a big smile.
c) Mr Ayman, who was sitting behind the desk, gave me a big smile.
d) Mr Ayman, who was sitting behind the desk gave me a big smile.

18 The first paragraph of any essay is called a/an ....

a) introduction b) topic sentence c) body paragraph d) expository

19 "It is an evil that leads to ruin, destruction, hatred and death. The whole nation, the police and the masses should cooperate to put an end to it." This could be a part of an article about ....

a) cooperation b) unemployment c) pollution d) terrorism

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I'm sure you all know how important recycling[1] is. Recycling keeps our planet healthy. It reduces waste. It also saves energy. Recycling is when you take old things and turn them into new things. It sounds like magic. Only certain materials can be recycled. These include things made out of paper, metal, cardboard, glass and plastic. Can you think of everyday items made out of these materials? Soda cans are a good example. They are made out of metal. Magazines and newspapers are made out of paper. Cereal[2] boxes are made of cardboard. Some bottles of juice are made out of glass. Bags and yogurt containers are made out of plastic. Let's get back to the process[3] of recycling. Once you put all your items in a recycling bin, a truck comes to pick them up. Everything goes to a recycling plant[4]. There, the materials get separated[5]. They go into different piles. There are special machines that crush[6] each pile together. The materials get squashed into square cubes. <u>They</u> are really heavy. You would need a forklift[7] to carry them. Companies buy these cubes and turn them into new products.

You also can recycle by yourself at home. You can save all the cans and aluminum containers and sell them in a local recycling centre, yes cans for cash. Use glass jars as containers for the kitchen or the office, you can paint the bottles and use other materials to decorate[8] them. Use empty water bottles as flower pots, just cut off the bottoms, there are many amazing craft[9] projects you can do with recycled material. You can do your part to save the planet. So just remember the golden rule: always recycle your products!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20 What is recycling?

a) Giving old things to other people.

b) Destroying unimportant things by burning them.

c) Taking old things and turning them into new things.

d) Painting old bottles and using them again.

21 Which one of the following can't be recycled?

a) Things made out of paper. b) Things made of metal.

c) Things made of cardboard, glass and plastic. d) Things made of cotton and lying food.

22 What happens to the materials in the recycling plant?

a) They get separated and crushed.

b) They are delivered to our homes again.

c) Companies buy these cubes and turn them into new products.

d) A forklift carries them away.

23 What does the underlined word "They" refer to?

a) The square cubes. b) The special machines.

c) The glass jars. d) The piles of rubbish.



(1) إعادة التصنيع (2) حبوب الإفطار (3) عملية (4) مصنع (5) منفصل (6) يسحق (7) رافعة (8) يزين (9) حرفة

24 The following materials can be recycled except ....
a) yogurt
b) books made of paper
c) soda cans and bags containers
d) magazines and newspapers

25 The word .... means "a vehicle used for lifting and moving heavy objects".
a) machine
b) cubes
c) The recycling plant
d) forklift truck

26 The best title to the passage is "...............".
a) Recycling cans
b) Recycling saves our planet
c) Recycling from past to present
d) How to recycle bottles

27 Everything goes to a recycling plant. Plant here means ....
a) a room
b) a machine
c) a factory
d) a kind of tree

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d:

28 Artificial intelligence refers to the use of human intelligence in machines that are programmed to think like humans and mimic their actions. These machines exhibit things associated with a human mind such as learning and problem-solving.

a) يشير الذكاء الاصطناعى إلى استخدام الذكاء الميكانيكى فى الآلات المبرمجة للتفكير مثل البشر وتقليد أفعالهم وتعرض هذه الآلات أشياء مرتبطة بالعقل البشرى مثل التعلم وحل المشكلات.
b) يشير الذكاء الاصطناعى إلى استخدام الذكاء البشرى فى الآلات المبرمجة للتفكير مثل البشر وتقليد أفعالهم وترفض هذه الآلات أشياء مرتبطة بالعقل البشرى مثل التعلم وحل المشكلات.
c) يشير الذكاء الاصطناعى إلى استخدام الذكاء البشرى فى الآلات المبرمجة للتفكير مثل البشر وتقليد أفعالهم وتعرض هذه الآلات أشياء مرتبطة بالعقل البشرى مثل التعلم وحل المشكلات.
d) يشير الذكاء الاصطناعى إلى استخدام الذكاء البشرى فى الآلات المبرمجة للتفكير مثل البشر وتطوير أفعالهم وتعرض هذه الآلات أشياء مرتبطة بالعقل البشرى مثل التعلم وحل المشكلات.

29 لقد أثبتت الأزمات المتلاحقة كجائحة «كوفيد-١٩» والحرب فى أوكرانيا أهمية تحقيق الاكتفاء الذاتى فى كل المنتجات وخاصة الإنتاج الزراعى.

a) Successive crises such as the "Covid-19" pandemic and the war in Ukraine had proved the importance of recognising self-sufficiency in all products, especially agricultural production.
b) Successive crises such as the "Covid-19" pandemic and the war in Ukraine have proved the importance of achieving self-sufficiency in all products, especially agricultural production.
c) Following crises such as the "Covid-19" epidemic and the war in Ukraine have proved the importance of achieving self-sufficiency in most products, especially agricultural production.
d) Following crises such as the "Covid-19" pandemic and the war in Ukraine proves the importance of recognising self-sufficiency in all products, especially farming production.

30 رغم فوائدها الكثيرة إلا أن التكنولوجيا الحديثة أثرت سلبًا على الحياة الاجتماعية والتواصل بين الأجيال المختلفة فى المجتمع.

a) Despite its many benefits, modern technology has positively affected social life and communication between different generations in society.
b) Although its many benefits, modern technology has negatively affected social life and contact between different generations in society.
c) Though its many benefits, modern technology has positively affected social life and understanding between different generations in society.
d) Despite its many benefits, modern technology has negatively affected social life and communication between different generations in society.

Study

Chapter 3
(Great Expectations)

Vocabulary

apprentice (n)	صبى متمرن فى حرفة	note (n)	ملاحظة/يلاحظ
apprenticeship (n)	فترة التدريب فى المهنة	pale (adj)	شاحب
argument (n)	جدال	pretty (adj)	جميلة
boss (n)	رئيس	relatives (n)	الأقارب
celebration (n)	احتفال	reward (n)	مكافأة
coin (n)	عملة معدنية	spiders' webs (n)	شبكات العناكب
dusty (adj)	مترب	wedding (n)	زفاف
fair hair (n)	شعر فاتح اللون	workman (n)	عامل
gloomy (adj)	كئيب	wrap (v) (ped)	يلف

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

behave yourself	كن مؤدبًا	in a few days	فى غضون أيام قليلة
could not put my finger on	لم أستطع وضع إصبعى على	that's your lot	هذا هو نصيبك
pay for	يدفع مقابل	thanks to	بفضل
send away	يرسل بعيدًا/ينفى	wrap ... in	يلف ... فى



Great Expectations Exercises
Chapter (3)

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Our headmaster at primary school was a .... man who never smiled.
a) delighted b) glad c) cheerful d) gloomy

2 I certainly hope the children will .... themselves at the party today.
a) misbehave b) behave c) dare d) scare

3 He couldn't stay in the .... room because of his allergy.
a) dusty b) lusty c) clean d) clear

4 He served as an .... to the village carpenter for seven years.
a) appeal b) appraisal c) apprentice d) approach

5 I knew something she had said wasn't true, but I couldn't quite put my .... on it.
a) leg b) finger c) toe d) heart

6 My children had a/an .... over who would get to see the television program they wanted.
a) consent b) agreement c) arrangement d) argument

7 Everything in the deserted room was covered with spiders' ....
a) grips b) lips c) webs d) crisps

8 He bought tissue paper to .... the gift.
a) wrap b) reveal c) uncover d) grab

9 Are you feeling well? You look ....
a) lovely b) wealthy c) healthy d) pale

10 They couldn't afford a big .... in a famous hotel as their daughter, the bride, wanted.
a) divorce b) ceremony c) wedding d) funeral

11 We're having a small .... for dad's birthday.
a) ceremony b) celebration c) funeral d) speech

12 A .... is someone who does physical work such as building, repairing things.
a) workman b) boss c) specialist d) clerk

13 I inherited a small piece of land from a distant ....
a) opponent b) enemy c) relative d) rival

14 Thanks .... the efforts of the whole team, the project was completed on time.
a) of b) at c) in d) to

15 The bride looked so .... in her white dress. Everyone admired her.
a) sad b) pretty c) dirty d) gloomy

Unit 3

Advanced & Open
General Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

...هذه التدريبات موجودة بنهاية الكتاب.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Sports teaching at schools doesn't .... the required standard. They should be modernised.
a) miss b) lose c) leave d) approach

2 Some vitamins are very beneficial to strengthen your nervous .... such as Vitamin E.
a) system b) process c) formula d) procedure

3 We have only scratched the .... of the information available on this topic. There is a lot more to be known.
a) depth b) roof c) surface d) layer

4 The old businessman is .... by his wife and two sons to whom he left his money.
a) attached b) survived c) recovered d) prescribed

5 Our maths teacher is used to calling the class .... to know who is absent.
a) roll b) menu c) role d) jury

6 Sewage water can be .... so that it can be used for irrigating some crops.
a) treated b) healed c) cured d) salinised

7 The number of people claiming unemployment .... fell last month.
a) pay b) fare c) tax d) benefit

8 Wafaa has a very .... way of dressing which is liked by all her friends and relatives.
a) team b) individual c) vague d) unclear

9 This photo first appeared in the 20th .... of "National Geographic".
a) value b) case c) issue d) trial

10 The mountain climber narrowly .... death in an avalanche in the Alps.
a) yielded b) cheated c) caught d) escaped

11 By this time tomorrow, the scientist .... through space for nineteen hours.
a) is going to fly b) will fly c) will be flying d) will have been flying

12 Next weekend, I .... my proficiency exam, so I .... more or less 300 questions so far.
a) am going to have/finished b) am having/will finish
c) am having/will have finished d) will have/have finished

13 The team is determined not to leave .... they have finished the project.
a) since b) by the time c) until d) when

14 Scientists expect that by 2050, doctors .... the people suffering from certain illness during their space travel in space.
a) will be treating b) are treated
c) had treated d) will have been treating

15 The young soldier .... that he .... in the battle.
a) fears/is killed b) fears/will be killed c) has feared/is killed d) feared/was killed

16 He has promised his mother .... the dinner once a week.
a) will cook b) to have cooked c) would cook d) to cook

17 They expected the bridge .... by next October.
a) to have built b) will have built c) to have been built d) would have built

18 Work .... on a new factory building soon.
a) started b) is about to start c) would start d) will be starting

19 His new book .... next year.
a) is due to be published b) will have been published
c) will publish d) will be publishing

20 After I read this story, I .... all Taha Hussein's novels.
a) will read b) am going to read c) will be reading d) will have read



Al-Adwaa Test

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analyzing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1 Dolby Digital, the next generation in .... sound, is going to be sold soon.
a) fair b) surround c) speaker d) clip

2 The train accident has become one of the .... issues of the day.
a) burning b) soothing c) cooling d) releasing

3 With the new sound system, you feel .... in the actions of the movie.
a) surfed b) floated c) dived d) immersed

4 The decision about firing workers to reduce costs will be difficult to ....
a) implant b) inspect c) implement d) investigate

5 The police think that many young people took .... to escape their problems.
a) drugs b) turns c) trips d) tablets

6 The doctor said that my uncle needs a .... treatment to remove the cancerous tumour.
a) processed b) surgical c) conducting d) connecting

7 At the summer camp, I was given the task of building a fire. The synonym of the noun "task" is ....
a) right b) pay c) duty d) luxury

8 We've done a/an .... study on the company's weaknesses to avoid losses.
a) global b) international c) local d) national

9 On Friday at 8 o'clock, I .... my friend.
a) will have met b) will meet c) am meeting d) meet

10 Once you take a nap, you .... a lot better.
a) feel b) will feel c) will have left d) will be feeling

11 I will buy cheese from the corner shop when it ....
a) will have opened b) will open
c) opened d) opens

12 I will let you know the moment the builders .... decorating.
a) have finished b) finished c) will finish d) finishing

13 Once you .... your homework, will you tidy your room, please?
a) did b) will do c) 've done d) can do

14 By next week, she .... in London for nine months.
a) will be being b) will have been c) shall be d) is going to be

15 After three years, I .... in a different country. This is my decision.
a) am going to live b) will live
c) will have lived d) live

16 This time next week, I .... on the beach!
a) will lie b) will have lain c) lie d) will be lying

17 If a writer uses a word or phrase in a special way, such as ironically, he can put it in ....
a) squares b) round brackets
c) quotation marks d) square brackets

18 Who do you think will win the contest ....
a) ! b) ? c) . d) ,

19 "If teachers, engineers, doctors, scientists, etc. work together, they will learn about unselfishness and self-denial." This could be a part of an article about ....
a) good manners b) thinking of others
c) cooperation d) employment

20 In a formal email, you will conclude it with "............".
a) Bye b) Yours sincerely c) See you later d) See you soon

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Travel sickness is confined[1] more to children. The all-too-familiar symptoms of vomiting[2], sweating[3] and headache affect adults too, more often women than men. Even so, children between three and twelve are most at risk of losing their breakfast when travelling.

Travel sickness occurs when the information supplied to the brain by the eyes, the inner[4] ear and the sense of physical[5] movement are giving contradictory[6] information. This confusion is experienced when a person is subjected to[7] repeated movements while the body is still at rest.

The centre that brings about the attack of motion[8] sickness is the inner ear, providing as it does a complex mechanism[9] responsible for balance. If the nerve supply to the inner is destroyed, a person no longer suffers motion sickness.

So, it is important for a person who feels a little bit uneasy while travelling, to lie as flat[10] as possible and close his eyes. It's advisable to fix his vision on distant objects or on the horizon[11]. Reading, map-reading and some forms of game-playing are inadvisable. Windows should be open as fresh air helps, and adults who are easily attacked by travel sickness should avoid too much drinking or smoking before travelling. As a remedy there are some pills known as K-Wells. They are taken half an hour before travelling. They melt in the mouth and this makes them quick acting. These pills may cause sleepiness or dry mouth. Doctors who prefer natural remedies recommend ginger[12] in one of its many forms.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 The contradictory information given to the brain causes ....
a) repeated movements b) travel sickness
c) balance in the body d) death at once

22 The person doesn't suffer motion sickness if ....
a) the nerve supply to the inner is destroyed
b) they have more than one nerve in the inner ear
c) they are adults
d) they are travelling early in the morning

23 The organ that is responsible for balance in the body is the ....
a) sense of physical movement b) inner ear
c) complex mechanism d) the pills known as K-Wells

24 Those people who are likely to be attacked by travel sickness are not advised to .... before travelling.
a) smoke or drink too much b) listen to or play music too much
c) sleep early or get up early d) open the windows of the car

25 A natural remedy of travelling sickness is .... in any form.
a) coffee b) tea c) yeast d) ginger

26 The phrase "at risk of losing their breakfast when travelling" means ....
a) vomiting b) sweating c) sleeping d) eating

27 To avoid travel sickness, you may ....
a) read a book b) play a game c) look on the horizon d) have big meals

28 The antonym of the word "confusion" is "................".
a) misunderstanding b) clarity
c) mistake d) chaos

(3) عرق (4) داخلي (5) بدني (6) متناقض (7) خاضع لـ (8) حركة (9) آلية (10) مسطح (11) الأفق (12) زنجبيل

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Nader was an only child. He was used to getting what he wanted. He had known no other way. When his parents played any games with him, they would let him win on purpose so that he would be happy. Otherwise, Nader would kick up a big fuss[1].

In school, Nader took up football as his co-curricular[2] activity. He was a football fanatic[3]. His idol[4] was a famous English football star. Nader was not an exceptional player. He was usually a reserve[5] player in football matches. However, as this was his graduating year, his coach decided to give him a chance to playing a match. Nader was excited upon hearing this piece of news.

Over the next two weeks, Nader put in his all into trainings. Even during the weekends, he would insist that his father should take him to the park to practise. At home, he would watch football matches on television, hoping to pick up some tips.

Finally, the much-awaited day arrived. It was a game against another school in the same neighborhood. Although it was just a friendly match, Nader took it very seriously. He arrived at the stadium early and started his warm-ups. His sport shirt was ironed to a crisp[6] so that he would look his best. Their opponents[7] were more skilled. Nader's team lost the match.

When the final whistle[8] blew, Nader stormed off[9]. It was customary to shake the hands of the opponents at the end of a match but he did not care. In the changing room, the coach sought Nader out. He lectured Nader on the importance of good sportsmanship[10]. This was the first time anyone had ever reprimanded[11] Nader in public like that. He was shocked and did not know how to react. He felt humiliated[12] and humbled[13]. From then on, Nader's behavior improved a little.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

29 Which of the following pieces of information is not true?
- a) Nader was a spoilt child.
- b) Nader did not have any siblings.
- c) Nader's parents did not play games with him.
- d) Nader kicked up a fuss whenever his parents let him win.

30 The antonym of the word "exceptional" is "...............".
- a) brilliant
- b) excellent
- c) ordinary
- d) unique

31 Why did Nader's coach let him play in the match?
- a) He was a football fanatic.
- b) It was his last chance to take part in a match before graduation.
- c) He was usually only a reserve player.
- d) His favorite was a famous English football star.

32 What did Nader do to prepare for the match?
- a) He trained and practised very hard.
- b) He spent all his time watching television.
- c) He insisted that his father give him some tips.
- d) He went to watch football matches at the park.

33 What does "it" in paragraph 4 refer to?
- a) The day of the match.
- b) Arriving at the stadium early.
- c) The match against another school.
- d) Ironing his sport shirt so he would look his best.

34 Nader was scolded by his coach because ....
- a) he had lost the match
- b) he had displayed poor sportsmanship
- c) he had not been reprimanded before
- d) he had not known how to react during the match

(1) ضجة (2) منهج مشترك (3) متعصب (4) قدوة (5) بديل (6) متموج (7) خصوم (8) صافرة (9) خرج غاضبًا (10) روح رياضية (11) وبخ (12) مهان (13) وضيع



35 At the end of the match, Nader ....

a) stormed off without shaking hands with the opponents
b) shook hands with the opponents
c) shook hands with his team
d) stormed off kicking the ball hard

36 The message carried by this story is ....

a) How to play well and win
b) Having one child is not good
c) Coaches should be more polite
d) Spoiling children is something bad

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d:

37 The internet is a double-edged weapon. It helped spread news and information; however, it has affected young people negatively. So, it must be used wisely.

a) إن الإنترنت سلاح ذو حدين فلقد ساعد على نشر الأخبار والمعلومات لكنه أثر بشكل سلبى على الشباب لذلك، يجب استخدامه بحكمة.
b) إن الإنترنت سلاح ذو وجهين فلقد ساعد على طبع الأخبار والمعلومات لكنه أثر بشكل سلبى على الشباب لذلك، يجب استخدامه بحكمة.
c) إن الإنترنت سلاح ذو فائدتين فلقد ساعد على نشر الأخبار والمعلومات لكنه أثر بشكل إيجابى على الشباب لذلك، يجب استخدامه من الحكماء.
d) إن الإنترنت سلاح ذو حدين فقد يساعد على نشر الأخبار والمعلومات لكنه أثر بشكل سلبى على الشباب لذلك، يجب استخدامه من الحكماء.

38 The Suez Canal is the safest waterway in the world and an important source of Egypt's national income. The economic projects on its banks will add more to its benefits.

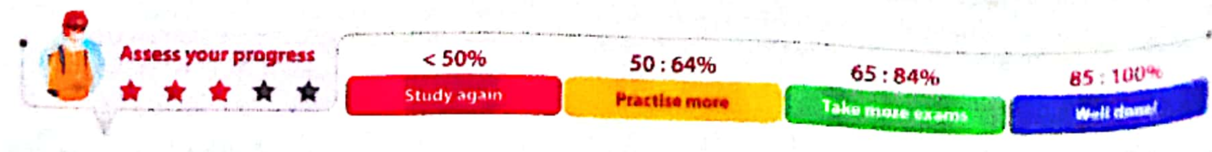
a) قناة السويس هى مجرى مائى آمن ومصدر هام من مصادر الدخل القومى لمصر كما ستضيف المشاريع الاقتصادية فى بنوكها المزيد إلى فوائدها.
b) تعد قناة السويس أكثر الممرات المائية أمانًا فى العالم ومصدرًا هامًا من مصادر الدخل القومى لمصر كما ستضيف المشاريع الاقتصادية على ضفافها المزيد إلى فوائدها.
c) تعد قناة السويس أحد ممرات المياه السريعة فى العالم ومصدرًا هامًا من مصادر الدخل القومى لمصر كما ستضيف المشاريع الاقتصادية فى بنوكها المزيد إلى فوائدها.
d) تعد قناة السويس أقصر الممرات المائية فى العالم ومصدرًا هامًا من مصادر الدخل القومى لمصر كما ستضيف المشاريع الاقتصادية على ضفافها القليل إلى فوائدها.

39 أحد عيوب استخدام الذكاء الاصطناعى مثل الإنسان الآلى هو فقدان بعض الناس لوظائفهم لكن ذلك يمكن تعويضه من خلال إعادة تدريب هؤلاء الناس لوظائف أخرى.

a) One of the advantages of using Artificial Intelligence, such as robots, is that some people lose their jobs, but this can be compensated for by retraining these people for other jobs.
b) One of the disadvantages of using Artificial Intelligence, such as robots, is that some people change their jobs, but this can be compensated for by treating these people for other jobs.
c) One of the disadvantages of using Artificial Intelligence, such as robots, is that some people lose their jobs, but this can be compensated for by retraining these people for other jobs.
d) One of the advantages of using Artificial Intelligence, such as robots, is that some people lose their jobs, but this can be replaced for by treating these people for other jobs.

40 أعتقد أننا سنكون مستمرين فى تزيين قاعات الاحتفالات عندما يصل الضيوف إذا لم نسرع وسوف يغضب أبى لذلك.

a) I think we would decorate the hall when the guests arrived if we do not hurry and my father will be angry about it.
b) I think we will have decorated the hall when the guests arrive if we do not hurry and my father will be angry about it.
c) I think we decorated the hall when the guests arrived if we do not hurry and my father will be angry about it.
d) I think we will be decorating the hall when the guests arrive if we do not hurry and my father will be angry about it.





Revision (1)

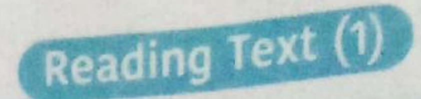
Units 1,2&3

Vocabulary on Reading

area (n)	منطقة
ban (v) (ned)	يمنع
basis (n)	أساس
character (n)	شخصية
checklist (n)	قائمة تدقيق
competition (n)	منافسة/مسابقة
confusing (adj)	مربك
decade (n)	عقد (عشر سنوات)
detect (v) (ed)	يكشف
developer (n)	مطور (برامج)
electric-powered (adj)	يدار بالكهرباء
Electronics (n)	إلكترونيات
Mechanical Engineering (n)	هندسة ميكانيكية
feedback (n)	التغذية الاسترجاعية
impressive (adj)	مؤثر
musical (n)	مسرحية/فيلم موسيقى
partner (n)	شريك/رفيق
predictions (n)	تنبؤات
radioactivity (n)	نشاط إشعاعى
reality (n)	حقيقة/واقع
robotics (n)	علم الروبوتات
senior (adj)	أعلى/أكبر سنًا
spaceship (n)	سفينة فضاء
swarm (n)	سرب
target audience	الجمهور المستهدف
title (n)	عنوان
tourism (n)	سياحة
wireless (adj)	لاسلكى

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

come to life	يعود للحياة
focus attention on	يركز اهتمامه على
dream of	يحلم بـ
feel about	يشعر بخصوص
fill in	يملأ
have in common	لديه أشياء مشتركة
make notes	يدون ملاحظات
hear from	يتلقى خبرًا من
replace ... with	يستبدل ... بـ
write down	يدون



Digitheatre Review

Scientists from history come to life in a new online show involving wooden puppets, music and theatre called *Jina and the Stem sisters*. It's a musical with great songs and a wonderful message. The show tells the story of some of the most **inspiring** women in science and mathematics. In the story, Jina is on a journey and gets lost in a forest. There she meets women who have made important **contributions** to the history of STEM. The women include Hedy Lamarr, who was both an actress and inventor. Whilst at the top of her film career, she invented a technology called signal hopping, which later was the basis for all modern wireless communication, including that found in mobile phones. Other women that Jina meets are Marie Curie, who was a **physicist** and chemist famous for her research and experiments on radioactivity, and Mae Jemison, an American engineer and **astronaut**. Marie Curie was the first woman to win the Nobel Prize **award** in two different fields. Mae Jemison was the first black woman to travel into space. The scientists share their knowledge with Jina and help her to develop key skills to become a future STEM expert herself. On her journey, Jina also meets computer scientist Ada Lovelace and **astronomer** who show Jina the stars. The show has been created for schools. It will hopefully encourage young people to find out more about these inspiring women in science and how they overcame the difficulties and **prejudice** in their way. "The puppets were beautiful and completely **immersed** me in the characters", Mona, aged 12. "I definitely recommend it."

Listing Text (1)



Presenter : Hi and welcome to the Tech Show. Today, we'll be talking about space travel. If you dream of going into space, the moment seems to be getting closer. Later this year, the first-ever space flight for 'tourists' will take place, the latest project of a space exploration company. The mission will make history because it'll be made up of four members of the public, without an astronaut. If it's successful, it could lead to other space travel for tourists in the near future. The lucky passengers taking part will be receiving astronaut training; they'll learn how to cope in an emergency, and how to operate the spaceship. After they've taken off from a NASA launch site, the spacecraft will spend several days orbiting round the Earth in space before splashing down off the coast of Florida in the US. Astronaut, Tony Gates who's in the studio today, knows what it's like to experience the feeling of being in space. Tony, what exactly does it feel like to be up there looking down on Earth? What can the tourists expect?

Tony Gates : It's an amazing feeling, difficult to explain in words. It's not like seeing it in a film. When you look out at the universe from the spaceship, it makes you feel connected to the Earth in a special way.

Presenter : So, for hopeful astronauts out there, how much will a trip like this cost in the future?

Tony Gates : For short trips, like these, at least $250,000, for longer trips millions of dollars ...

Presenter : Is it worth it?

Tony Gates : For some people who have that kind of money, obviously yes. Companies like Virgin Galactica, some companies have been developing commercial space craft for many years, and have very long waiting lists for their first passenger flights.

Presenter : And how do you think space travel in general will have advanced by the end of the decade?

Tony Gates : Let's hope we'll have made our first human journey to Mars. ... perhaps by then we'll even have found signs of actual life outside our planet.

Presenter : That's an exciting thought!

Listening Text (2)

Interviewer : How did you get into working with robots? Have you always wanted to be an engineer?

Sara : It was my dad, really, he's worked as a computer scientist all his life, and was always playing with computers. He bought me my first computer when I was about 7, and I loved it. I was always experimenting on it.

Interviewer : And you studied computer science at university?

Sara : Yes, actually it was computing and electronics engineering. Then I carried on studying and did a PhD in Swarm Robotics.

Interviewer : What's that?

Sara : It's using groups of autonomous robots to work together to perform a task.

Interviewer : And, what do you do in your spare time?

Sara : I love music; it's very similar to engineering in some ways. Like computer coding, it's a type of language used to communicate, and you need to work hard and practise a lot before you can be creative with it.

Interviewer : And what advice would you give to other girls who want to go into robotics?

Sara : Go for it! I want to inspire more women to go into the industry because robots are fun and they'll enjoy it!



Workbook Exercises

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analysing • Evaluating • Creating

Choose the correct words to complete the sentences:

1 We think that the person who won the quiz is a .... He looked up the answers online, which was not allowed.
a) chat b) bias c) cheat d) spin

2 You must be .... of yourself; you have made a silly mistake!
a) proud b) pleased c) afraid d) ashamed

3 The .... of some planets in our solar system is rocky.
a) impact b) face c) scar d) surface

4 It is a .... to think that women always do housework.
a) prejudice b) stereotype c) type d) incident

5 What is the best .... for a headache?
a) cause b) treatment c) illness d) surgeon

6 People who leak books and join in .... are punished for their crime.
a) piracy b) pirates c) cheat d) chat

7 While I .... dinner, someone knocked on the door.
a) had b) was having c) did have d) am having

8 Doctors keep the health .... of all their patients, so they know what illnesses they have had in the past.
a) paper b) records c) placements d) figures

9 After he had examined the athlete, the doctor .... him permission to join the competition.
a) gave b) given c) had given d) gives

10 The train .... before we arrived at the station.
a) had left b) has left c) was leaving d) will leave

11 Mr Ali .... at a shop for ten years before he got a job at the bank.
a) has worked b) is working
c) will have been working d) had been working

12 The bridge over the valley is built on a .... scale than the one over the river.
a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) the biggest

13 When the bus plunged off the bridge, it was the .... experience of my life. We were lucky that nobody was hurt.
a) most shocking b) shocking c) more shocking d) less shocking

14 For the next year, Ahmed .... on an engineering project in Alexandria.
a) was working b) will have worked
c) will be working d) had been working

15 By 2050, I think that astronomers .... new planets outside our solar system.
a) will have found b) find c) have found d) are finding

16 We won't be able to live on Mars until we .... enough water there.
a) will find b) have found c) will be finding d) found

17 I felt really sick .... the party, so I went home.
a) While b) when c) during d) on

18 She has made a great contribution to social work in her neighbourhood. "Contribution" here is a synonym for ....

a) deprivation b) donation c) estimation d) relation

19 My brother was finally .... that he had been selected for the new position as Sales Manager.

a) asked b) said c) informed d) ordered

20 You should .... your foot in ice-cold water to reduce the swelling.

a) appear b) float c) inverse d) immerse

21 This is the most difficult situation I ....

a) had ever been faced b) have ever faced
c) had ever faced d) have ever been faced

22 Which of the following is punctuated correctly? ....

a) The teacher said, You must follow school rules, Hatem."
b) The teacher said, "You must follow school rules, Hatem".
c) The teacher said "You must follow school rules, Hatem."
d) The teacher said, "You must follow school rules, Hatem."

23 Pollution has a serious effect on our health. However, a lot of people are still ignorant of the importance of keeping the environment clean. This shows .... in ideas.

a) addition b) contrast c) possibility d) reason

24 In a hook sentence, you need to ....

a) sum up your essay by briefly revisiting the information covered
b) grab the reader's attention to read the essay
c) support, explain, illustrate, or provide evidence for the idea expressed in the topic sentence
d) analyze two points of view by either comparing them, contrasting them, or both

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Few women had become Queens of ancient Egypt before Hatshepsut, who is one of the most important females in Egyptian history. She was queen from around 1479 BCE to 1458 BCE, making her one of the longest ruling females. During her 21 years of rule, she improved trade with other countries, which had stopped for many years during a war.

Pictures from the walls of ancient temples show Hatshepsut's ships trading with a country called Punt (now part of East Africa), from where her ships brought back gold, valuable stones and animal skins. They also brought back trees, which were planted when they returned to Egypt. This is believed to be the first time foreign trees were grown in a different country. The journey to Punt was probably the first of other trading trips, which included visits to Byblos (now in Lebanon) and Sinai.

Money from this trade helped Hatshepsut to build many amazing buildings and bring many years of peace and wealth to Egypt. The many buildings that Hatsheput had built were usually larger and more impressive than buildings of the past. Her most famous buildings include the temples at Beni Hasan and at Deir el-Bahri, which some people call one of the wonders of the ancient world. But she also helped to repair other older monuments that had been damaged and started a period of artistic creativity.

Hatshepsut had many statues made of herself and you can find them in many of the world's greatest museums today. Many of the statues that were made at this time were in the Thutmoside style (named after her father Thutmose I), which people today consider as the typical ancient Egyptian style.

The mummy of Hatshepsut and lots of information about her can be found at the National Museum of Egyptian Civilisation.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

25 What was Hatshepsut's main contribution to ancient Egypt?

a) She had statues built.

b) She brought peace and wealth to the country.

c) She helped women become queens.

d) She was a female stereotype.

26 Which of the following do we not learn about Punt from the text?

a) Many trees grew there.
b) People hunted animals there.
c) It was a rich country.
d) It had many wars with ancient Egypt.

27 How could Hatshepsut afford to build so much during her rule?

a) She improved trade with other countries.

b) She won wars with other countries.

c) She planted trees from other countries.

d) She had many statues made of herself.

28 What do we know about the statues that were made of Hatshepsut?

a) They are unusual.

b) They are in a style that people expect.

c) They are more impressive than other statues.

d) They are in a very unpopular style.

29 Why do you think many of ancient Egypt's older monuments had been damaged before Hatshepsut's rule?

....

30 In what ways is Hatshepsut a good role model for women today?

....

31 According to the article, gold, valuable stones and animals were ....

a) finally kept in Punt
b) sold to African countries
c) brought to Egypt
d) restored before the reign of Hatshepsut.

32 People consider Deir el-Bahri one of the wonders of the ancient world. Wonders is similar in meaning to ....

a) obstacles
b) myths
c) marvels
d) superstitions

33 Which of the following is incorrect according to the passage?

a) Not many women had become queens of ancient Egypt before Hatshepsut.

b) Hatshepsut improved trade with other countries, built many amazing buildings and made wars with others during her reign.

c) We can see the statues made for Hatshepsut in many of the world's greatest museums today.

d) Thutmose III was Hatshepsut's stepson.

34 We can see the mummy of Hatshepsut ....

a) at the National Museum of Egyptian Civilisation

b) in East of Africa

c) in the temples at Beni Hassan

d) at a museum in Punt

35 Trade with other countries .... during Hatshepsut's rule.

a) flourished
b) declined
c) stopped
d) was the same as

36 According to the article, which of the following gives incorrect information?

a) During the reign of Hatshepsut, foreign trees were planted in Egypt.

b) Hatshepsut had older monuments repaired.

c) Hatshepsut ruled Egypt for more than twenty years.

d) Today, people consider the Thutmoside style of making statues as a typical modern one.

37 Hatshepsut .... during her reign.

a) had a lot of amazing buildings built

b) brought wealth to the country

c) achieved peace

d) all of the above

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d.

38 Innovation is endless. The more man seeks progress and welfare, the more he invents things that make life easier. However, do you think all inventions don't have negative aspects?

a) الابتكار لا نهاية له، فكلما ابتكر الإنسان أشياء تجعل الحياة أسهل، كلما سعى إلى التقدم والرفاهية، ومع ذلك هل تعتقد أن كل الاختراعات ليست لها جوانب إيجابية؟

b) الابتكار لا نهاية له، فكلما سـعى الإنسـان إلى التقدم والتطور، كلما اشـترى أشياء تجعل الحياة أسهل، هل تعتقد أن كل الاختراعات ليست لها جوانب سلبية؟

c) الابتكار لا نهاية له، فكلما سعى الإنسان إلى التقدم والرفاهية، كلما ابتكر أشياء تجعل الحياة أسهل، ومع ذلك هل تعتقد أن كل الاختراعات ليست لها جوانب سلبية؟

d) الرفاهية لا نهاية لها، فكلما سـعى الإنسـان إلى التقدم والرفاهية، كلما ابتكر أشـياء تجعل الحياة أسـرع، ومع ذلك هل تعتقد أن الرفاهية ليست لها جوانب سلبية؟

39 Women have played a pivotal role in the renaissance of ancient and modern societies. Through this role, they demonstrated their ability to achieve positive change in those societies.

a) لقد أظهرت المرأة دورًا محوريًا في نهضة المجتمعات القديمة والحديثة، واستعرضت في تلك الفترة قدرتها على تحقيق التغيير النسبي في تلك المجتمعات.

b) لقد لعبت المرأة دورًا محوريـًا في بناء المجتمعات القديمة والحديثة، وأظهرت من خلال هذا الدور قدرتها على تحقيق التغيير الإيجابي في تلك المجتمعات.

c) لقد لعبت المرأة دورًا محوريـًا في بناء المجتمعات القديمة والحديثة، وأظهرت من خلال هذا الدور قدرتها على تحقيق التغيير الإيجابي في تلك الحضارات.

d) لقد لعبت المرأة دورًا محوريًا في نهضة المجتمعات القديمة والحديثة، وأظهرت من خلال هذا الدور قدرتها على تحقيق التغيير الإيجابي في تلك المجتمعات.

40 من المتوقع أن تتوقف طباعة الصحف في العقود القليلة القادمة. سنقرأ الأخبار عبر الإنترنت؛ لذلك سنحتاج إلى معرفة المزيد عن المواقع الإلكترونية الجديدة التي يمكن أن تعطينا وجهة نظر متوازنة.

a) In the next few decades, I think that we will have continued printing newspapers. We won't be reading the news offline, so we will need to know about new books that can give us a balanced point of view.

b) In the next few years, I think that we will have stopped painting newspapers. We will be borrowing the news online, so we will need to know about new websites that can give us a fixed point of view.

c) In the next few decades, it is expected that printing newspapers will have stopped. We will be reading the news online, so we will need to know about new websites that can give us a balanced point of view.

d) In the next few decades, I think that we will have stopped printing newspapers. We will be reading the news online, so we will need to know about new websites that can give us a balanced point of view.

41 يهدف منتدى شباب العالم المقام فى مصر سنويًا إلى الدعم الكامل للشباب، وتحديد كل المشكلات التى تواجهم وحلها للاستفادة بشكل فعال فى مهارتهم وإمكانياتهم فى تطوير المجتمع وتحقيق التنمية الشاملة.

a) The International Men Forum, which is held in Egypt annually, aims to fully support young people and identify and solve all the problems they face, to effectively benefit from their skills and capabilities in developing society and achieving comprehensive improvement.

b) The World Youth Forum, which is annually held in Egypt, aims to fully support youth and identify and solve the problems they face, to effectively benefit from their skills and capabilities in developing society and achieving comprehensive development.

c) The International Youth Forum, which is held in Egypt annually, seems to fully care for young people and simplify and solve the problems they face to effectively benefit from their skills and capabilities in improving society and achieving comprehensive development.

d) The local Youth Forum, which is held in Egypt annually, aims to fully look for young people and identify and postpone all the problems they face to effectively benefit from their skills and capabilities in developing society and achieving comprehensive development.

42 تهتم الدولة دائمًا بحماية حقوق الملكية الفكرية للمؤلفين والناشرين، لذا تفرض عقوبة صارمة على القرصنة الفكرية وتسريب الكتب حفاظًا على حقوق المنتجين ودور النشر.

a) The estate is always takes care of protect the intellectual property rights of authors and publishers, so it imposes a strict penalty on intellectual piracy and book leak in order to preserve the rights of producers and publishing homes.

b) The state is always interested in protecting the intellectual property rights of authors and publishers, so it proposes a strict penalty on intellectual privacy and book diversion in order to preserve the rights of producers and publishing houses.

c) The state is always interested in protecting the intellectual property rights of authors and publishers, so it imposes a strict penalty on intellectual piracy and book leaking in order to preserve the rights of producers and publishing houses.

d) The estate is always interested in protecting the intellectual liberty rights of authors and publishers, so it imposes a strict penalty on intellectual piracy and book lake in order to preserve the rights of producers and publishing houses.

43 **Write an argumentative essay of about 200 words on one of these topics:**

1. Write about the advantages and disadvantages of international sports competitions such as the FIFA World Cup and the Olympic Games.
2. Write about the pros and cons of tabloid and broadsheet reports.



Al-Adwaa Test

Units 1, 2 & 3

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct words to complete the sentences:

1 Munir waited for a reply to his application with .... breath.
a) pleased b) relaxed c) bated d) scared

2 The team is evenly balanced, with six members from each company. The synonym of the adjective "balanced" is ".............." .
a) untrue b) false c) biased d) equalized

3 Civil rights include freedom, ... between men and women in law and in employment.
a) prejudice b) quality c) equality d) ability

4 .... intelligence is the science of how to make computers do things that usually need human intelligence.
a) Normal b) Artificial c) Natural d) Industrial

5 Experts believe that exams are not the only .... of assessing a student's ability.
a) approach b) technique c) means d) tactic

6 I promised my son to take him to the cinema to .... him for not buying him the bike he wanted.
a) reform b) award c) punish d) compensate

7 Mohamed Salah is an Egyptian footballer with a/an .... style.
a) team b) individual c) vague d) unclear

8 Egypt was the first African team to .... for the World Cup in 1934.
a) reward b) retrain c) qualify d) dismiss

9 One day, the boys found a man in the forest. He ....
a) dies b) had been dying
c) had died d) was dying

10 I .... to do it but I had no time. I was very busy.
a) have wanted b) want c) wanted d) would want

11 Hello! I have been trying to phone you all week. Where ....?
a) have you been being b) have you been
c) did you d) did you be

12 She went to the cinema as soon as she .... the flat.
a) is cleaning b) has cleaned c) cleans d) had cleaned

13 They .... for hours before they stopped for a rest.
a) walked b) have been walking
c) was walking d) had been walking

14 The moment summer .... here, the garden will be so beautiful!
a) is being b) will be c) is d) was

15 At this time tomorrow, Sameh .... for his exam.
a) will sit b) will be sitting
c) has sat d) may sit

16 My boss .... some V.I.P's from a European country tomorrow.
a) is receiving b) has received
c) will have received d) will be received

17 This punctuation mark is used to separate numerals 21 to 99 when they are spelled out.

a) apostrophe b) hyphen c) semicolon d) colon

18 Which of these sentences is correctly punctuated?

a) The window was open I looked out over the empty fields.

b) The window was open, I looked out over the empty fields.

c) The window was open: I looked out over the empty fields.

d) The window was open; I looked out over the empty fields.

19 Which of these is not an important feature of a paragraph?

a) Length b) Breadth c) Unity d) Coherence

20 I regret to inform you that you were unsuccessful with the interview you attended.

The above sentence in an informal email means ....

a) apologising

b) giving bad news

c) wishing you hadn't done something bad

d) informal language

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The environment is everything that surrounds us: plants, animals, buildings, country, air and water. Ecology is the science of how living creatures and plants exist together and depend on each other and on the local environment. Where an environment is undisturbed, the ecology of an area is in balance, but if a creature is exterminated or an alien species introduced, then the ecology of the district will be upset. In other words, the balance of nature will be disturbed.

One of the main causes of the Earth's troubles is that the world is overpopulated and this overpopulation is growing at an ever-increasing rate. At the same time, the Earth is unable to provide enough food since the fertility of some of our richest soils has been lost and vast areas that were once fertile lands have turned into barren deserts. And the trouble with deserts is that they tend to creep outwards onto the fertile soils.

Man is a part of the environment and he has done more to upset the ecology during his short span on Earth than any other living creature. He has done this by his ignorance, his greed, his thoughtless and his wastefulness. Since man has done so much damage, it is up to man to try to put matters right - if it is not already too late. If there is to be any remedy for our ills, that remedy ultimately lies in the hands of the young generations, and the sooner they start doing something about it, the better.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 World population is threatened with starvation because ....

a) all our natural resources have run out with no hope of replacing them.

b) vast areas of our fertile lands have turned into barren deserts.

c) the deserts creep inwards on to the fertile areas.

d) overpopulation is increasing and the rich soil is rising.

22 What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

a) The young. b) The ills.

c) Different creatures. d) The soils.

23 The writer of the passage thought that man disturbed the environmental balance through ....

a) his moral values
b) his culture
c) his good behaviour
d) his bad qualities

24 The Earth can't produce enough food for us because ....

a) we don't have enough seeds.
b) there aren't enough farmers
c) vast areas of soils have lost fertility.
d) the population is decreasing.

25 The more fertile the soil is, the ....

a) less food we have
b) more food we have
c) fewer people live on Earth
d) more barren deserts there are

26 What made man upset the ecology?

a) His ignorance.
b) His greed.
c) His thoughtless and wastefulness.
d) All of the above.

27 The word "fertile" is antonymous to the word "..............".

a) rich
b) productive
c) barren
d) fruitful

28 The most suitable title to the passage is "..............".

a) Man's greed is the cause of upsetting the ecology
b) Ecology (in balance or upset)
c) It's too late to balance the ecology
d) Overpopulation and the Earth's troubles

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The newspaperman delivers newspapers to us and many other houses in the neighborhood. I hear his motorcycle every morning when he comes to deliver the daily paper. He comes promptly at 6.30 a.m. every morning, rain or shine unless something extraordinary prevents him from doing so.

He is so regular and prompt that I do not need any alarm clock to wake up. At six-thirty, the neighbours' dogs start barking as he arrives and I know it is almost time to get up for school.

Though he comes every day, I do not get to see him. I only pick up and read the newspaper he had left at the door. I only see him once a month when he comes to collect the bill.

Promptly on the first of each month, at six-thirty in the evening, he shows up with his bills. This time he rings the doorbell and I usually have to go and pay him. My mother will have got the money ready one day earlier and instructed me to pay him.

He never smiles. He merely gives me the change, puts the "PAID" chop on the bill and goes off to the next house. It appears that his regular, almost regimental, rounds of newspaper delivery has made him behave like a robot. He is very efficient, very prompt and does not smile. That is certainly very robot-like.

Nevertheless, I appreciate his reliable service. For one thing, I am never without the daily paper. Some of my friends complain that their newspapermen are very unreliable. Not so with mine, he is the best.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

29 When does the writer get up for school?
a) When the dogs stop barking.
b) after the newspaperman leaves.
c) when his mother takes the paper.
d) At 6:30.

30 When does the newspaperman come to take the money?
a) At six 30 in the morning.
b) At the end of the month.
c) At 6:30 in the evening.
d) After the mother gets the money ready.

31 The writer appreciates the newspaper's reliable service because ....
a) He always reads the daily paper
b) the newspaperman comes early
c) He always goes to school
d) His friends complain about their newspapermen

32 What is strange about the newspaperman?
a) He is always punctual.
b) He never smiles.
c) He gives the change.
d) He comes at 6:30.

33 One quality of the newspaperman is that he is ....
a) talkative
b) lazy
c) punctual
d) humorous

34 The newspaperman is very efficient, very prompt and does not smile like ....
a) the actor
b) the train
c) the bike
d) the robot

35 The synonym of the word "promptly" is ".................." .
a) on time
b) late
c) slowly
d) gradually

36 The writer seems to .... the newspaperman and the service.
a) depreciate
b) appreciate
c) criticize
d) devalue

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d:

37 Children's books are an important tool that can shape a child's view of the world and his personality as well.

a) تعتبر كتب الأطفال أداة هامة يمكنها تشكيل رؤية الطفل للعالم ولشخصيته أيضًا.
b) تعتبر كتب الأطفال أداة هامة يمكنها تغيير رؤية الطفل للعالم ولشخصيته أيضًا.
c) تعتبر كتب الأطفال آلة هامة يمكنها تشكيل بصر الطفل فى العالم ولشخصيته أيضًا.
d) تعتبر كتب الأطفال معدة هامة يمكنها تشكيل موقع الطفل للعالم ولشخصيته أيضًا.

38 Much of the stress that people feel doesn't come from too much work to do. It comes from not finishing what they've started at the right time.

a) كثير من الضغط الذى يشعر به الناس لا يأتى من العمل القليل الذى يجب أداؤه بل من عدم الانتهاء مما يجب عليهم فى الوقت الصحيح
b) كثير من الضغط الذى يكرهه الناس لا يأتى من العمل الكثير الذى يجب أداؤه بل من عدم الانتهاء مما عليهم فى الوقت الصحيح
c) كثير من الضغط الذى يشعر به الناس لا يأتى من العمل الكثير الذى يجب أداؤه بل من عدم الانتهاء مما بدءوه فى الوقت الصحيح
d) معظم الضغط الذى يشعر به الناس لا يأتى من العمل الكثير الذى يجب أداؤه بل من عدم الانتهاء مما بدءوه فى الوقت الصحيح

39 حتى لو استطاع الإنسان الآلى أن يقوم بجميع أعمال الإنسان فلن يستطيع أن يعبر عن المشاعر.
a) Even if the robot was able to do all man's work, it won't be able to express feelings.
b) Even if the robot is able to do all man's work, it won't be able to express feelings.
c) Even if the robot is capable to do all man's work, it won't be able to oppress feelings.
d) Even if the robot is able to do all man's work, it wouldn't be able to express feelings.

40 كثيرًا ما حلمت بالانضمام إلى إحدى المنظمات الخيرية التى تعنى بمساعدة الفقراء.
a) I have often dreamed to joining a charity which is meant with helping the poor.
b) I have often dreamed of joining a charity which is against with helping the poor.
c) I have often dreamed of joining a charity which is concerned with helping the poor.
d) I would often dream of joining a charity which is concerned with helping the poor.

Assess your progress | < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practise more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

Unit 4



Taking care of ourselves

Objectives

- **Reading**: An article about burnout; An excerpt from the poem *Suppose* by Phoebe Cary
- **Writing**: An email to a friend to offer help; An essay about changes you have experienced in your life
- **Listening**: Voice messages about well-being
- **Speaking**: Discussion to find solutions for mental health problems
- **Language**: Modal verbs; Making suggestions
- **Life skills**: Self-management; Resilience





Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

burnout (n)*	إرهاق العمل/انهيار عصبي	promote (v) (d)	يشجع/يعزز/ينمي/يطور
cope (v) (d)	يتأقلم مع	scold (v) (ed)	يؤنب/يوبخ
exhausted (adj)	مُـرْهَـق	self-care (n)	العناية بالنفس
frown (v) (ed)	يكشر/يعبس/يقطب جبينه	stress (n)	ضغط عصبي/توتر
improve (v) (d)	يحسن	suppose (v) (d)	يفترض/يظن
mental health (n)	الصحة النفسية	time management (n)	إدارة الوقت
pout (v) (ed)	يتجهم	well-being (n)	سعادة/رفاهية

* Long and unpredictable work hours can lead to burnout and frustration.

Vocabulary on Reading

alter (v) (ed)	يغير	pain (n)	ألم
amount (n)	كمية/مقدار	particular (adj)	خاص/محدد
avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب	perfectly (adv)	بشكل كامل
behaviour (n)	سلوك	please (v) (d)	يسعد
choice (n)	اختيار	poem (n)	قصيدة
clear off (v) (ed)	يصفو/يتحسن (الطقس)	pour down (v) (d)	ينهمر (المطر)
concentrate (v) (d)	يركز	pressure (n)	ضغط
connection (n)	علاقة/رابطة	react (v) (ed)	يقوم برد فعل
creation (n)	الخلق/الكون	reaction (n)	رد فعل
deal with (v)	يتعامل مع	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
decision (n)	قرار	situation (n)	موقف
else (adv)	آخر	skill (n)	مهارة
emotions (n)	مشاعر	stressed (adj)	مضغوط
frustrated (adj)	محبط	suffer (v) (ed)	يعاني
headache (n)	صداع	sunshine (n)	سطوع الشمس
increase (v) (d)	يزيد/يزداد	surprise (v) (d) (n)	يدهش/يفاجئ/مفاجأة

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

anxiety (n)	قلق/توتر	interact (v) (ed)	يتفاعل
constantly (adv.)	بشكل دائم	issue (n)	قضية
contribute (v) (d)	يساهم/يشارك	keep up (v)	يواصل
current affairs (n)	أحداث جارية	limit (v) (ed) (n)	يضع حدًا/يقلل/حد
downside (n)	عيب	psychologist (n)	عالم نفسى/طبيب نفسى
extra (adj)	إضافى	reduce (v) (d)	يقلل
extreme (adj)	شديد/متطرف	researcher (n)	باحث
face-to-face (adj)	وجها لوجه	schoolwork (n)	عمل مدرسى

Workbook Vocabulary

basis (n)	أساس	physical (adj)	مادى/جسمانى
caffeine (n)	مادة الكافيين	priority (n)	أولوية
category (n)	فئة	promise (v) (d) (n)	يوعد/وعد
chemical (n) (adj)	مادة كيميائية/كيميائى	revision (n)	مراجعة
consider (v) (ed)	يعتبر	stretch (v) (ed) (n)	يقوم بتمرينات إطالة/إطالة
counsellor (n)	ناصح/مستشار	suffer (v) (ed)	يعانى
endorphins (n)	هرمون الأندروفين (السعادة)	urgent (adj)	عاجل/ملح

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

as a result	نتيجة لذلك	have a headache	يعانى من صداع
do a sport	يمارس رياضة	have a negative effect on	له تأثير سلبى على
do activities	يمارس أنشطة	in danger of	فى خطر من
do exams	يؤدى امتحانات	make decisions	يتخذ قرارات
do exercise	يقوم بتمارين رياضية	take care of	يعتنى بـ
get better	يتحسن	take responsibility for	يتحمل مسئولية
go for a walk	يقوم بالتمشية	there's a chance	هناك احتمال
afraid of	خائف من	pain in	ألم فى
angry at/with	غاضب من	pressure on	ضغط على
connection between	علاقة بين	think of/about	يفكر/يعتقد فى
conversation with	محادثة مع	unhappy about	غير سعيد بشأن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
alter*	يغير	alteration	تغيير	altered	متغير
behave	يتصرف	behaviour	سلوك	behavioural	سلوكى
concentrate	يركز	concentration	تركيز	concentrated	مركز
connect	يربط/يصل	connection	علاقة/رابطة	connected	مرتبط/متصل
decide	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
exhaust	يرهق	exhaustion	إرهاق	exhausted exhausting	مُرهَق مرهق
frustrate	يحبط	frustration	إحباط	frustrated	محبَط
improve	يحسن/يتحسن	improvement	تحسن	improved	متحسن/محسن
press	يضغط	pressure	ضغط	pressing pressured	ضاغط/ملح مضغوط
promote	يعزز/يطور	promotion	تعزيز/ترقية	promoted	معزز
surprise	يدهش/يفاجئ	surprise	مفاجأة	surprised surprising	مندهش مدهش

* - I should **alter** the sofa because it's about to break.
- The **alteration** of the sofa can't be delayed.
- The **altered** sofa can be put on the roof.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
alter	يغير	change/adjust	remain/continue	يبقى/يستمر
burnout	انهيار/إرهاق العمل	nervous breakdown	endurance	قدرة التحمل
concentrate	يركز	focus	distract	يشوش
connection	علاقة/صلة	relation/link	division/separation	تقسيم/انفصال
cope	يتأقلم مع	manage/handle	retreat/yield	يستسلم
frown	يكشر/يعبس	pout	smile	يبتسم
particular	خاص/محدد	specific/appropriate	general/common	عام/شائع
pressure	ضغط	stress/tension	relaxation/ease	استرخاء/راحة
promote	يعزز/ينمى	boost/develop	block/hinder	يعوق
responsibility	مسئولية	duty	irresponsibility	عدم مسئولية
scold	يؤنب/يوبخ	blame/reproach	approve/compliment	يستحسن/يجامل
suppose	يفترض/يظن	assume/guess	deny/reject	ينكر/ينبذ
surprise	يفاجئ	amaze/confuse	comfort	يريح

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The children were so .... after their day at the beach that they went to bed immediately.
a) content b) exhausted c) relieved d) relaxed

2 Magdy has been under a lot of .... lately because of his difficult exams.
a) press b) compress c) success d) stress

3 There was a meeting to .... trade between Egypt and China on a wide scale.
a) reduce b) charge c) promote d) end

4 The boss was .... when he entered the office, so I knew that he was annoyed about something.
a) frowning b) smiling c) smelling d) laughing

5 Mother .... my little brother for breaking the valuable vase that grandfather gave us.
a) praised b) rewarded c) scolded d) expelled

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)

How to avoid burnout

Burnout(1) is a mental health problem that is affecting more and more people today because there's so much pressure on us to work hard and do everything perfectly. When you experience burnout, you feel exhausted(2) and you usually don't spend enough time doing things you enjoy. You might stop doing hobbies that you used to enjoy and you may become ill more often than usual. As a result, people experiencing burnout feel like they can't live their lives normally anymore.

Burnout is usually caused by both decisions you make about things that you can control, for example, the amount of homework you have to do, and situations you can't control, for example if you spend a lot more time on your homework than you have to because you want to do it perfectly. This is your choice or the result of poor time management(3) skills.

If you're in danger of suffering from burnout, you will usually experience a lot of stress(4), find it difficult to sleep and have a lot of headaches or pain in your shoulders and back.

In order to improve(5) your mental health(6), you need to take responsibility for the things that you can control. For example, if you find it difficult to say 'no' when people ask you to do activities outside of school and you feel exhausted because of this, you could change this behaviour. Then you can start thinking about activities you really enjoy doing. These should be activities that help you to forget about everything else that is happening, such as drawing or painting, doing a sport or having 'real' conversations with your friends and family. Activities like these are examples of self-care(7). They help to promote(8) better mental health and increase your well-being(9).

Log in or register to post comments.

(1) إنهاك عصبى
(2) مرهق
(3) إدارة الوقت
(4) ضغط عصبى
(5) يحسن/يتحسن
(6) الصحة النفسية
(7) رعاية النفس
(8) يعزز
(9) رفاهية/سعادة

Reading Text (2)

Suppose

by Phoebe Cary



1. Suppose[1] you're dressed for walking,
And the rain comes pouring down,
Will it clear off any sooner
Because you scold[2] and frown[3]?

2. And wouldn't it be nicer
For you to smile than pout[4],
And so make sunshine in the house
When there is none without?

3. And suppose the world don't please you,
Nor the way some people do,
Do you think the whole creation[5]
Will be altered just for you?

4. And isn't it, my boy or girl,
The wisest, bravest plan,
Whatever comes, or doesn't come,
To do the best you can?

(1) افترض/إذا
(2) يؤنب/يوبخ
(3) يعبس
(4) يتجهم
(5) الخلق/الكون

In your opinion, what kind of food helps you concentrate?

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

Studying can be stressful. Here are four tips to make life easier.

Tip 1: Divide the things you need to do into four categories. These are: (1) urgent and important (2) important but not urgent (3) not important but urgent (4) not important and not urgent. Using this system, you will quickly be able to see what you have to do now and what can wait.

Tip 2: When studying for a long time, you should know when to take a rest. This will help you to avoid burnout and continue studying. Use a clock with an alarm. After every twenty-five minutes, take a five-minute break and stand up and stretch.

Tip 3: You should do exercise on a regular basis. Exercise will produce endorphins, which are chemicals that help to reduce stress. If the exercise is outside, you will also benefit from some fresh air.

Tip 4: You should not eat unhealthily when you are studying. A salad is quick to prepare and fruit is a better snack than chocolate. You should also avoid having too much caffeine. Water is much healthier.

Share your ideas with your friends!



Listening Text (1)

1 ***Nour*** : At the moment, I just feel exhausted all the time. I play computer games with my friends after school every evening. Then I don't start doing my homework until about 9 o'clock in the evening. By the time I finish my homework, it's 11 o'clock or even midnight. So, I don't get to bed until it's really late and then I'm exhausted the next day at school and I can't keep up[1] in my lessons.

(1) يواصل
(2) عمل مدرسي
(3) إضافي

2 ***Ibrahim*** : I spend a lot of time looking after my grandfather, who's seventy-four years old and is ill at the moment. I go to school and then as soon as I get home, I spend the next few hours making him something to eat, reading to him and helping him to wash, things like that. I have to get up early in the morning to do my homework before school and I never seem to have any time to do anything for myself.

3 ***Heba*** : It's always my goal to get the best grades that I possibly can at school. It seems that the only way to do that is to spend all of my time on my schoolwork[2]. So, I work as hard as I can when I'm at school and then in the breaks we have at school, I do some extra[3] reading or look at my notes again. Then, when I get home, I do my homework all afternoon and evening. I just keep going even if I'm feeling exhausted.

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

Leila : Hi, Nadia. I haven't seen you for a long time. How are you?

Nadia : Hi, Leila. Thanks for asking. I'm a bit stressed.

Leila : Oh no! Why don't you sit down and tell me about it?

Nadia : Well, I have three exams this week and don't know when I can revise because I have a big project for science too. I also promised my parents I would help them in the shop in the evenings.

Leila : That sounds like a lot. Have you considered telling your parents you are stressed?

Nadia : I don't want to worry them.

Leila : You could write down everything you have to do this week in order of priority and say 'no' to the things at the bottom of your list. Also, how about doing your revision while you are in the shop. It's usually quiet in the evenings, isn't it?

Nadia : Have you thought about becoming a student counsellor? You're very good at giving advice!

Leila : Oh, thank you.

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 At nursery schools, desks are arranged in a U-shape, so the teacher can .... easily with the children.

a) interfere b) interact
c) involve d) contain

2 The young engineer says he can't .... up with his work in the desert.

a) hold b) leave
c) keep d) release

3 The .... of the camera I bought online is that the batteries have to be replaced often.

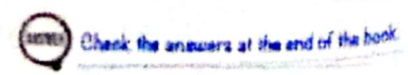
a) upside b) advantage
c) merit d) downside

4 The famous scientist's series of lectures was attended by hundreds of young ....

a) actors b) researchers
c) players d) helpers

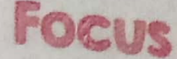
5 Experts believe that we should try to .... the children's use of social media.

a) limit b) mark
c) increase d) develop



Vocabulary in Use





Focus on Vocabulary

burnout — انهيار عصبي/إجهاد العمل
- a situation where you can't do anything because you're so tired and stressed

cope — يتأقلم مع
- to deal with difficult situations

exhausted — مرهق/منهك
- describing the feeling of being very tired

improve — يحسن/يتحسن
- to get better/to get things to be better

mental health — الصحة النفسية
- how a person thinks and the emotions they feel

promote — يشجع/يعزز/ينمي/يطور
- support and encourage the development of something

self-care — العناية بالنفس
- taking care of your body and how you feel

stress — ضغط عصبي/توتر
- a feeling of being very worried and scared

time management — إدارة الوقت
- organising when you do things and for how long

well-being — سعادة/رفاهية
- the state of being comfortable, healthy and happy

Notes on Vocabulary

pain ألم (تشعر به وغالبًا يكون بشكل مفاجئ)	*the feeling when part of your body hurts usually suddenly* - A broken leg can cause a lot of pain. - He felt a sharp pain in his chest.
ache ألم (مستمر غالبًا ليس شديدًا وتستخدم في الأسماء المركبة)	*a continuous pain, especially one that is not very bad, commonly used in compounds* - I felt an ache in my back after decorating all day. - Driving gives me a headache. - I've got a stomachache.

2	**amount** كمية/مقدار (القدر الموجود في شيء)	*how much of something there is* ▸ Try to reduce the amount of fat in your meal.
	quantity كمية (القدر الموجود في طعام أو وسائل أو أي مادة ويمكن قياسها)	*a particular amount of food, liquid, or another substance that can be measured* ▸ Make sure that you add the correct quantity of milk.
	proportion نسبة (مقدار شيء مقارنة بالكمية الكاملة الموجودة)	*the amount of something, compared with the whole amount that exists* ▸ A high proportion of the students were from poor families.
	quota كوتا (حصة نسبية لا يمكن تجاوزها)	*a maximum amount of something that can be produced, sold, brought into a country* ▸ To protect local industry, the government sometimes impose import quotas on certain products.
	yield محصول/ناتج (المقدار الذي تم إنتاجه من شيء، وخاصة المحاصيل)	*the amount of something that is produced, especially crops* ▸ We are pleased with this year's cotton yield.
3	**skill** مهارة (يمكن تعلمها وممارستها)	▸ He plays the piano with great skill. ▸ The course will help you improve your communication skills.
	talent/gift موهبة (طبيعية يمكن تحسينها بالتعليم والتدريب)	▸ She was a young artist with a lot of talent. ▸ He showed a natural gift for comedy.
4	**pour** ينهمر/يسقط بشدة (المطر)	▸ The weather was bad with the strong wind and the rain pouring down.
	blow تهب (الرياح)	▸ It was blowing from an easterly direction.
	fall يسقط (المطر)	▸ He stood at the balcony watching the rain fall on the road.
	rise تشرق (الشمس)	▸ Most Egyptian farmers start work very early just after the sun rises.
	set تغرب (الشمس)	▸ In Ramadan, Muslims start to eat just after the sun sets.
5	**else** آخر/ أيضًا (أدوات الاستفهام كلمات تحتوي على some- any – no - every)	▸ Haven't you got anything else to wear? These clothes look terrible. ▸ The book isn't here. Where else should I look?

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- .... and you usually don't spend enough time doing things you enjoy.

لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (spend) بمعنى يقضي الوقت في أداء شيء.

- This is your choice or the result of poor time management skills.

لاحظ استخدام (poor) هنا بمعنى (ضعيف) وليس فقيرًا.

- If you're in danger of suffering from burnout

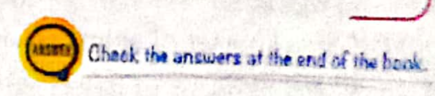
لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد حرف الجر (of).

- Then you can start thinking about activities you really enjoy doing.

لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (start) كما يمكن استخدام (المصدر + to).

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. By midday, the sun .... high in the sky and temperature increases.
   a) falls b) pours
   c) rises d) sets
2. Customer service jobs require young people with good communication .... to be able to handle customers' complaints well.
   a) skills b) gifts
   c) talents d) achievements
3. The government has decided to raise the .... on electric car imports to encourage using them.
   a) amount b) proportion
   c) quantity d) quota
4. The man felt a sudden sharp .... in his chest, so he was taken to hospital.
   a) pain b) ache
   c) suffering d) agony
5. We cancelled the voyage because rain began to .... down and we felt like a storm was coming.
   a) blow b) pour
   c) fall d) rise





Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(Key vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Workbook Vocabulary & Vocabulary Notes

1 Many of the workers in the factory are suffering from .... as a result of overworking.
a) burnout b) relaxation c) promotion d) situation

2 He wasn't able to cope with the .... and strains of the job, so he left it.
a) surprises b) stresses c) wages d) salaries

3 It's important to avoid the causes of poor mental .... from the beginning.
a) limit b) innovation c) health d) technology

4 A good teacher shouldn't .... his students for not doing very well at school as long as they're doing their best.
a) praise b) frown c) improve d) scold

5 Being with my family gives me a wonderful sense of .... and pleasure.
a) stress b) sorrow c) well-being d) revision

6 My uncle is a 40-year-old workaholic مدمن عمل who has never paid attention to self- .... He suffers from diseases.
a) denial b) care c) assessment d) promotion

7 We think sport can help to .... the values of tolerance and understanding in the world.
a) promote b) reduce c) block d) contribute

8 The manager said that we cannot move the deadline, so time .... is very important to finish in time.
a) management b) wasting c) reaction d) connection

9 The Ministry of Education's main objective is to .... educational systems using the latest technology.
a) prove b) reduce c) approve d) improve

10 In order not to be sent off, the player .... being given a red card by the referee.
a) insisted b) avoided c) promised d) interacted

11 You should .... on passing your final exams and don't let anything distract you.
a) pass b) depend c) concentrate d) apply

12 For hundreds of years, an enormous .... of paper has been used to produce books.
a) equality b) quality c) amount d) capacity

13 My .... to leave school when I was only 15 was the worst mistake I ever made.
a) decision b) ambition c) behaviour d) revision

14 In the conference, the doctors discussed different ways of .... with the effects of the disease on the lungs.
a) telling b) dealing c) handling d) reporting

15 Exams are stressful, so students fall under .... when the exams are near.
a) decision b) preservation c) creation d) pressure

16 Most coffee shops are offering free internet .... to attract more customers.
a) radiation b) connection c) separation d) reaction

17 Some species of animals exist only in Galapagos Islands and nowhere .... on earth.
a) another b) other c) others d) else

18 The boys denied any .... for the damage to the fence, but the security camera showed otherwise.

a) reaction b) responsibility c) response d) situation

19 The patient .... severe side effects from the treatment, but there is no other way.

a) deals b) fears c) suffers d) considers

20 Ahmed got the best marks in English, which was a great .... to his family.

a) failure b) anxiety c) sorrow d) surprise

21 I was happy to see how much the city has been .... since I travelled abroad.

a) coped b) reacted c) altered d) interacted

22 Rice forms the .... of the daily diet in many Asian countries such as Thailand and Indonesia.

a) basis b) bias c) press d) stress

23 There's a separate .... for children in this karate competition.

a) integrity b) category c) majority d) facility

24 Some people believe that agriculture was given ...., so that the country would easily be able to feed itself.

a) minority b) superiority c) priority d) inferiority

25 It's important to .... before you do hard physical exercise so as to prepare your muscles.

a) pout b) scratch c) cope d) stretch

26 Cheap cleaning products contain .... that can be harmful to your skin.

a) nutrients b) crops c) chemicals d) seeds

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

27 Most students are afraid of .... exams. So, they must revise hard before it.

a) inspecting b) revising c) making d) doing

28 The children were angry .... the way they have been treated at school.

a) in b) for c) at d) of

29 He was .... so much better every day, and yet business got worse and worse.

a) getting b) going c) preferring d) making

30 The customer frowned impatiently with anger when the clerk was slow. The synonym of the verb "frown" is ....

a) smile b) pout c) clear d) depict

31 Winners are the people who are able to .... responsibility of their lives.

a) test b) play c) give d) take

32 It was clear that the small ship was .... danger of sinking.

a) for b) in c) about d) out

33 There is a .... between pollution and the death of trees.

a) collection b) connection c) reflection d) separation

34 The pressure .... doctors is increasing steadily with the COVID-19 crisis.

a) for b) with c) at d) on

35 Students should be used to deal with pressure during their studies. The antonym of the word "pressure" is ....

a) relaxation b) stress c) oppression d) depression

36 The passengers were getting very .... at the delay of the flight.

a) frustrate b) frustration c) frustrated d) frustrates




Lessons 1 & 2

B Language

1) Making suggestions for the future عمل اقتراحات للمستقبل

- هناك تعبيرات ومصطلحات كثيرة تعبر عن الاقتراح منها:

	Structure	Rule	Example
1.	How about	+ v.ing	How about visiting the museum?
	What about		What about buying a new computer?
	Have you considered		Have you considered leaving this area?
	Have you thought about		Have you thought about selling the car?
2.	Why don't you	+ inf.	Why don't you leave your car and take a taxi?
	You should		You should concentrate on your study.
	You could		You could use the bike instead of the car.
	Let's		Let's meet at the railway station.

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

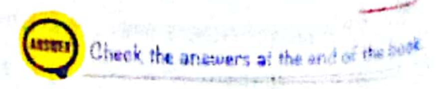
1 It's up to you. .... with us or you could stay here.
a) You should come b) How about coming
c) Let's come d) You could come

2 You seem stressed and worried. .... going to a movie?
a) Let's b) What about
c) You should d) You could

3 Why don't .... Ola and Fatma if they want to come with us?
a) asking b) ask
c) we ask d) to ask

4 You .... the car out of the garage. There is water running on its floor.
a) should get b) needn't get
c) get d) getting

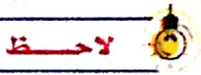
5 You say you're in a tight corner موقف صعب. Have you thought about .... your uncle for advice?
a) ask b) to asking
c) you ask d) asking



Making suggestions (Extra points)

هناك تعبيرات ومصطلحات كثيرة تعبر عن الاقتراح منها:

	Structure	Rule	Example
1.	I suggest	+ v.ing	I suggest helping Ahmed with his work.
	I recommend		She recommends doing exercise.
	How do you feel about		How do you feel about meeting Amr?
	Fancy		Do you fancy going to the cinema?
2.	...'d better	+ inf.	You'd better study in the morning.
	I suppose you should ...		I suppose you should play handball.
	Shall I/we ...?		Shall I/we help Ahmed with his homework?
	Why not		Why not go and see a film?
3.	Don't forget ...	to + inf.	Don't forget to watch today's match.
	I'd like		I'd like to give Ahmed the money he needs.
	It would be nice		It would be nice to finish early.
4.	If I were you, I'd + inf.		If I were you, I would visit Italy for my holiday.



يأتى بعد suggest/recommend الفعل مضاف له ing ولكن إذا جاء بعدهما that أو فاعل نستخدم المصدر مع أي فاعل قبلها.

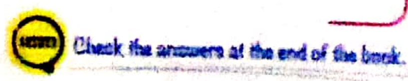
- I suggest phoning Ahmed and telling him the news.
- I suggest (that) you phone Ahmed and tell him the news.
- I recommend that Ameer go to Alexandria for his honeymoon.

بعد How about/What about نستخدم v.ing أو الاسم أو الضمير.

- How about visiting Ahmed tomorrow?
- How about having a nice drink?
- What about a short walk around the park?
- How about a nice drink?
- What about (drinking) some more coffee?

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It would be nice .... lunch with us tonight.
   a) having b) to have c) you have d) have
2. Why not .... out and visit our relatives?
   a) to go b) going c) go d) you go
3. She .... do post-graduate studies abroad.
   a) 'd better b) would better c) suggests d) recommends
4. If I were you, ... another flat overlooking the Nile.
   a) shall I buy b) how about buying c) let's buy d) I'd buy
5. What about .... for our lunch?
   a) have a barbeque b) a barbeque c) to have a barbeque d) had a barbeque


Check the answers at the end of the book.

2 Regrets about the past "should/shouldn't have + P.P." for regrets للندم

Rule	Usage
should have + P.P.	to talk about regret in the past التعبير عن الندم (كان ينبغى فعل شىء لم نفعله).
e.g. He should have studied harder to pass the exam.	
shouldn't have + P.P.	to say that something in the past wasn't a good idea شىء حدث فى الماضى وما كان ينبغى فعله.
e.g. I shouldn't have insulted him. He was angry and I'm sorry.	

Got it

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I .... the street when the cars were running fast.

a) should b) shouldn't cross c) should have crossed d) shouldn't have crossed

الإجابة (d) لأن الجملة فى الماضى ويجب أن تكون منفية.

3 could have + P.P.

Rule	Usage
could have + P.P.	to say that someone had the ability to do something that they didn't do كان فى مقدور شخص أن يفعل شيئًا ولكن لم يفعل وتستخدم للانتقاد أحيانًا.
She could have bought a new phone, but she didn't.	

Check Point 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Haven't they given you the money back yet? They .... it last week.
   - a) shouldn't have
   - b) should have done
   - c) could have
   - d) could
2. You .... him so much money when he asked. It will take you a lot of time to get it back.
   - a) could have lent
   - b) should have lent
   - c) shouldn't have lent
   - d) should lend
3. He .... at 10, but he was almost half an hour late.
   - a) should have arrived
   - b) should arrive
   - c) shouldn't have arrived
   - d) shouldn't arrive
4. He .... harder, but he was too lazy.
   - a) shouldn't have studied
   - b) couldn't have studied
   - c) must have studied
   - d) could have studied
5. You .... television for so long. It was a waste of time.
   - a) should have watched
   - b) should watch
   - c) shouldn't have watched
   - d) could have watched


Check the answers at the end of the book



Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 What about .... sport four times a week instead of six?
a) do b) you do c) to do d) doing

2 Hi, Youssif. We are going to the mountains. Why .... come with us?
a) didn't you b) doesn't he c) don't you d) do you

3 Why don't you .... some snacks with you, so you aren't so hungry?
a) taking b) take c) to take d) about taking

4 I suggest .... him a call before the end of the day.
a) to give b) give c) giving d) have given

5 Have you considered .... to your family about your problem?
a) to talk b) about talking c) talk d) talking

6 I'm sorry for shouting at you – I .... my voice.
a) shouldn't have raised b) should have raised
c) could have raised d) should rise

7 You .... the teacher to help you if you don't understand the lesson.
a) shouldn't ask b) could have asked
c) could ask d) should have asked

8 .... start studying for that exam in February?
a) Why don't you b) How about
c) What about d) Have you considered

9 I recommend .... that Chinese food.
a) to try b) trying c) try d) you trying

10 We got lost in Siwa. We .... a map.
a) shouldn't have taken b) should take
c) should have taken d) could take

11 Have you .... going to bed a bit earlier?
a) thought b) considered c) suggest d) believed

12 ...., I'd apply for the job.
a) If you ask me b) If I were you
c) How about you d) Have you considered

13 "I failed the test. I .... harder."
a) shouldn't have studied b) could study
c) should study d) should have studied

14 "I fell off my bicycle. I .... so careless."
a) shouldn't have been b) should have been
c) could have been d) should be

15 If she hates her job, then why ....?
a) about quitting b) don't you quit c) didn't she quit d) doesn't she quit

16 You .... plan your revision from now. It's important.

a) shouldn't b) needn't c) could d) had to

17 The teacher isn't pleased with your homework. You .... your brother to help you.

a) let b) shouldn't ask

c) couldn't ask d) could have asked

18 Ahmed's father got angry. Ahmed .... him a lie.

a) shouldn't have told b) couldn't have told

c) mustn't have told d) must have told

19 I suggest that he .... more about it before he makes a decision.

a) thinking b) should have thought

c) think d) should thinks

20 I'm broke. I .... my money on mobile phones.

a) could have wasted b) should have wasted

c) shouldn't have wasted d) should waste

21 "Why don't you lend your brother the money he needs to buy a car?" The speaker is ....

a) suggesting b) offering

c) blaming d) Asking about the cause

22 .... out and buying some fruit?

a) How about going b) Why don't we go

c) Let's go d) We could go

23 It's very important .... the advantages and the disadvantages of setting up your own business.

a) should know b) to know c) let's know d) known

24 "Shall we visit the zoo next Friday?" The speaker here is ....

a) requesting b) offering c) suggesting d) asking for advice

25 I suggest that .... grammar more.

a) study b) studying c) you studying d) you study

26 .... to save more money? He always uses his money very recklessly.

a) Why doesn't he try b) How about trying

c) I suggest trying d) Let's try

27 If you don't want to go outside, ... a movie?

a) let's watch b) I suggest watching

c) how about watching d) have you thought

28 .... for a job and try to improve your living conditions?

a) Have you considered applying b) How about applying

c) Let's apply d) Why don't you apply

29 .... abroad to complete your studies there?

a) Have you considered travelling b) What about travelling

c) Why don't you travel d) All are possible

30 Why don't we go to the cinema to watch the new film? .... We've seen the film many times before.

a) Why not? b) OK. Yes, let's. c) No, let's not d) What a good idea!

Test Yourself in 20



Unit 4
Lessons 1 & 2

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Experts say that eating healthy food can .... memory and concentration.
a) remove b) improve c) prove d) approve

2 The doctor gave the child medicine to ease his .... after he fell off the bike.
a) disease b) process c) pain d) hunger

3 Mr Yasser had to leave the party early after complaining of a terrible ....
a) ache b) operation c) tumour d) headache

4 .... is the state of being extremely tired or ill, either physically or mentally, because you have worked too hard.
a) Burnout b) Relaxation c) Injury d) Overdose

5 Some people work such long hours that they may suffer from ....
a) stress b) press c) relief d) thirst

6 The disabled young man is in need of someone who can .... care of him.
a) do b) make c) take d) give

7 I have very poor technical .... Could you help me fix my computer?
a) skulls b) terms c) methods d) skills

8 Doctors and nurses should learn to control their .... in order to work perfectly.
a) education b) emotions c) staff d) gifts

9 Our mother wants a new bag. What about .... father for help?
a) to ask b) asking c) ask d) asked

10 I missed the meeting in Assiut. I .... an earlier train.
a) should have caught b) shouldn't have caught
c) needn't have caught d) mustn't have caught

11 .... buy a new car? Yours always breaks down.
a) How about b) Why don't you c) What about d) Let's

12 .... for a picnic or visiting the museum?
a) We could go b) Let's go
c) How about going d) You should go

13 It's getting cold. We .... our jackets.
a) shouldn't have brought b) must have brought
c) should have brought d) let's bring

14 .... Hany or visit him to invite him to our party.
a) We could phone b) Could we phone
c) What about phoning d) Have you considered phoning

15 It's too cold in here. You .... the window.
a) must have opened b) should open
c) should have opened d) shouldn't have opened

16 Don't think much. We .... Spain or Italy for our holiday.
a) should have visited b) could visit
c) could have visited d) should be visited

17 Which of the following is correctly punctuated?

a) "I don't know when he will arrive," said Ola.

b) "I don't know when he will arrive?" Said ola.

c) "I don't know when he will arrive.", said Ola.

d) "I don't know when he will arrive," Said Ola.

18 The most important thing in writing an essay is to ....

a) count the words written in it

b) get the required number of paragraphs

c) write a well-developed essay and make it interesting

d) write very long sentences and paragraphs

19 Which type of essays would this topic sentence best go with? "The Himalayan Mountains are the tallest mountains in the world."

a) Descriptive. b) Expository. c) Narrative. d) Persuasive.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People do not always do the things we want them to do. No matter how reasonable or minimal[1] our expectations may be, there are times when we are let down[2]. Naturally, we feel upset and hurt when our expectations are not met. We dread confrontations[3] because they are unpleasant and can damage relationships. Yet not confronting a person does not solve the problem because unresolved issues[4] also affect relationships in an adverse way. Actually, the real problem lies in our style of confrontation, not in the issue. Typically, we use character-based confrontations. They help in venting[5] our anger and hurt, but that is the only thing they do. They lead to angry show-downs and bring all discussions to a grinding halt[6].

It is important to remember that self-image is the most important possession[7] of all human beings. It is the way we view and regard ourselves in our own eyes and in the eyes of others. As self-conscious[8] beings, we are acutely[9] aware of our image and constantly[10] work towards protecting it from any damage. We also seek approval from others about our own self-image. We feel distraught[11] if we sense that there is even a slight threat to our self-image, because our character is the essence of our lives.

To ensure a balanced[12] dialogue over dashed expectations[13], we need to organise issue-based confrontations. They involve an explanation of which actions have bothered us, in what manner and what changes we would like from the other person.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20 The best title to the passage is ....

a) Why our expectations are smashed

b) Our style of confrontation

c) The importance of confrontation in solving problems

d) The effect of character-based confrontations

21 What happens when our expectations are not met?

a) We feel satisfied. b) We feel upset and hurt.

c) We seek confrontations. d) We change our style of confrontation.

22 People fear confrontations because ....

a) confrontations damage their self-image

b) they want to live in peace

c) they know that confrontations are not important

d) confrontations cause unsolved problems



(3) نخشى المواجهات (4) مشكلات (5) التنفيس (6) توقف كلى (7) امتلاك (8) وعى ذاتى (9) بشدة (10) باستمرار (11) مضطرب (12) متوازن (13) توقعات محطمة

23 People don't succeed in solving their problems because of ....

a) the complicated issues
b) their different ages
c) their style of confrontation
d) the damage that confrontations may cause

24 Confrontations are important because ....

a) they help in blocking our anger and hurt
b) they destroy the character
c) they cause a slight threat to our self-image
d) they help in resolving issues

25 Our dashed expectations can be resolved through ....

a) organised issue-based confrontations
b) using character-based confrontations only
c) neglecting approval from others
d) irrational discussions

26 Issue-based confrontations are an easier way out because they ....

a) damage our self-image
b) ensure the rational discussion
c) dash our expectations
d) involve an explanation of which actions have pleased us

27 The antonym of the word "venting" is ....

a) emitting
b) escaping
c) blocking
d) expressing

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d:

28 People experiencing burnout often feel like they have nothing left to give and may dread getting out of bed each morning. They may also adopt a pessimistic outlook toward life and feel hopeless.

a) غالبًا ما يشعر الأشخاص الذين يعانون من الإرهاق أنه لم يتبق لديهم أي شيء يعطونه وقد يخشون النهوض من السرير كل صباح كما أنهم قد يتبنون نظرة متشائمة تجاه الحياة ويشعرون باليأس.

b) غالبًا ما لا يشعر الأشخاص الذين يعانون من الإرهاق أنه لم يتبق لديهم أي شيء يعطونه وقد يندفعون للنهوض من السرير كل صباح كما أنهم قد يتبنون نظرة متشائمة تجاه الحياة ويشعرون باليأس.

c) غالبًا ما يشعر الأشخاص الذين يعانون من الإرهاق أنه لم يتبق لديهم أي شيء يعطونه وقد يخشون الذهاب للسرير كل صباح كما أنهم قد يتبنون نظرة متفائلة تجاه الحياة ويشعرون باليأس.

d) غالبًا ما يشعر الأشخاص الذين يعانون من الإرهاق أنه لم يتبق لديهم أي شيء يعطونه وقد يخشون النهوض من السرير كل صباح كما أنهم قد يتبنون نظرة متفائلة تجاه الحياة ويشعرون بالأمل.

29 A study plan is an organised schedule outlining study times and learning goals. This schedule should include dates of exams, as well as deadlines for papers and projects.

a) خطة الدراسة هي جدول منظم يحدد أوقات الدراسة وأهداف التربية ويجب أن يتضمن هذا الجدول مواعيد الاختبارات، وكذلك المواعيد النهائية للأوراق والمشاريع.

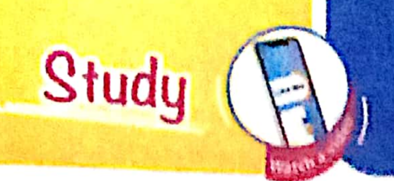
b) خطة الدراسة هي جدول منظم يحدد أوقات الدراسة وأهداف التعلم ويجب أن يتضمن هذا الجدول مواعيد الاختبارات، وكذلك المواعيد النهائية للأوراق والمشاريع.

c) خطة الدراسة هي جدول معتاد يحدد أوقات الدراسة وأهداف التعلم ويجب أن يورط هذا الجدول مواعيد الاختبارات، وكذلك المواعيد النهائية للأوراق والمشاريع.

d) خطة الدراسة هي جدول متدرج يحدد أوقات الدراسة وأهداف التربية ويجب أن يتضمن هذا الجدول مواعيد الاختبارات، وكذلك المواعيد المبدئية للأوراق والمشاريع.

30 بعدما خسر اللاعب المباراة أدرك أنه كان ينبغي عليه أن يتدرب بشكل أفضل وأن ينفذ تعليمات مدربه.

a) After the player lost the match, he realised that he should train better and carry out his coach's instructions.
b) After the player lost the match, he realised that he must have prepared better and carry out his coach's instructions.
c) After the player lost the match, he realised that he must have prepared better and carried out his coach's directions.
d) After the player lost the match, he realised that he should have prepared better and carried out his coach's instructions.





Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

efficient (adj)	كفء
energy (n)	طاقة
final (adj)	نهائي
get together (v)	يجتمع/يتقابل
identify (v) (y ied)*	يحدد
normal (adj)	طبيعي
notice (v) (d)	يلاحظ
offer (v) (ed)	يعرض
plan (n) (v) (ed)	خطة/يخطط
real (adj)	حقيقي
reason (n)	سبب
routine (n)	روتين
sign (n)	علامة
specific (adj)	خاص/محدد
suggest (v) (ed)	يقترح
teenager (n)	مراهق

* Scientists have identified a link between diet and cancer.

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

automatically (adv)	تلقائيًا
aware (adj)	مدرك/واعٍ
concentrate (v) (d)	يركز
contagious (adj)	معدٍ
disappoint (v) (ed)	يحبط
edition (n)	إصدار/طبعة/نسخة
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع
extend (v) (ed)	يمتد/يمد
gratitude (n)	شكر/عرفان بالجميل
memo (n)	مذكرة
naturally (adv)	بشكل طبيعي
optimistic (adj)	متفائل
participant (n)	مشارك
perception (n)	إدراك/وعي
perfectionist (n)	باحث عن الكمال
perfectly (adv)	على نحو كامل
pressure (n)	ضغط
relax (v) (ed)	يسترخي
share (v) (d)	يشارك/مشاركة
struggle (v) (d)	يكافح/يناضل/يعاني
trust (v) (ed)	يثق في

Workbook Vocabulary

accept (v) (ed)	يقبل
alert (n)	تحذير/إنذار
athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى
external (adj)	خارجي
factor (n)	عامل
influence (v) (d) (n)	يؤثر/تأثير
member (n)	عضو
perceive (v) (d)	يدرك
raincoat (n)	معطف مطر
step (n) (v) (ped)	خطوة/يخطو

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

at the moment	في هذه اللحظة	have problems with	لديه مشكلات مع
follow an advice	يتبع نصيحة	make notes	يدون ملاحظات
get to sleep	يستغرق في النوم	make time for	يخصص الوقت لـ
give advice	يعطي نصيحة	on his own	بمفرده
have a talk	يتحدث/يدردش	take action	يقوم/يتخذ إجراء
aware of	مدرك/واعٍ بـ	sit at	يجلس أمام
cope with	يتأقلم مع	worry about	يقلق على

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
expect	يتوقع	expectation	توقع	expected	متوقع
identify	يحدد	identification identity	تحديد هوية هوية	identified	محدد هويته
notice	يلاحظ	notice	ملاحظة	noticeable	ملحوظ
relax	يسترخي	relaxation	استرخاء	relaxed	مسترخٍ
share	يشارك	share	مشاركة	shared	مشترك
suggest*	يقترح	suggestion	اقتراح	suggestive	موحٍ/اقتراحي

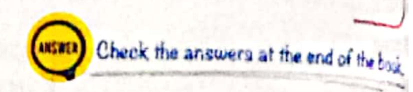
* - I suggest watching a comic film tonight.
- My suggestion wasn't agreed on by the majority.
- The conditions are suggestive of what happened before.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
efficient	كفء	skillful/effective	incompetent/incapable غير قادر/غير كفء
expect	يتوقع	anticipate/suppose	overlook يتجاهل
identify	يحدد	recognise/determine	confuse/mistake يربك/يسيء فهم
offer	يعرض	present/suggest	deny/request ينكر/يطلب
relax	يسترخي	calm/cool	irritate/worry يثير/يقلق
specific	محدد	particular/definite	common/general شائع/عام
suggest	يقترح	propose/recommend	oppose/deny يعارض/ينكر

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Experts advise mothers to try to get their babies into a .... for feeding and sleeping.
   a) red tape b) system
   c) routine d) rest
2. Since I started eating more healthily, I've got so much more ....
   a) product b) energy
   c) atom d) part
3. The .... match of the championship was attended by 60 thousand people.
   a) middle b) prior
   c) superior d) final
4. Temperatures are expected to be in the .... range for this month.
   a) strange b) normal
   c) foreign d) unexpected
5. The new owner of the company .... to renew the offices as they look old.
   a) plans b) rejects
   c) aspects d) refuses



Reading Text (1)



When I talk to teenagers(1) who are suffering from burnout, I start by talking to them about the negative effects of their mental health problems. It's a good idea to ask how they're feeling, for example, they may feel exhausted or they may not have any time for self-care. Then I ask them about their routine(2) because I want to find out how much time they spend doing their homework and how much time they spend on other activities. After that, we can find out if there's anything we can change, for example to have better time management. A final(3) important thing to look at is what activities the student really enjoys. We can talk about these and think about how the student can make more time for them.

(1) مراهقون
(2) روتين
(3) نهائى/أخير

Reading Text (2)

To : Mohamed@mail.com

From: Karim@mail.com

Hi Mohamed,

I wanted to write because I've noticed that you don't seem to be your normal self at the moment. You used to have so much energy[1], but now you look exhausted a lot of the time at school. I think I can understand how you're feeling because I was suffering from a lot of stress last year too. I couldn't cope with all of the homework I had. Instead of doing the work, I used to just sit at my desk and worry about it for hours. I remember that I was exhausted all the time and my teachers weren't very happy with my schoolwork. Time management was something I didn't know anything about back then, but I asked my sister for help and she showed me how to plan[2] my study time better.

(1) طاقة
(2) يخطط
(3) يحدد
(4) يجتمع/يتقابل

Is there something that you're worrying about which is stopping you getting to sleep? Or maybe you're doing too many things at the moment. Everyone suffers from stress and finds it difficult to cope with life sometimes, so don't worry about it. When you understand that, you can start to identify [3] the reasons for your problems.

Why don't you think about what is happening in your life at the moment? Is there anything that you're spending too much time on? How often do you make the time to do something you really enjoy? We could get together[4] to have a talk about what's going on if you want. Just let me know when.

Talk soon,

Karim

Reading Text (3)

One way to help you deal with life's problems is to focus only on the things you can change. There are many **external factors** which may **influence** how well you can cope with a particular problem. However, you should accept that there are some things you just do not have control over. It is not helpful to worry about these things. For example, when it rains do you get stressed about getting wet? Or do you buy a good **raincoat** to keep you warm and dry in bad weather? This is an example of how you can find a quick and simple solution to what others might see as a problem. This is also the first **step** to accepting change as something **normal**. It is a simple way to make sure you remain positive when you face life's difficulties.

Reading Text (4) (Workbook)

a) For the last few weeks, I've been feeling like I can't cope with everything in my life. My friends are getting great marks at school and after school they meet up. But I don't have time to join them. On social media they always upload photos and videos of themselves having fun in the park and around town. I don't know how they find the time to do all these things and study too.

b) I like to know what is happening in the world and I have set up my phone to send me news alerts. Recently though, there have been so many problems happening around the world and it's making me feel stressed. It's having a big impact on my well-being. I often feel quite anxious and don't want to leave the house.

c) I have just started doing sport to calm down because recently I've been quite angry. We have just moved to a new city because of my dad's new job. I had to leave all my best friends, the athletics club I was in and all this happened during an important year at school. I want to study medicine, so I have to get good results in my exams. I often get angry about small things.

Listening Text (1)



Nevine : This is Nevine and six months ago I was really struggling[1] with my mental health. I was suffering from burnout, and I wasn't spending any time on self-care at all. Fortunately, I'm feeling a lot better now. The first step was to work out what was causing the burnout. In my case, I was doing too many things and I couldn't cope. For example, I was trying to do all of my homework perfectly[2] while also playing in four sports teams and volunteering at an old people's home on Saturdays. I realised that if you're not spending enough time doing things to promote your own well-being, you'll feel exhausted and sad. I decided to stop being such a perfectionist with my homework, only play in one sports team and only volunteer at the old people's home two weekends a month. I always get enough sleep now. Now, at the weekend when I don't have to do anything, I just relax at home and enjoy spending time with my friends and family.
I always get enough sleep. Recently, I've learnt how to draw animals, but that's just for fun – I don't put any pressure[3] on myself to do it perfectly!

(1) يكافح
(2) على نحو كامل
(3) ضغط
(4) يحبط
(5) يركز

Hany : My name's Hany. I didn't think that I would ever have any mental health problems. I used to be so happy and relaxed all the time. Then last year, I started to feel under a lot of pressure at school because we had some important exams. I was so worried about not doing very well in the exams. I didn't want to disappoint[4] my parents who thought I was a really good student. I suffered from a lot of stress, and it was so bad that I couldn't sleep. Of course, that meant that I was exhausted at school the next day and found it hard to concentrate[5] in my lessons. One day I fell asleep in the library at school and a teacher had to come and wake me up. We talked about how I was feeling, and the teacher helped me to make a study plan I could follow and still get enough sleep! I now spend less time studying, but I learn more than I used to because I manage my time better and take regular breaks. I always get at least eight hours sleep as well.

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

Presenter : Hello and welcome to this week's edition of 'Positive Thinking'. In the studio with us today we have psychologist and popular author George Mitchell. Hello George and welcome to the show.

George : Thank you for having me. I'm very happy to be here today.

Presenter : Let's talk about your new book called 'Positive thinking is easy' which was published just last month and has already sold 30,000 copies. Congratulations!

George : Thank you.

Presenter : So, tell me. How can I be more positive?

George : Well, there are many things we can do automatically so they become habits. The first one is something I have done twice already while talking to you.

Presenter : Really? What's that?

George : Saying 'thank you'.

Presenter : Ahh, yes. So, you mean we should say 'thank you' more?

George : Well, what I mean is we should be more grateful for everything we have. We need to focus more on all the good things and less on the negative. For example, in one study by psychologists in American Universities two groups of students were asked to keep a diary and each week group one wrote a few sentences about the things they were grateful for that week and group two wrote about the things that caused them stress. After just 10 weeks the first group were more optimistic, did more exercise and visited the doctor less!

Presenter : Wow! That reminds me of a saying my grandmother used to tell me about how some people see the glass half empty and others half full.

George : Your grandmother was right. We should be happy for the good things in our lives and extending this gratitude to other people will also make us feel better.

Presenter : That's an interesting point. Could you tell us more?

George : Of course. We naturally feel more positive when we are kind to others. A study in 2017 showed that being kind to others or observing others being kind improved the well-being of the participants.

Presenter : Let me check I have understood. So, not only being kind to other people but also watching others being kind to other people can make you feel more positive?

George : That's right. The impact is huge. Just imagine, if you are kind to someone and a third person observes you, that's three people who immediately feel more positive and they might do something good for another person which will impact on others and so these positive feelings become contagious.

Presenter : Well, George Mitchell, this conversation has been very interesting and I'm sorry to have to end it there. We have heard how our own perception of things and being grateful can make us feel more positive. I guess there is just one important thing to say and that is ... 'thank you'!

George : Thank you for having me on the show. I've really enjoyed talking to you today.

Presenter : Well, listeners that's all we have time for today. Remember being positive all begins with how you see things. Thank you for listening and stay happy and healthy.

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Many people believe that positive or negative feelings are .... and can pass from a person to another quickly.

a) unhealthy
b) desperate
c) contagious
d) infected

2 We all should show a deep .... to our teachers who worked hard for us.

a) gratitude
b) ingratitude
c) hatred
d) envy

3 Nursery schools play an important role in enhancing children's .... of the world.

a) prescription
b) reception
c) exception
d) perception

4 Most conference .... expressed their support for the idea of reducing carbon emissions انبعاثات.

a) employers
b) participants
c) enemies
d) venues

5 The young athlete .... for 10 years to achieve success as an Olympic medal winner.

a) released
b) puzzled
c) relaxed
d) struggled

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the bo

Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

athletics — أنعاب القوى
- sports such as running and jumping

identify — يحدد
- to recognise and correctly name someone or something

memo — مذكرة
- a short official note to another person in the same company or organisation

sign — علامة
- a movement, sound, etc. that you make in order to tell someone something

Notes on Vocabulary

	Word	Examples
1	**energy** الطاقة (هى القدرة على أن تقوم بعمل دون تعب)/القوة التى تأتى من الكهرباء أو الفحم أو البترول وتستخدم لتسيير الآلات.	▸ Children are usually full of energy. ▸ Most of the energy used nowadays comes from fossil fuels.
	power نفوذ/سلطة/شدة/قوة محركة	▸ The ship was helpless against the power of the storm. ▸ He was greedy for power and money.
2	**reason (n) for** سبب/مبرر/تبرير	▸ The police asked her the reason for her visit. ▸ Could you explain your reasons for choosing this job? The reason why + جملة ▸ The reason why so many people caught the flu is still not clear.
	cause (n) of سبب/مُسَبِّب (يؤدى إلى نتيجة) يسبب/يحدث	▸ The major cause of these accidents is drivers going too fast. ▸ High winds caused many trees to fall during the night.
3	**share** ١- يشارك/يشترك (بدون قسمة) ٢- يشرك (يترك شخصًا يستخدم ما يخصه) ٣- يشترك مع شخص فى أفكار أو آراء ٤- يشارك شخصًا آراء أو مشاعر أو خبرة ٥- يوزع	▸ We don't have enough books, so you'll have to share. ▸ When he was young, Samy never shared his toys with anyone. ▸ Other parents share their belief in the importance of reading. ▸ Students were able to share their experiences. ▸ They shared the cake between them.
	divide ١- يقسم/يفصل ٢- يقسم على رقم (فى الرياضيات)	▸ The book is divided into six sections. ▸ If you divide 21 by 3, you get 7.

routine روتين يومى شخصى غالبًا — Everyone has their own morning routine before starting their daily activities.

4 **custom** عادة مجتمعية — In many countries, it's the custom for women to get married in white.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- ………………… but I asked my sister for help and she showed me how to plan my study better.

  - لاحظ استخدام الصيغة (المصدر + how to) بعد الفعل (show).

- Everyone suffers from stress and finds it difficult to cope with life sometimes.

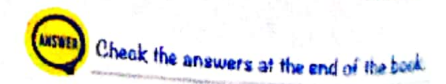
  - لاحظ استخدام الفعل فى صيغة المفرد بعد (Everyone) لكن الضمير الذى قد يشير لها يأتى غالبًا فى صيغة الجمع.

- ………………… how much time they spend doing their homework and how much time they spend on other activities.

  - لاحظ استخدام صيغة جملة وليس سؤالًا بعد (how much time) لأنها جملة غير مباشرة.
  - كما لاحظ استخدام حرف الجر (on) بعد الفعل (spend) بمعنى يقضى وقتًا فى.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rugby is one of the sports that are most likely to ………………… injury as it involves violent actions.
   a) reason b) avoid
   c) cause d) result
2. I know that many people do not ………………… my grandfather's old views about women's role in society.
   a) share b) divide
   c) split d) devise
3. In my opinion, tourists should respect the ………………… and culture of the country they are in.
   a) routines b) customs
   c) activities d) influences
4. The Minister announced that the new wind farm will provide enough ………………… for 100,000 homes.
   a) power b) gravity
   c) influence d) energy



Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Workbook Vocabulary & Vocabulary Notes

1 The prison service should try to rehabilitate يعيد تأهيل prisoners so that they can lead .... lives when they leave prison.

a) average b) normal c) standard d) terrific

2 The doctor at the school should be able to .... advice on diet.

a) extend b) alert c) offer d) warn

3 I prefer the kind of drama that tells you something about the ...... world with its pros and cons.

a) real b) false c) optimistic d) creative

4 Managers can .... their employees to get the job done after setting clear rules.

a) recognise b) identify c) suspect d) trust

5 I didn't really .... Said to come to the party as he has important exams.

a) expect b) accept c) except d) respect

6 He was always late for work. For this ...., his employer fired him.

a) factor b) reason c) cause d) share

7 After parking his car under a "No parking" ...., the police drove it away.

a) notice b) note c) sign d) mark

8 My daily .... begins when my alarm clock goes off at 6.30.

a) routine b) custom c) red tape d) tradition

9 A .... went around the office, reminding staff of the date of the next meeting.

a) sign b) memo c) signal d) mark

10 Aircraft are required by law to carry special electronic devices, so that they can be .... all through their journey.

a) extended b) devised c) identified d) allied

11 Facebook groups enable young men to .... ideas and latest news.

a) divide b) extend c) export d) share

12 Climate change made people more and more .... of the danger of global warming.

a) creative b) normal c) aware d) hopeful

13 The fire .... started only a few minutes before the fire.

a) alert b) tool c) extinguisher d) hose

14 The .... walls of the school were painted yellow before the beginning of the year.

a) middle b) external c) expected d) perfect

15 Television brings many benefits, but it can also have a bad .... on people.

a) depiction b) image c) defect d) influence

16 Students are welcome to bring along a family .... or friend in the school party.

a) organ b) member c) guest d) host

17 Doctors warn us that lack of exercise is an important risk .... for heart disease.

a) defect b) fiction c) factor d) plan

18 The new boss .... that all was not well within the organisation due to the loss rate.

a) perceived b) achieved c) concerned d) influenced

19 Karl Luis and Usain Bolt, the great runners, are famous figures of the international ....

a) politics b) trade c) soccer d) athletics

20 The government .... a gradual improvement in sales of electric cars, so they offer real advantages to them.

a) accept b) expect c) expel d) respell

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21 I asked my father to .... me some advice about revising for the exam.

a) give b) take c) suggest d) request

22 Last night, I couldn't .... to sleep, so I am very tired this morning.

a) fall b) get c) give d) take

23 Experts say that you must set some jobs for your child that he can do .... his/her own.

a) in b) of c) at d) on

24 The government are really .... action to control inflation التضخم and protect citizens.

a) giving b) getting c) taking d) owning

25 Don't worry; you'll just have to cope .... the situation in the company.

a) at b) with c) in d) about

26 My uncle is very wealthy, so he never has to worry .... money.

a) for b) with c) in d) about

27 Mr Hamdi and Mr Nabil felt very .... after their trip to England.

a) relax b) relaxation c) relaxing d) relaxed

28 The Ministry of Youth rejected a .... that money should be spent to improve the old club and decided to rebuild it.

a) suggest b) suggestion c) suggested d) suggestive

29 The money was collected for a specific purpose. The synonym of the adjective "specific" is ....

a) public b) general c) common d) particular

30 Email is an efficient way of contacting a large number of people. The antonym of the word "efficient" is ....

a) vague b) clear c) incompetent d) responsible





Lessons 3 & 4

B Language

Modal verbs الأفعال الناقصة

تستخدم (Modal verbs) وهى الأفعال المشروطة بالمصدر بعدها للضرورة والاستطاعة والاحتمال وإعطاء الإذن والطلب والاقتراح والنصيحة، وقد تم شرح الاقتراح والنصيحة فى الجزء الأول وسنتناول بالشرح الأجزاء الباقية فى الجزء القادم.

1 Present perfect المضارع التام

Present		Past		Future	
have to	It's necessary for ... to + Inf.	had to ضرورة فى الماضى وتم فعلها	It was necessary for ... to + Inf.	will have to	It will be necessary for ... to + Inf.
has to					
must					
have got to					
has got to					
need to / needs to		needed to		will need to	

تفيد must الضرورة الشخصية (ظروف شخصية تضطره لذلك) والشخص يكون موافقًا لهذه الضرورة وراضيًا عنها.

وتفيد have to ضرورة مفروضة من الخارج ليس لديك اختيار فى فعلها أو لا.

- I have to get up early on school days.
- I must visit Ramy on Saturday as I promised to visit him.
- It is necessary for all students to study hard.

All students must / have to/ have got to/ need to study hard.

- It was necessary for him to visit Alex.

He had to visit Alex. كان مضطرًا لزيارة الإسكندرية لذلك زارها.

- It will be necessary for the government to build more houses.

The government will have to build more houses.

2 Lack of necessity عدم الضرورة

Present		Past		Future	
don't have to	It isn't necessary for ... to + Inf.	didn't have to didn't need to لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شىء فلم نفعله	It wasn't necessary for ... to + Inf.	won't have to	It won't be necessary for ... to + Inf.
doesn't have to					
don't/doesn't need to					
needn't (to بدون)		needn't have + P.P. لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شىء ولكن تم فعله			

- It isn't necessary for her to buy more dresses.

She doesn't have to/ needn't / doesn't need to buy more dresses.

- It wasn't necessary for me to travel abroad.

I didn't have to travel abroad. لم يكن واجبًا فلم أفعل

I needn't have travelled abroad. لم يكن واجبًا ولكنى فعلت

3 Prohibition

المنع / الحظر / التحريم

It's	banned ممنوع forbidden محرم prohibited محظور	to park here.
Parking is	banned forbidden prohibited not allowed	here.

- You mustn't (can't) park here. = You aren't allowed to park here.

Must /mustn't (other uses)

You must come and see us at the weekend.	(a warm invitation)
You must wash your hands before you eat.	(strong advice)
You must buy souvenirs for our friends here. We mustn't forget that tourism is important.	(a strong reminder to ourselves)

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You .... pass your exams to go to university.
   a) can b) needn't c) may d) have to
2. I really .... phone Mazen. I promised I'd phone him as soon as I had any news.
   a) must b) have to c) need d) needn't
3. Office staff .... wear a suit but they should look smart.
   a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) don't have to d) can't
4. You .... buy that book. You can borrow mine.
   a) mustn't b) needn't c) shouldn't d) can't
5. Our school bus broke down, so the pupils .... walk to school.
   a) must b) ought c) had to d) would



4 Possibility

الاستطاعة

Present	Past	Future
can	could	will be able to
am/ is / are able to	was/ were able to	

- It is possible for surgeons to transplant hearts.

Surgeons can (are able to) transplant hearts.

- It was possible for us to beat the other team.

We could beat the other team.

Past

could استطاع فعل الشيء	could have + p.p. كان فى الإمكان فعل شيء ولم يفعله

- I went to school on foot, but I could have gone by train.

لاحظ استخدام possible للاحتمال إذا جاء بعدها that وفى هذه الحالة نستبدلها بـ may

It's possible for + obj للاستطاعة	It's possible that + subj+ verb للاحتمال
It's possible for her to speak Spanish well. She can speak Spanish well.	It is possible that it will rain tomorrow. It may rain tomorrow.

Can/ be able to / capable / ability / enable

My friend	can/ could + inf.	speak English.
	is / was able to + inf.	speak English.
	is / was capable of + v-ing	speaking English.
	has / had the ability to + inf.	speak English.
Money enables يمكن us to buy what we need.		

تفيد be able to الاستطاعة بعد مجهود

- My rival was strong, but I was able to beat him.
- The questions were difficult, but the students were able to answer them.

5 Probability/Possibility الاحتمال

Present / future	Past
may/ might + inf.	may/ might have + P.P.

- It's probable that Ali will visit us tomorrow. Ali may (might) visit us tomorrow.
- Perhaps, they won the match. They may (might) have won the match.

تستخدم might للاحتمال فى المضارع ولكنها أقل احتمالاً من may

- My uncle may visit us tomorrow. (It is possible, but we aren't sure.)
- My uncle might visit us tomorrow. (There's a small chance.)

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My sister is only 6, but she .... already play the piano.
   a) needn't b) has to c) must d) can
2. Do you see black clouds? It .... rain this evening.
   a) needs b) could c) may d) mustn't
3. Nancy is very late. She .... her train.
   a) may have missed b) may miss c) had to miss d) should have missed
4. The boy .... walk again soon after he had had an operation.
   a) might b) was able to c) is able to d) can
5. If one person is careless with a library book, then it .... be read by others.
   a) couldn't b) may c) mightn't d) can't



Check the answers at the end of the book



Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We ………………… leave now or we'll be late.
a) can b) will
c) must d) needn't

2 I'll ………………… go out soon. My father is waiting for me.
a) should b) must
c) ought to d) have to

3 A horse ………………… go twice as fast as an elephant.
a) is used to b) can
c) used to d) is able

4 You ………………… get the 9.45 train. You could get the next at 10:00.
a) don't have to b) mustn't
c) should d) must

5 I missed the bus this morning, so I ………………… walk to school.
a) have to b) ought
c) had to d) must

6 We ………………… see him tomorrow.
a) would b) might
c) had to d) ought

7 Hurry up! It is a quarter past 10. We really ………………… be late.
a) don't have to b) wouldn't rather
c) needn't d) mustn't

8 He ………………… take his medicine three times a day. The doctor told him so.
a) has to b) need
c) have to d) could

9 I ………………… buy any food yesterday as there was no one at home.
a) might b) must
c) didn't have to d) have to

10 You ………………… watch TV when you are studying.
a) shouldn't b) couldn't
c) aren't d) didn't

11 People who know a foreign language ………………… learn a second one easily.
a) should b) needn't
c) mustn't d) can

12 I didn't want to go there but I ………………… .
a) might b) must
c) had to d) can't

13 Visitors ………………… stay in the hospital after ten p.m.
a) must not b) might not
c) needn't d) must

14 I didn't ………………… phone my uncle because my sister did it herself.
a) had to b) be to
c) must d) have to

15 A: I live near my work.
B: So you .... go to the office by crowded buses.
a) have to
b) don't have to
c) are able to
d) can't

16 The skier broke his leg and .... compete in the recent Olympic Games.
a) had to
b) mustn't
c) couldn't
d) might

17 Does Hany .... leave home at 7.30?
a) have to
b) has to
c) must
d) had to

18 Father is mending the car. After that we .... to go for a drive.
a) can
b) might
c) will be able
d) may

19 A: I .... understand the rule; .... I take the examination another time?
B: Yes, of course.
a) mustn't / must
b) can't / may
c) could / can
d) may / can

20 A: .... we do this work now?
B: .... You can do it tomorrow.
a) May / Yes, you may
b) Can / Yes, you can
c) Could / Yes, you must
d) Must / No, you needn't

21 It's a .... for all of us to protect the country from any danger.
a) necessary
b) has to
c) importance
d) must

22 You .... get a visa before you go abroad next summer.
a) mustn't
b) will have to
c) had to
d) needn't

23 I feel sick and tired. So I .... go to school.
a) could
b) haven't to
c) am not able to
d) can

24 That's a question nobody .... answer.
a) can
b) cannot
c) must not
d) were to

25 It was so warm that we .... wear our coats. It was very pleasant.
a) had to
b) couldn't
c) didn't have to
d) mustn't

26 We didn't go out last night. We .... to the cinema, but we decided to stay at home.
a) needn't go
b) must have gone
c) should go
d) could have gone

27 You .... find some of the most interesting people in this company.
a) have to
b) may
c) should
d) ought to

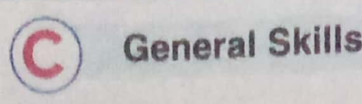
28 You will have to pay a fine. You .... so fast.
a) shouldn't have driven
b) mustn't have driven
c) must have driven
d) can't have driven

29 A: ".................... I have another cup of coffee?"
B: No, you mustn't. You are suffering from high blood pressure.
a) Need
b) Would
c) May
d) Must

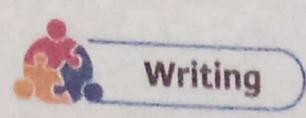
30 He must study hard. This sentence means ....
a) it's unnecessary for him to study hard
b) it's advisable for him to study hard
c) he is to study hard
d) he ought to study hard



Lessons 3 & 4



General Skills



Write an email to a friend who seems to be suffering from burnout.

An informal email

Introduction
- Possible signs of burnout you have noticed.

Supporting Paragraph(s)
- Your own experiences of stress, exhaustion or burnout – real or imagined.
- What you know about the causes of burnout.
- Ideas for things that can help people with stress, exhaustion or burnout.

Closing Paragraph
- Some specific advice you could give your friend.

Model email

To : kenzy@mail.com
From : nourhan@mail.com

Hi Kenzy,

I would like to write because I've noticed that you are different these days. You don't like to take part in any school trip and you say that you are always tired and exhausted to go to your karate training sessions. You also always refuse to go with us anywhere for the weekend. Our teachers say that you usually neglect your homework and forget your books at home.

I can understand this because I had nearly the same problems last year. My mother was very ill. So, I had to go to school and do the housework at home and look after my mother. I didn't have time to do any kinds of activities. I missed my training tennis lessons and didn't have time to get together with my friends. I then felt the same as you. I read about this case and found that experts say that workload and stress are the main causes of burnout and frustration.

Why don't you think about what is happening in your life at the moment? Is there anything that you're spending too much time on? How often do you take the time to do something you really enjoy? We could get together to talk about this.

Bye for now,

Nourhan

Golden Question

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 

- I .... an email to the company complaining about the 200 pounds extra in the last trip, but they replied well.

a) shouldn't send
b) didn't need to send
c) should have sent
d) needn't have sent

Test Yourself in 20



Unit 4
Lessons 3 & 4

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The doctor gave the patient .... instructions on how to care for the wound.
a) unclear b) specific c) normal d) public

2 Leila did not tell the boss the real .... for her leaving the job.
a) cause b) search c) reason d) recipe

3 Both the father and the mother .... the responsibility for their children.
a) repair b) deny c) divide d) share

4 We replaced the old secretary with a new very .... one who helped our company a lot.
a) efficient b) lazy c) inactive d) useless

5 The first thing I .... about the room was the colour of the wall paint.
a) advised b) commented c) signalled d) noticed

6 To keep healthy, you should make exercise a part of your daily ....
a) red tape b) rule c) routine d) research

7 We need to make people .... of the effects of their lifestyle on the environment.
a) unconscious b) aware c) ignorant d) denied

8 I am used to .... together with my friends at the weekend.
a) getting b) going c) making d) doing

9 You .... the job. Why didn't you try again?
a) may take b) can take c) must take d) could have taken

10 He .... have replaced the tyre; it was still quite good.
a) can b) needn't c) could d) had to

11 You .... a raincoat. You are wet through.
a) should have worn b) could wear
c) must have worn d) may wear

12 As my sister was taking an examination, I .... look after her baby yesterday.
a) was able to b) could c) had to d) must

13 "Adel .... in the house now," thinks my mother.
a) had to b) might be c) will be d) be

14 My cousin .... read and write when he was five.
a) can b) must c) may d) could

15 **A:** .... I smoke here? **B:** No, you ....
a) May/mustn't b) Can/may
c) May/need d) Can/needn't

16 Sorry, I .... go with you. I .... finish my work.
a) mustn't / can b) couldn't / have to
c) can't / must d) may not / must

17 Which of the following is correctly punctuated?
a) If you visit Cairo; come and see me. b) If you visit Cairo, come and see me.
c) If you visit Cairo: come and see me. d) If you visit cairo, come and see me.

18 A message from one company to another company is a kind of ....

a) a formal email
b) an informal email
c) an expository essay
d) a persuasive essay

19 In a/an .... paragraph, the author is writing about what a person, place, or thing is like.

a) descriptive
b) persuasive
c) expository
d) narrative

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Kareem was at home reading when he heard a frantic knock on his door. He looked through the peephole[1] and saw that it was his neighbor, Mrs Farid. Puzzled[2], he opened the door.

"Sorry to disturb you, Kareem. Can you help me? My husband has fallen down and he's too heavy for me to lift[3] him up," Mrs Farid pleaded.

Without hesitation[4], Kareem went over. When he went into Mrs Farid's house, he was shocked to see Mr Farid lying face down on his bedroom floor, motionless[5]. He did not dare to move Mr Farid for fear that he might have any internal[6] injury. He called for an ambulance.

Within ten minutes, they heard the ambulance siren. Kareem ran downstairs to meet the paramedics[7]. They gingerly[8] lifted Mr Farid onto a stretcher[9] and carried him into the ambulance. Kareem accompanied them to the hospital.

The first thing that the doctor at the hospital did was to send Mr Farid for an X-ray. This was to ensure that there was no blood clot in the brain. Unfortunately, indeed there was. Mr Farid was immediately sent for an emergency surgery. Finally, after three hours, the doctor emerged and reported that the clot was removed and Mr Farid was in stable condition[10]. Kareem and Mrs Farid heaved great sighs of relief. It was another hour later that they were allowed to see Mr Farid. By then, Mr Farid was conscious[11] but still groggy from the surgery.

In fact, for the rest of Mr Farid's one-week hospital stay, Kareem tried to be with Mrs Farid whenever he could. The couple was very grateful to Kareem for the help he rendered[12].

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20 The best title to the passage is ....

a) Mr Farid's injury and Karim's noble character
b) Mrs Farid's worry about her husband
c) A week in the hospital
d) The paramedics' bravery

21 According to paragraphs one, why did Kareem open the door?

a) He was feeling frantic.
b) He wanted to see who it was.
c) He wanted to take a break from his reading.
d) He was unsure why Mrs Farid was looking for him.

22 Which one of the following pieces of information is not true?

a) Mr Farid lay very still.
b) Kareem was too shocked to move Mr Farid.
c) Mr Farid had fallen down in his bedroom.
d) Kareem was afraid that Mr Farid might have injured himself internally.



(1) العين السحرية (2) متحير (3) يرفع (4) تردد (5) بلا حركة (6) داخلي (7) مسعفين (8) بحذر شديد (9) نقالة (10) حالة مستقرة (11) واعٍ (12) قدموا

23 When the paramedics arrived, they ....

a) ran to meet Kareem
b) did some stretching
c) carried Mr Farid into the ambulance
d) required an explanation

24 The paramedics were very .... when they carried Mr Farid.

a) bold
b) cautious
c) strong
d) careless

25 What does "This" in paragraph five refer to?

a) Sending Mr Farid for an X-ray.
b) The blood clot in Mr Farid's brain.
c) Waiting for Mr Farid to have his surgery.
d) Sending Mr Farid for emergency surgery.

26 Which of the following best explains why the couple was grateful to Kareem?

a) He had offered to call the ambulance.
b) He did not blame Mrs Farid for interrupting his reading.
c) He did his best to help the couple in whatever way he could.
d) He was clever enough not to have moved Mr Farid when he was unconscious.

27 The antonym of the word "groggy" is ....

a) sleepy
b) unsteady
c) dizzy
d) alert

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d:

28 Mental health means feeling good about who you are, having balance in your life and in your thinking, and responding constructively to life's highs and lows.

a) تعنى الصحة العقلية الشعور بالرضا عن هويتك، وتحقيق التوازن فى حياتك وفى تفكيرك، والاستجابة البناءة لحالات النجاح والإحباط فى الحياة.
b) تعنى الصحة العقلية الشعور بالرضا عن إنجازك، وتحقيق التوازن فى حياتك وفى تفكيرك، والاستجابة البناءة لحالات النجاح والإحباط فى الحياة.
c) تعنى الصحة العقلية الشعور بالرضا عن هويتك، وتحقيق الموازنة فى حياتك وفى تفكيرك، والاستجابة السلبية لحالات النجاح والإحباط فى الحياة.
d) تعنى الصحة العقلية الشعور بالرضا عن هويتك، وتحقيق الموازنة فى حياتك وفى تفكيرك، والاستجابة البناءة لحالات الارتفاع والانخفاض فى الحياة.

29 إن المراهقة فترة حاسمة من أجل تطوير عادات اجتماعية وعاطفية مهمة بالنسبة إلى السلامة النفسية. ويشمل ذلك اتباع أنماط نوم صحية، وممارسة الرياضة بانتظام، وتطوير مهارات التأقلم وحل المشاكل ومهارات التواصل مع الآخرين.

a) Adolescence is a critical period for developing social and emotional habits that are important to psychological well-being. This consists adopting healthy sleep patterns, exercising regularly, and developing coping, problem-solving and personal skills.
b) Adolescence is a critical period for developing social and emotional habits that are important to physical well-being. This includes adopting healthy sleep patterns, exercising regularly, and developing coping, problem-solving and private skills.
c) Adolescence is a critical period for developing social and emotional habits that are important to affection well-being. This includes adopting healthy sleep patterns, exercising gradually, and developing coping, problem-solving and interpersonal skills.
d) Adolescence is a critical period for developing social and emotional habits that are important to psychological well-being. This includes adopting healthy sleep patterns, exercising regularly, and developing coping, problem-solving and interpersonal skills.

30 أعتقد أنه لم يكن لزامًا عليك أن تشترى كل هذه الملابس الجديدة فلديك بالفعل العديد من قطع الملابس التى نادرًا ما ترتديها.

a) I guess you didn't have to buy all these new clothes. You already have many pieces of clothes that you didn't rarely wear.
b) I guess you don't have to buy all these new clothes. You already have many pieces of clothes that you don't rarely wear.
c) I guess you needn't have bought all these new clothes. You already have many pieces of clothes that you rarely wear.
d) I guess you mustn't have bought all these new clothes. You already have many pieces of clothes that you rarely wore.

Study

Chapter 4 (Great Expectations)

Vocabulary

act (v) (ed)	يتصرف	injure (v) (d)	يؤذى/يجرح
admire (v) (d)	يعجب بـ	lawyer (n)	محام
attack (n) (v) (ed)	هجوم/يهاجم	marry (v) (y ied)	يتزوج
benefactor (n)	متبرع/فاعل خير	object (v) (ed)	يعترض
condition (n)	شرط	privately (adv)	على انفراد
congratulate (v) (d)	يهنئ	proof (n)	دليل
crowd (n)	حشد	property (n)	ملكية/ممتلكات
expectations (n)	توقعات/آمال	realise (v) (d)	يدرك
feelings (n)	مشاعر	stairs (n)	سلالم
guest (n)	ضيف	sum (n)	مبلغ من المال
hammer (n)	مطرقة	suspect (v) (ed)	يشك فى
household (n)	أفراد العائلة/أهل البيت	upset (v)	يزعج/يضايق

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

come true	يتحقق/يصبح حقيقيًا	lead a different life	يعيش حياة مختلفة
find his fortune	يبحث عن حظه	make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
from now on	من الآن فصاعدًا	my heart was set on	كان قلبى موجهًا نحو
in truth	فى الواقع	worth the effort	يستحق الجهد
break into	يقتحم	care for/about	يهتم بـ



Great Expectations Exercises

Chapter (4)

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analysing • Evaluating • Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The teacher made it known that from now ...., she will not tolerate any lateness to class.

a) on b) over c) upon d) then

2 Everyone believed that Henry had killed his wife, but without .... nothing could be done about it.

a) groove b) examination c) belief d) proof

3 The carpenter's thumb began to swell after he hit it with a ....

a) humour b) hammer c) hammock d) hamstring

4 It really .... my wife when my son lost his job.

a) pleased b) upset c) excited d) cheered

5 A fitness plan will be .... the effort and making it a team effort adds excitement.

a) deserved b) equal c) worse d) worth

6 He had always .... his heart on a career in the fine arts.

a) set b) sat c) taken d) given

7 Second language students sometimes have unrealistic .... about how much they will learn in a 3-month course.

a) respirations b) aspiration c) expectations d) memories

8 He was a great public .... and gave land for building the sea wall.

a) benefit b) beneficial c) beneficent d) benefactor

9 No one will .... she killed her husband; they all think she is so sweet.

a) suspect b) respect c) trust d) tell

10 I think you .... very wisely when you told the police about that.

a) rehearsed b) acted c) trained d) believed

11 The immune system is the body's defense against .... by germs.

a) attach b) relief c) attack d) treatment

12 The karate player .... herself during training and she couldn't take part in the tournament.

a) puzzled b) inspected c) trained d) injured

13 After 40 years, my uncle's dream of owning a home .... true.

a) went b) came c) made d) travelled

14 Someone broke .... my car and stole the radio and the mobile I left there.

a) into b) at c) of d) up

15 .... of people lined the streets of the city as the Queen's car passed by.

a) Flocks b) Herds c) Crowds d) Armies

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

إجابة هذه التدريبات موجودة بنهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The hardworking clerk was .... from head director to manager in a few years.
a) developed b) offered c) risen d) promoted

2 Most of the country's industry is .... in the north.
a) related b) appeared c) concentrated d) interested

3 The young actress is very .... about her clothes and chooses the best of them.
a) particular b) private c) general d) public

4 All the bad young men .... off when they heard the police siren.
a) cleaned b) cleared c) crawled d) attacked

5 Humans believe that they are the only creatures to have the power of ....
a) cause b) explanation c) reason d) justification

6 Ibrahim .... for the company since he left university.
a) was working b) is working
c) works d) has been working

7 The supermarket .... at 10:00 in the morning every day.
a) is opening b) opens c) open d) opened

8 There's no point leaving now; the film .... by the time we reach the cinema.
a) was starting b) going to start c) will have started d) had started

9 This cake .... wonderful!
a) tastes b) is tasting c) taste d) tasteful

10 My father didn't .... live in a big city.
a) used to b) use to c) used d) get used to

11 I don't think that Samy has .... travelled on a plane.
a) yet b) never c) still d) ever

12 Tamer .... to be falling asleep at his desk.
a) appears b) was appearing c) is appearing d) appear

13 Jehan .... already cleaned the kitchen by the time her mother got home.
a) has b) was c) had d) is

14 He .... a bath when the doorbell rang.
a) had b) is having c) has d) was having

15 Ramy is my closest friend - we .... each other for a long time.
a) have been knowing b) have known c) knew d) know

Unit 4 Al-Adwaa Test

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 After his long day at work, Omar looks too .... to do any further work.
a) retreated b) relaxed c) pleased d) exhausted

2 It is usually .... that girls are less aggressive than boys.
a) advertised b) supposed c) altered d) perplexed

3 Experts and doctors say that physical and emotional .... are closely linked.
a) sorrow b) exercise c) well-being d) fight

4 Students have a/an .... between German, French, Spanish or Italian in secondary schools.
a) choice b) distraction c) obligation d) fiction

5 We were each given a specific topic to talk about. The antonym of the adjective "specific" is ....
a) particular b) private c) common d) special

6 Passengers were asked to .... their own suitcases before they were put on the plane.
a) deny b) damage c) identify d) clarify

7 The operation enabled the wounded soldier to lead a/an .... life.
a) extinction b) abnormal c) strange d) normal

8 Father is so busy at work that he can't .... time for exercise.
a) do b) make c) give d) devise

9 He recommended .... studying a foreign language if I wanted a better job.
a) I starting b) should I start c) that I start d) to start

10 .... to the film theatre, then try Italian restaurant.
a) I suggested going b) What about going c) How about going d) Let's go

11 Shall we invite Yasser to the party? The speaker is making a/an ....
a) offer b) suggestion c) request d) apology

12 It's getting late. I suggest we .... a taxi.
a) take b) taking c) to take d) could take

13 Ola isn't happy. I .... at her.
a) should have laughed b) shouldn't have laughed
c) should laugh d) ought to laugh

14 Do you fancy .... out tonight?
a) go b) to go c) going d) to going

15 "Why didn't you come to my party?" The speaker is ....
a) offering b) asking about reason c) suggesting d) advising

16 Which one of the following is grammatically correct?
a) Let's call Ahmed and ask him what he thinks about it.
b) What about calling Ahmed and ask him what he thinks about it?
c) How about calling Ahmed and ask him what he thinks about it?
d) I suggested calling Ahmed and ask him what he thinks about it.

17 Choose the correct punctuation mark:
What an interesting film ....
a) quotation mark b) question mark c) question tag d) exclamation mark

18 The .... can be used in compound words, to link words to prefixes, and also as a way to show word breaks.
a) apostrophe b) comma c) hyphen d) dash

19 The goal of a/an .... paragraph is to convince another person to change, or at least think about changing their opinion about something.
a) expository b) narrative c) persuasive d) descriptive

20 Which of these is not a medium for an email?

a) Intranet. b) Internet. c) Extranet. d) Paper.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There are many alternative[1] energy sources: wind power, solar[2] power, geothermal[3] power, and hydroelectric[4] power are some examples.

Wind Power. Wind power is the ability to capture[5] the wind in a way to propel the blades of wind turbines. When the blades rotate[6], this movement is switched into electrical current with the help of an electrical generator. Wind towers are built on wind farms, and usually there are several towers built together. There are several advantages of this energy source: there is no pollution, it never runs out, farming and grazing[7] can still take place on the same land as the wind turbines, and wind farms can be built anywhere. One disadvantage is that you need a consistent[8] wind to get enough power. If the wind speed decreases, less electricity is produced. Large wind farms can also have a negative visual effect on people who live nearby.

Solar Power. Solar energy is used for heating, cooking, making electricity, and even taking salt out of saltwater so the water can be drinkable and used for additional purposes that do not need the salt. Solar power uses sunlight that hits the solar thermal panels[9] to convert[10] the sunlight to heat either air or water.

Other methods of using solar power include simply opening up blinds or shades and letting the sunlight pass into the room or using some type of mirror to heat water and produce steam. One advantage of solar power is that it is renewable. As long as there is sunlight, you will be able to harness the power from it. There is also no pollution and it can be used efficiently to heat and light things. You can see the benefits of solar energy in heating swimming pools, spas[11], and water tanks in many cities across the country.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 Why is wind power considered a renewable source of energy?

a) Because it reduces electricity.
b) Because the towers are built on wind farms.
c) Because it never runs out.
d) Because wind farms can be built anywhere.

22 When is less electricity produced?

a) When the wind speed decreases.
b) When the wind speed increases.
c) When solar power is produced.
d) When solar power increases.

23 What is solar energy used for?

a) Cooking and taking salt out of saltwater.
b) Heating.
c) Making electricity.
d) All of these.

24 On what condition is solar power renewable?

a) As long as there is sunlight.
b) As long as there is air.
c) As long as there are solar panels.
d) As long as there is petrol.

25 One of the following isn't an advantage of wind power.

a) It lasts forever.
b) It doesn't pollute the environment.
c) It needs a constant wind to get enough power.
d) Wind farms can be built anywhere.

26 The underlined word "propel" means ....

a) drive b) prepare c) pull d) switch

27 What is the best title to the passage?

a) The wind and solar power as renewable energy
b) How can we use the wind power
c) The wind power as a cheap source of energy
d) Why many people use the solar power

28 The antonym of the word "nearby" is ....

a) close b) neighbouring c) immediate d) distant



(1) بديل (2) شمسي (3) حراري أرضي (4) كهرومائي (5) يستحوذ على (6) تدور (7) رعي (8) مناسب (9) ألواح حرارية (10) يحول (11) عيون مائية

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Henry attended a friend's birthday party today. It was an army-themed[1] party. The moment he arrived, he had to give a salute[2] at the door entrance. He was asked to report his name and purpose of visit.

"What is your name, soldier?"

"Henry, sir!"

"And why are you here?"

"To attend Matthew's birthday party, sir!" Once the 'commander'[3] was satisfied[4] with Henry's answer, he was allowed to enter.

The first activity was a camouflage competition[5]. There were tubes of camouflage face paint available. Everyone had to apply it on the face like a real soldier. Henry had never done anything like this before so it took him a rather long time to get the hang of it. He realised that putting on different shades of green and black was much more effective. Once everyone was ready, their camouflage had to be tested. A camouflage netting[6] was placed in front of each person and the person who was the most well-hidden behind the netting was the winner. Surprisingly, Henry won the second prize.

Once the competition was over, there was a short break for lunch. After that, the children were provided with toy guns and army print sunglasses. They formed two teams and played army war games. The two groups had a 'war' and fought to see who would emerge victorious[7]. It was chaotic[8] as the children were running everywhere and shooting and shouting. It sounded like a real war.

The last thing before the party ended was the cake cutting. Matthew had a mango sponge cake. The children sang the birthday song and Matthew blew out the birthday candles. That day, Henry had tremendous[9] fun. He really enjoyed the camouflage competition. He had fun applying the gooey cream[10] on his face and looking like a real soldier.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

29 The best title to the passage is ....

a) Camouflage is a good activity **b)** Henry's prize was a surprise
c) An enjoyable army-themed party **d)** The children's war at the party

30 According to the passage, which of the following is not true?

a) Henry had to salute before he could enter the party.
b) Henry had to shout his name before he could enter the party.
c) Henry had to put on camouflage before he could enter the party.
d) Henry had to report his purpose of visit before he could enter the party.

31 Why did Henry take a long time to apply the camouflage paint to his face?

a) He wanted to look like a real soldier. **b)** There were many tubes of camouflage paint.
c) He had never done it before.
d) He wanted to find the most effective way of doing it.

32 The winner of the camouflage competition ....

a) looked like a real soldier **b)** used only tubes of black and green paint
c) covered his face with a camouflage netting
d) concealed himself the best behind the camouflage netting

33 What does "it" refer to?

a) The war game. **b)** The two teams.
c) The children at the party. **d)** The shouting of the children.

34 Henry had tremendous fun at the party because ....

a) he liked dressing up as a soldier **b)** he liked the mango sponge cake
c) he liked singing the birthday song **d)** he liked behaving like a soldier in the game

35 The synonym of the word "gooey" is ....

a) faint **b)** bright **c)** bad **d)** sticky

(1) نو طابع عسكرى (2) تحية (3) قائد (4) راضٍ عن (5) مسابقة تخف (6) شباك (7) منتصر (8) فوضوى (9) هائل (10) وضع كريم لزج

36 The party really was ....

a) in an army camp
b) in Matthew's house
c) in the nearby school
d) in Henry's neighbour's house

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d:

37 Many people deal with stress every day. Work, family issues, health concerns, and financial obligations are parts of everyday life that commonly contribute to heightened stress levels.

a) كثير من النـاس يتعاملون مع الحيرة كل يوم. العمل، وقضايا الأسـرة، والمخاوف الصحية، والحقوق المالية هـى أجزاء من الحياة اليومية تساهم بشكل عام فى ارتفاع مستويات التوتر.

b) كثير من الناس يتعاملون مع التوتر كل يوم. العمل، وقضايا الأسرة، والمخاوف الصحية، الحقوق المالية هى أجزاء من الحياة اليومية تساهم بشكل عام فى خفض مستويات التوتر.

c) كثيـر من الناس يتعاملون مع التوتر كل يوم. العمل، وقضايا الأسـرة، والمخاوف الصحيـة، والالتزامات المالية هى أجزاء من الحياة اليومية تساهم بشكل عام فى ارتفاع مستويات التوتر.

d) كثيـر مـن الناس يتعاملون مع التوتر كل يوم. العمل، وقضايا المرأة، والمخاوف الصحية، والالتزامات المالية هى أجزاء من الحياة اليومية لا تساهم بشكل عام فى ارتفاع مستويات التوتر.

38 Sports should be a major part of the school curriculum. Sports are important because it helps to teach various skills to students like leadership, patience, teamwork, and social skills.

a) كان يجـب أن تكون الرياضة جزءًا رئيسيًـا من المناهج الدراسـية؛ والرياضة مهمة لأنها تسـاعد على تعليم مهـارات مختلفة للطلاب مثل القيادة والصبر وجهد الفريق والمهارات الاجتماعية.

b) يجب أن تكون الرياضة جزءًا رئيسيًـا من المناهج الدراسية؛ والرياضة مهمة لأنها تساعد على تعليم مهارات مختلفة للطلاب مثل القيادة والصبر والعمل الجماعى والمهارات الاجتماعية.

c) يجب أن تكون الرياضة جزءًا فرعيًـا من المناهج الدراسـية؛ والرياضة مهمة لأنها تسـاعد على تعليم مهارات مختلفة للطلاب مثل القيادة والمثابرة والعمل الجماعى والمهارات الاجتماعية.

d) يجب أن تكون الرياضة جزءًا رئيسيًـا من المناهج الدراسـية؛ والرياضة مهمة لأنها تسـاعد على تعليم مواهب مختلفة للطلاب مثل التقيد والصبر والعمل الجماعى والمهارات الاجتماعية.

39 شـهدت مصر طفرة كبيرة فى المشـروعات القومية، فعلى مدى السنوات القليلة الماضية دشنت الحكومة المصرية العديد من المشروعات التى تسهم فى رفع مستوى الاقتصاد وزيادة الدخل القومى المصرى عبر جذب الاستثمارات الأجنبية.

a) Egypt has witnessed a great leap in national projects. Over the past few years, the Egyptian government has launched many projects that contribute to raising the level of the economy and increasing the Egyptian national income by attracting foreign investments.

b) Egypt has witnessed a great leap in national projects. Over the past many years, the Egyptian government has launched many projects that attribute to raising the level of the economy and increasing the Egyptian national income by attracting foreign investments.

c) Egypt has witnessed a great leap in national projects. Over the past few years, the Egyptian government has rebuilt many projects that contribute to raising the level of the economy and increasing the Egyptian national income by attracting strange investments.

d) Egypt has witnessed a great pull in national projects. Over the past few years, the Egyptian government has launched many projects that contribute to raising the level of the economy and increasing the Egyptian national income by attracting strange investments.

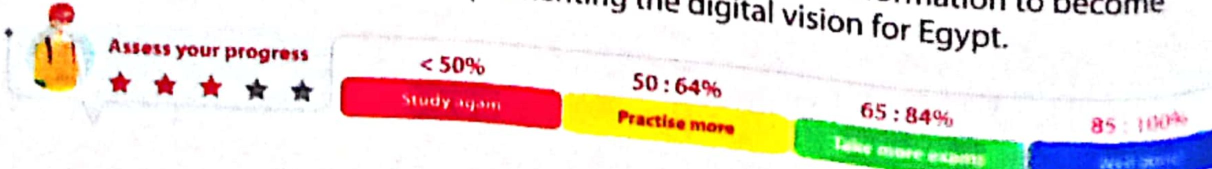
40 تسعى مبادرة مصر الرقمية إلى تمكين الجيل القادم من الشباب المصرى خريجى كليات الهندسة والحاسبات والمعلومات ليصبحوا قادة على مستوى عالمى قادرين على تنفيذ الرؤية الرقمية لمصر.

a) The Digital Egypt initiative seeks to retrain the next generation of young Egyptian graduates from the colleges of engineering, computers and information to become world-class leaders capable of implementing the digital sight for Egypt.

b) The Digital Egypt initiative seeks to empower the next generation of young Egyptian undergraduates from the colleges of engineering, computers and information to become world-class leaders capable of implementing the digital sight for Egypt.

c) The Digital Egypt initiative seeks to empower the next generation of young Egyptian graduates from the colleges of engineering, computers and information to become world-class leaders unable of implementing the digital vision for Egypt.

d) The Digital Egypt initiative seeks to empower the next generation of young Egyptian graduates from the faculties of engineering, computers and information to become world-class leaders capable of implementing the digital vision for Egypt.



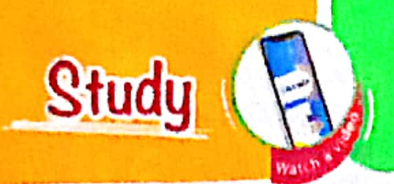
Unit 5

The future of work



Objectives

- **Reading** : Text messages between a student and an IT Support worker
- **Writing** : A letter of application for a job; An email asking for clarification about study tips
- **Listening** : A podcast about the future of work
- **Speaking** : A discussion about new ways of studying
- **Language** : Verb patterns with the gerund and infinitive; Phrasal verbs
- **Life skills** : Problem solving





Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

catch up (v)	يلحق بـ/يجاري
install (v) (ed)	يركب/يثبت
join (v) (ed)	ينضم إلى/يلتحق بـ
leave (v)	يغادر/يترك
look into (v) (ed)	يفحص
mute (v) (d) (adj) *	يكتم صوتًا/مكتوم الصوت
share (v) (d)	يشارك
switch on/off (v) (ed)	يشغل/يطفئ جهازًا
turn up (v) (ed)	يرفع مستوى الصوت
turn down (v) (ed)	يخفض مستوى الصوت

* In online meetings, it is often best to mute your computer when you are not speaking.

Vocabulary on Reading

chat (v) (ted) (n)	يدردش/دردشة
create (v) (d)	ينتج/يبدع
definitely (adv)	بالتأكيد
document (n)	مستند/وثيقة
environment (n)	البيئة
instant (adj)	عاجل/فوري
Internet connection (n)	اتصال بالإنترنت
IT (Information Technology) (n)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات
meeting (n)	اجتماع/مقابلة
messaging (n)	مراسلة/تبادل الرسائل
microphone (n)	ميكروفون
project (n)	مشروع
realise (v) (d)	يدرك
respond (v) (ed)	يرد/يستجيب
screen (n)	شاشة
software (n)	برمجيات/برامج تشغيل
sound (n)	صوت
support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/يدعم
technical (adj)	فني
virtual (adj)	افتراضي

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

advent (n)	ظهور/وجود
analyse (v) (d)	يحلل
check-out (n)	الدفع
communicate (v) (d)	يتواصل
efficient (adj)	كفء
emerge (v) (d)	يظهر/ ينشأ
employee (n)	موظف
fade out (v) (d)	يخفت
independently (adv.)	بشكل مستقل
interviewee (n)	المحاور (من يجرى معه الحوار)

motivated (adj)	متحفز	reliable (adj)	موثوق به
personal (adj)	شخصى	repetitive (adj)	تكرارى/ متكرر
predictable (adj)	متوقع /قابل للتنبؤ	trend (n)	موجة/اتجاه
prediction (n)	تنبؤ	user-friendly (adj)	سهل الاستخدام
range (n)	نطاق/ مجال	workplace (n)	مكان العمل

Workbook Vocabulary

application (n)	طلب التحاق/تطبيق إلكترونى	plug (v) (ged) (n)	يقوم بتوصيل جهاز/قابس كهربى
apply (v) (y-ied)	يتقدم بطلب	position (n)	وظيفة/موضع
available (adj)	متاح/متوافر	race (n)	سباق
consequence (n)	نتيجة	role (n)	دور
decline (n) (v) (d)	هبوط/انخفاض/يهبط/يقل	stressful (adj)	مجهِد
download (v) (ed)	يحمل من الإنترنت	suited (adj)	مناسب/ملائم
headphones (n)	سماعات الرأس	tool (n)	أداة
human contact (n)	اتصال بشرى	type (n)	نوع
interpersonal (adj)	خاص بالتعامل مع الآخرين	version (n)	نسخة/إصدار
level (n)	مستوى	video conference	مؤتمر عبر الفيديو
online (adj) (adv.)	عبر الإنترنت	welfare (n)	رعاية/رفاهية

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

by accident	بالصدفة	have control over	يمتلك السيطرة على
do jobs	يقوم بالأعمال	stay in touch	يبقى على اتصال
have a meeting with	لديه اجتماع مع	take control of	يتحكم فى
apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	hear from	يتلقى خبرًا من
consequences to	نتائج لـ	suited to	مناسب/ملائم لـ
decline in	انخفاض/هبوط فى	type of	نوع من

Verbs & nouns special Collocations

catch up with your work	تلحق بعملك	mute your microphone	يكتم صوت الميكروفون
install software	يثبت برمجيات	share your screen	تشارك شاشتك مع
join a virtual meeting	ينضم إلى اجتماع افتراضى	switch your camera on/off	تشغل/تطفئ كاميرتك
leave a virtual meeting	يغادر اجتماعًا افتراضيًا	turn the sound up/down	يرفع/يخفض صوت
look into possibilities	يستطلع الاحتمالات		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
communicate	يتواصل	communication	تواصل	communicative	تواصلي
create	ينتج/يبدع	creation	إنتاج/إبداع	creative	مبدع/إبداعي
decline	ينخفض/يهبط	decline	انخفاض/تراجع	declining	منخفض/متراجع
employ	يوظف	employment employee employer	توظيف موظف صاحب عمل	employed unemployed	موظف عاطل/غير موظف
install	يركب/يثبت	installation	تركيب/تثبيت	installed	مثبت
predict	يتنبأ بـ	prediction	تنبؤ	predictable	يمكن التنبؤ به
realise	يدرك/يحقق	realisation	إدراك/تحقيق	realisable	يمكن إدراكه/تحقيقه
respond	يرد/يستجيب	response	رد/استجابة	responsive	استجابي
suit	يناسب/يلائم	suitability	مناسبة/ملاءمة	suited suitable	مناسب/ملائم مناسب/ملائم

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
decline	ينخفض/يهبط	decrease/drop	increase/develop	يزيد/يتطور
definitely	بالتأكيد	certainly/absolutely	doubtfully/indefinitely	بارتياب
install	يثبت	set up	remove/uninstall	يزيل/يلغي تثبيت
instant	فوري	immediate/present	delayed	مؤجل
join	ينضم الى	enter	leave/avoid	يترك/يتجنب
realise	يدرك	comprehend/recognise	misunderstand	يسيء الفهم
respond	يستجيب/يرد	react/behave	neglect	يهمل
stressful	مجهد	annoying/nerve-racking	relaxing	مريح
suited	مناسب	appropriate/suitable	improper/unsuitable	غير مناسب
welfare	رفاهية	prosperity/well-being	misery/depression	بؤس/اكتئاب

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Using the internet, all the branches of the bank are linked to the .... database at the head office.
   a) in line b) airline c) online d) offline
2. Experts warn us not to .... programmes from websites that you are unfamiliar with.
   a) repair b) install c) detect d) design
3. The app is a small programme you can .... from the Appstore to your desktop.
   a) download b) create c) innovate d) reload
4. All people have to pay a fixed membership fee to .... the local health club.
   a) enroll b) attach c) connect d) join
5. One of the advantages of a laptop is having a wireless internet .... that enables you to connect to the internet everywhere.
   a) contact b) attach c) tie d) connection

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)

Carla : Hi, can you help us?

IT Support : Yes, sure. Can you tell me what the problem is?

Carla : Sure. We wanted to have a virtual meeting with a group of students in Egypt for a project. We installed(1) the software for the meeting and that was fine. Everyone joined(2) the meeting. We turned our microphones on and switched our cameras on. We could hear and see everyone without any problems for the first five minutes.

IT Support : OK and what happened then?

Carla : Then, I shared my screen and everything stopped working.

IT Support : So the other students couldn't hear or see you and you couldn't see or hear them either?

Carla : That's right. We were talking to them, but they stopped responding(3). It was clear that they couldn't hear us. We turned our sound up, but it seems that they still couldn't hear anything we said or see us. We can only see the document(4) I wanted to show them now.

IT Support : Did you mute your microphone?

Carla : No, I didn't touch my microphone(5). It was still on.

IT Support : Did you check your internet connection(6)?

Carla : Yes, I did. The internet connection is fine.

IT Support : That's strange. Are you definitely(7) still in the meeting? Could it be that you left the meeting and you didn't realise(8) it?

Carla : I'll check. Oh, you're right. I closed the meeting by accident! Sorry.

IT Support : Don't worry. It happens ☺ Maybe you can look into(9) other ways of staying in touch with the students during your meetings if there are technical(10) problems, like email or instant messaging.

Carla : Yeah, good idea. Thanks for your help. I'll go and email the students.

(1) يثبت
(2) ينضم إلى
(3) يرد/يستجيب
(4) وثيقة/مستند
(5) ميكروفون
(6) اتصال بالإنترنت
(7) بالتأكيد
(8) يدرك
(9) يفحص
(10) فني

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

IT Support Forum

Nevine: I've bought some new headphones[1] and have plugged them in, but now I can't mute my microphone and everyone can hear me all the time.

Hana : I'm having problems with a video conference[2] call. I can't hear anything when people are talking to me. I have just downloaded[3] and installed the latest version[4] of the software but nothing is happening. I have tried switching off the computer and turning it on again. Any other ideas?

Mazin : I need to show someone what is on my computer when we're on a call, but I don't know how to share my screen.

Ziad : There is a long delay when I'm playing games online[5] and I can never keep up with my friends. I always lose the races[6] in the games. Do I need to look into getting a better internet connection?

Malak : When I join a meeting online, I can't turn on my camera. So people can hear me, but they can't see me.

(1) سماعات الرأس
(2) مؤتمر عبر الفيديو
(3) يحمل من الإنترنت
(4) نسخة/إصدار
(5) عبر الإنترنت
(6) سباقات

Listening Text (1)

Salma : Hello and welcome to my podcast where we look at the world of work and the future. I'm joined now by Mina Mahmoud who looks at future trends[1] in the workplace. Welcome, Mina.

Mina : Thank you, Salma.

Salma : So, what do you think is the most important future trend in work we need to know bout?

Mina : I'd say the biggest change will be that companies will stop seeing work as something everyone does in the same place and at the same time. A lot of employees were already working from home in 2020 and 2021. Employees will carry on with this and even more workers will join them. The research shows that home workers are very efficient[2] and working from home is good for the environment. We also know that employees are more motivated[3] if they decide their own schedule.

Salma : Does this mean that employees will have more control over other areas of their working lives? Will more people start working on their own rather than in teams?

Mina : Yes. More companies who are already expecting their employees to work independently[4] will continue doing this and others will soon catch up. Giving employees more responsibility encourages them to work harder. They enjoy making more decisions on their own and deciding how they work.

Salma : Do you think that employees will use technology to help them work more efficiently?

Mina : I think we'll definitely stop sending emails in the next ten or twenty years and use other ways of communicating.

Salma : Why?

Mina : The research suggests people think virtual meetings are a more effective way of solving problems and brainstorming ideas than sending and reading emails. So, these ways of communicating are likely to become more popular and emails will become less popular.

Salma : That seems to be logical, I'll definitely remember to invite our team to a virtual meeting instead of sending them a hundred emails from now on!

(1) اتجاهات
(2) كفء
(3) متحفز
(4) بشكل مستقل

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

Presenter : Welcome to 'The Working World' where we are discussing the future of the labour market. Our guests today are Thomas Edwards and Omar Hamed.

Guests : Thank you.

Presenter : Let's start with you, Omar. You have been studying the trends in the workplace for many years now. What do you want to tell young people about the future of work?

Omar : Well, after analysing current job offers and interviewing business owners, we concluded that Artificial Intelligence will have a significant impact on the type of jobs in the future.

Presenter : Now, Thomas, I think you feel quite strongly about Artificial Intelligence.

Thomas : Yes, I do. Artificial Intelligence, or 'AI' as we call it, promises to destroy jobs. One study found that 82% of areas in Europe and North America experienced a decrease in jobs as a result of using AI.

Omar : Yes, but although this study appeared to show a decline in jobs, it failed to tell us there was an increase of 60% in jobs in areas where AI could not be used. Plus, an earlier study tells us that only 5% of jobs can be completely substituted by machines.

Presenter : So, what jobs will be less affected by AI?

Omar : It is clear that jobs that need to use interpersonal skills are a lot safer from being substituted by AI.

Presenter : You both seem to be suggesting that the job market appears to be changing. Should we risk using AI if it is going to cause so many problems?

Thomas : Change has always happened and always will. Most of our ancestors used to work in agriculture but machines reduced the demand for farmers but increased the need for computer programmers.

Presenter : What new jobs are expected to be common in the future?

Omar : Well, teaching jobs appear to be an area that will be less affected by AI and technology in general, as well as jobs in medicine, so nurses and doctors.

Presenter : Nurses and doctors? Why is that?

Thomas : Well, the population of the world is getting older and as more people live longer, they will need more health care.

Presenter : Ah. That makes sense! What impact would this have?

Omar : Well, it is expected that by 2030, an average of 600 million people worldwide will have to change careers or learn new skills.

Presenter : Interesting.... And what are some of these new skills, Thomas?

Thomas : They need to learn about new technology and speak different languages. With the internet we are working much more globally now and we need to speak to people all over the world. I would consider studying English to a very high level and perhaps another language too.

Presenter : OK, we're almost out of time. Can you give our listeners one last piece of advice, Omar?

Omar : First of all, my advice would be not to worry. If you are at school now, do not give up the idea of your dream job. But remember you may need to learn a few new things to do that job in the future.

Presenter : Thank you. And how about you Thomas?

Thomas : Although I don't often agree with Omar, I do on this point. Adapting is the key and you have to continue learning new things. This is more important now than ever.

Presenter : Well, thank you both very much for sharing your advice and giving us all a better idea of the world of work in the future.

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The government is paying great attention to .... education especially in the field of electronics.
a) general b) exceptional c) electrical d) technical

2 If an athlete makes a false start, the .... must be restarted in order to make it fair.
a) game b) competition c) race d) league

3 I'm worried as my friend didn't .... to any of my emails for a week now.
a) attack b) respond c) retake d) repay

4 A group of police officers are .... into the disappearance of two children in the poor district.
a) looking b) putting c) informing d) realising

5 Voice-recognition .... takes your speech and turns it into text.
a) hardware b) software c) machinery d) training

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

catch up يلحق بـ/ يجاري
- to improve and reach the same standard as other people in your class, group

install يركب/ يثبت
- to add new software to a computer so that it is ready to be used

join ينضم إلى/يلتحق بـ
- to become a member of an organisation, society, or group

look into يفحص
- to try to find out the truth about a problem, crime in order to solve it

mute يكتم صوتًا
- to make the sound of something quieter, or make it disappear completely

switch on يشغل جهازًا
- to turn on a machine, light, radio, etc. using a switch

turn up يرفع صوتًا
- to turn a switch on a machine such as an oven, or a radio so that it produces more heat, or sound

Notes on Vocabulary

1	**decline** ينخفض/يهبط (تستخدم مع الأرقام والكميات ومستوى الشيء)	to decrease – used with numbers or amounts, or about the level or standard of something • The standard of living in many countries has declined. • Salaries have declined by around 4.5%.
	diminish يضعف/يقل (فى الحجم أو الأهمية)	to become smaller or less important • The politician's influence has diminished with time.
2	**install** ١. يركب جهازًا ويعده للتشغيل ٢. يثبت برنامجًا فى جهاز كمبيوتر أو تليفون محمول	• Security cameras have been installed in the city centre. • We've installed new anti-virus software.
	fix ١. يثبت شيئًا فى شىء آخر ليبقى مدة طويلة ٢. يصلح	• The shelves should be fixed to the wall by a carpenter. • He's outside fixing the brakes of the car.
3	**interview** مقابلة شخصية (لوظيفة) مقابلة (إذاعية/تليفزيونية/صحفية)	• I've got an interview for a job as an interpreter.
	appointment موعد/ميعاد (ترتيب لرؤية شخص فى وقت معين)	• I have an appointment to see my lawyer next Saturday.
	conference مؤتمر	• The president arrived for a conference with local officials.
	meeting مقابلة/اجتماع	• They organised meetings on a number of important political issues.
4	**communicate (with)** يتواصل/يتفاهم	• Most companies communicate with each other using English.
	contact يتصل بـ	• You can always contact me on my home number.
	connect يصل/يربط بين شيئين	• Cairo metro connects many parts of Cairo together.
5	**download** يحمل (ينزل معلومات من الإنترنت)	• You can download this software for free.
	upload يرفع الملفات إلى الإنترنت	• It might take a while for this to upload.
	load يشحن/يحمل شحنة	• It took an hour to load the van.
	unload يفرغ الحمولة	• The driver unloaded some boxes from the back of the truck.

position

يستخدم (position) بأكثر من معنى في اللغة الإنجليزية منها:

- Because of my broken leg, I struggled up into a sitting position. وضع
- I'm not sure what I would do if I were in your position. = situation موقف
- Our hotel was in a central position near Tahrir Square. = location موقع
- 6 Our headmaster took the position that music classes are unimportant. = attitude موقف/رأي
- Bill took up his new position as Director in October.= job/post وظيفة
- The position of women in society should be promoted. = importance/role مكانة
- Samia finished the race in third position and won a medal. = rank مركز

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

Did you notice these notes while reading?

- Can you tell me what the problem is?

لاحظ استخدام صيغة غير المباشر بعد (Can you tell me)

- but they stopped responding

لاحظ استخدام (verb +ing) بعد الفعل (stop) بمعنى يتوقف عن

- I'm having problems with a video conference call.

لاحظ استخدام الفعل (have) في زمن المضارع المستمر لأنه لم يستخدم بمعنى الملكية

- I have tried switching off the computer and turning it on again.

لاحظ استخدام (verb +ing) بعد الفعل (try) بمعنى يجرب

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many websites allow visitors to .... videos and pictures from their computers.
   a) load b) upload c) download d) unload
2. People use more than words when they .... with each other.
   a) connect b) contact c) attach d) communicate
3. It leaves a very bad impression if you're late for a job ....
   a) interview b) appointment c) seminar d) conference
4. The official position was that of refusing to talk to terrorists. The word "position" in this sentence is similar to ....
   a) place b) post c) opinion d) location
5. My grandmother's health has been .... since she had a heart attack.
   a) declining b) decreasing c) diminishing d) vanishing

Check the answers at the end of the book



Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analysing • Evaluating • Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Workbook Vocabulary & Vocabulary Notes

1 The technician is coming tomorrow to .... the new washing machine.
a) support b) join c) install d) attach

2 The two friends usually have a .... over coffee during the break at the office.
a) speech b) chat c) lecture d) party

3 You shouldn't sign any............... with items left blank or containing anything you don't understand.
a) documents b) receipts c) recipes d) subscriptions

4 Experts and doctors warn us that a dirty .... is a breeding ground for germs.
a) trend b) position c) department d) environment

5 The company staff have regular .... to discuss achievements and problems.
a) interviews b) lectures c) meetings d) views

6 A good director is the one who appreciates his .... efforts and always encourages them.
a) employees' b) employers' c) consumers' d) buyers'

7 At airports, all .... belongings should be clearly marked with the owner's name.
a) personnel b) personal c) social d) economical

8 The link will allow you to view and .... for current jobs at some companies.
a) comply b) employ c) deploy d) apply

9 The economic depression was a .... time for all of the people in the country.
a) distracted b) stressful c) stressed d) repetitive

10 We believe that all governments should .... and invest in scientific research.
a) report b) respond c) support d) rapport

11 Women have now taken on many .... that were traditionally for men.
a) roles b) rules c) rollers d) rails

12 Although he is nearly forty years old, Ronaldo's fitness .... is better than that of many 20-year-players.
a) quantity b) level c) surface d) number

13 Due to the progress of medical technology, many of cancer .... can now be cured.
a) amounts b) predictions c) types d) levels

14 The government is doing an ambitious .... to modernise the road network.
a) recipe b) method c) way d) project

15 If you miss a lot of classes, it's very difficult to .... up with your work.
a) look b) give c) catch d) get

16 The old singer's popularity has .... since she issued her latest album in 2005.
a) declined b) reduced c) reflected d) diminished

17 The director asked us all to .... our mobile phones before the meeting.
a) plug b) update c) analyse d) mute

18 Our centre offers free .... support for those buying our software.
a) exercising b) technical c) financial d) healthy

19 Scientists cannot accurately predict all the .... of an increase in average temperature.
a) reasons b) beliefs c) consequences d) sounds

20 Kenzy was listening to music through her .... and she couldn't hear her mother calling.
a) headphones b) microphones c) francophone d) recorders

21 The museum website allows you to take a/an .... tour of its various sections.
a) infinite b) walking c) imaginary d) virtual

22 Experts say that internet addiction can affect your .... skills and make you away from your friends.
a) specific b) technological c) interpersonal d) predictable

23 The explorer built the shelter using old wood and plastic – just whatever was ....
a) available b) spare c) empty d) free

24 Unfortunately, the new building is not really .... for wheelchair users.
a) durable b) avoidable c) forcible d) suited

25 Companies can use video .... as a low-cost alternative to travelling for meetings.
a) research b) conference c) hardware d) investigation

26 Cairo University welcomes .... from Arab and African students to study in its different colleges.
a) employees b) applications c) contacts d) reflections

27 Scientists have always warned that hunting led to a marked .... in bird numbers.
a) evidence b) release c) increase d) decline

28 The time my father spent in hospital was a .... time for the whole family.
a) stressful b) relaxing c) soothing d) replying

29 If the director didn't have a secretary to remind him, he wouldn't keep many of his .... with clients.
a) interviews b) seminars c) appointments d) disputes

30 There is no .... solution to the problem of rising pollution. It requires much time and efforts.
a) playful b) crippled c) delayed d) instant

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

31 Don't forget to .... off all the lights before you go to bed.
a) switch b) change c) alter d) accept

32 The situation is so uncertain that it is hard to make a confident ....
a) predict b) prediction c) predicted d) predictable

33 More than fifty people responded to the job advertisement. The verb "respond" is the opposite of the verb ....
a) reply b) remove c) delay d) neglect

34 The young lady touched the wet paint .... accident and spoiled her new dress.
a) in b) of c) by d) with

35 I .... in touch with many of my friends after college.
a) stayed b) sent c) missed d) lost

36 I haven't heard .... my friend since she travelled to Paris months ago.
a) by b) from c) for d) at

37 Unfortunately, the closure إغلاق of the factory left hundreds of local workers ....
a) employ b) employment c) employee d) unemployed

38 Students should be encouraged to .... control of their own learning, rather than just depending on the teacher.
a) take b) give c) make d) do

39 There has been a decline .... the number of people who read paperback books.
a) for b) of c) with d) in

40 The internet provides instant access to an enormous amount of information. The adjective "instant" is similar in meaning to ....
a) future b) delayed c) immediate d) old





Lessons 1 & 2

B Language

Phrasal verbs الأفعال الاصطلاحية

هي الأفعال التي تتكون من فعل يتبعه حرف جر أو ظرف أو الاثنان معا ويتغير معنى الفعل الأصلي مثل:

look ينظر /look for يبحث عن /look after يعتني بـ /look like يشبه

وتنقسم الأفعال الاصطلاحية إلى أفعال تنفصل ويأتي الاسم أو الضمير بين الفعل وحرف الجر مثل:

He turned the light on.

وأفعال لا يمكن فصلها ويأتي الاسم في النهاية مثل: look at the picture

وفي حالة الأفعال التي تنفصل عن حرف الجر لا نستخدم الضمير بعد حرف الجر ولكن نستخدم الاسم فقط لاحظ المثال التالي:

Turn the computer on. ✓
Turn on the computer. ✓
- Turn it on. ✓
- Turn on it. ✗

وهذه أهم الأفعال الاصطلاحية التي يجب على الطالب إتقانها:

Phrasal Verb	Arabic Meaning	Examples
absorbed in	منهمك في	Tareq is absorbed in solving the problem.
accused of	متهم بـ	He was accused of killing his wife.
apply for a job	يتقدم لوظيفة	He can apply for this job.
back somebody up	يساند	My wife backed me up over my decision to quit my job.
believe in	يؤمن بـ	The school believes in letting children learn at their own pace.
block out	يسد/يحجب	Close the windows to block sounds out before you start to meditate.
blow out	ينطفئ الضوء	Make sure the flame in the lamp doesn't blow out. Lighting it isn't easy.
blow up	ينفجر/يفجر	The racing car blew up after it crashed into the fence.
break down	يتعطل	Our car broke down at the side of the highway in the snowstorm.
break down	ينهار	The woman broke down when the police told her that her son had died.
break in	يقتحم مبنى	Somebody broke in last night and stole our jewellery.
break into something	يقتحم بالقوة	The firemen had to break into the room to rescue the children.
bring about	يحدث	The new government wants to bring about many changes in the way the country is run.
bring somebody up	يربي طفلاً	My grandparents brought me up after my parents died.
call on somebody	يزور شخصاً	We called on you last night but you weren't home.

calm down	يهدئ	You are still mad. You need to calm down before you drive the car.
care for	يهتم بـ	Our company supports an organisation that cares for homeless children.
carry on	يستمر	We can carry on our discussion at night.
carry out	ينفذ	Surgeons carry out operations.
catch up with	يلحق بـ	You'll have to run faster than that if you want to catch up with them.
charge with	يتهم بـ	The police arrested him and charged him with armed robbery.
check in	يصل ويسجل فى فندق أو مطار	We will get the hotel keys when we check in.
check out	يغادر فندقًا	You have to check out of the hotel before 11:00 AM.
cheer somebody up	يبهج شخصًا	I brought you some flowers to cheer you up.
come across something	يجد بالصدفة	I came across these old photos when I was tidying the closet.
come apart	ينفصل	The top and bottom come apart if you pull hard enough.
come from someplace	يأتى من (بلد)	He comes from China.
concentrate on	يركز على	Please, concentrate on your work.
consist of	يتكون من	The robot consists of several parts.
contribute to	يشارك فى	That film contributed to the growing awareness of global climate change.
count on	يعتمد على	I am counting on you to make dinner while I am out.
cry out	يصرخ من الخوف أو الألم	We heard someone cry out in the darkness.
cut down	يقلل	Eating less junk food cuts down the risk of getting heart disease.
cut something off	يوقف إمداد	The phone company cut off our phone because we didn't pay the bill.
cut something out	يفصل بالقطع	I cut this ad out of the newspaper.
deal in	يتاجر فى	She set up a successful website that deals in second-hand books.
deal with	يتعامل مع	Hany is very good at dealing with technical problems.
decide on	يقرر	I can't decide on which novel to read.
depend on	يعتمد على	Children usually depend on their mothers.
devote to + v.ing	يكرس	Mother Teresa devoted most of her time to helping people in need.
die down	يهدأ/يخمد	The musicians waited for the applause to die down before starting to play.

die out	ينقرض	Many animal species have died out recently and disappeared forever.
dispose of	يتخلص من	The hospital was fined for not disposing of its waste properly.
do without	يستغنى	We'll have to do without the air-conditioning while they fix it.
dream of	يحلم بـ	He dreamed of becoming a rich and successful businessman.
dress up	يرتدى أجمل الثياب	It's a fancy restaurant so we have to dress up.
drive out	يطرد	Why did the police drive the beggars out of the park and onto the streets?
drop in/by/over	يزور فجاءة	I might drop in/by/over for tea sometime this week.
drop + شخص + off	ينزل شخصًا	I'll drop you off on my way home.

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The building was blown .... by the terrorists.
a) in b) to c) off d) up

2 I need a mechanic. My car .... down.
a) got b) turned c) broke d) switched

3 .... up children is not an easy task.
a) Bringing b) Going c) Cleaning d) Calling

4 He thanked the nurses who had cared .... him.
a) to b) for c) of d) on

5 The report charges cars .... being responsible for half of the century's air pollution problems.
a) to b) on c) for d) with

Check the answers at the end of the book.

Phrasal Verb	Arabic Meaning	Examples
eat in	يأكل داخل المنزل	If you eat in a lot, make sure you don't just heat up frozen meals.
eat out	يأكل فى مطعم	I don't feel like cooking tonight. Let's eat out.
eat up	يلتهم	Profits are being eaten up by the rising costs of running a business.
end up	الوصول إلى قرار نهائى	We ended up buying two flats instead of building a house.
engage in	ينخرط فى	Most of our students are engaged in social and sporting activities.
expose to	يُعرض لـ	It's a good idea to expose young staff to various work environments.

fall down	يقع	The picture that you hung up last night fell down this morning.
fill something in	يملأ استمارة	Please fill in the form with your name, address, and phone number.
find out	يكتشف/يعرف	We don't know where he lives. How can we find out?
focus on	يركز على	Our company has always focused on producing high-end products.
get ahead of	يتقدم على	Good market research helped their company get ahead of the others.
get along/on	يتحابان/يتفقان جيدًا	I was surprised how well my new friend and my brother got along/on.
get away with	يفلت من عقاب	Kamal always gets away with cheating in his tests.
get off	ينزل من مواصلة	We should get off the bus at the next stop.
get off	يحصل على إجازة	How many days do you get off during the New Year holiday period?
get on something	يركب	We're going to freeze out here if you don't let us get on the bus.
get on	يتعامل مع/يساير	Tasneem is a very sweet person and she's very easy to get on with.
get over something	يتغلب على مرض أو مشكلة	I just got over the flu and now my sister has it.
get rid of	يتخلص من	I can't get rid of this headache.
get to	يصل إلى	Take the bus to get to the company easily.
get together	يتقابل	Let's get together for a picnic this weekend.
get through	يحصل على/يجتاز	If we work as a team, we can get through the reports much faster.
get up	ينهض من الفراش	I got up early today to study for my exam.
give in	يستسلم	My father didn't want to go to the theatre, but he finally gave in.
give off	تطلق روائح/تبعث	Coal-powered vehicles give off a lot of damaging atmospheric pollutants.
give something up	يقلع عن	I am trying to give up smoking nowadays.
go after somebody	يطارد	My brother tried to go after the thief in his car.
go after something	يحاول تحقيق	I went after my dream and now I am a published writer.
go off	ينطلق/ينفجر	After we heard the bomb go off, we looked out the window and saw a bus and some cars on fire.

grow up	يكبر/يبلغ	When Galal grows up, he wants to be a pilot.
hand something in	يرسل/يسلم	I have to hand in my essay by Friday.
hang on	ينتظر قليلًا	Hang on while I grab my coat and shoes!
hang up	ينهي مكالمة	He didn't say goodbye before he hung up.
hear about	يعرف	Have you heard anything about the new company our boss is setting up?
hear from	يتلقى أخبارًا من	If you haven't heard back from them by Friday, call them again.
hear of	يسمع عن	Alaa says his cousin is a famous artist, but I've never heard of him.
hold on	ينتظر قليلًا	Please hold on while I transfer you to the Sales Department.

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Thieves .... away with computer equipment worth 30000 pounds.

a) gave b) run c) put d) got

2 Khalid has decided to give .... playing football at the end of this season.

a) up b) out c) off d) in

3 I finally managed to get .... my driving test.

a) up b) over c) through d) rid of

4 Potatoes turn green when exposed .... light.

a) over b) on c) for d) to

5 I don't know how we're going to get .... this problem.

a) to b) over c) up d) through



Phrasal Verb	Arabic Meaning	Examples
impact on/upon	يؤثر على	The drought seriously impacted on every farmer in the district.
impose on	يفرض على	The government has imposed stricter controls on drug companies.
insist on/upon	يصر على	We now insist on payment in advance مقدما from most customers.
interest in	يثير اهتمامًا	The salesman tried to interest me in the higher-priced car.

invest in	يستثمر في	More and more people are investing in the stock market.
involve in	ينغمس في	Even though she tries not to involve herself in disputes, it still happens.
join in	يشارك	My students love to have discussions in class. Even the shy ones join in.
keep away from	يمنع/يبعد عن	If you're trying to lose weight, keep away from sweets and ice-cream.
keep on doing something	يستمر في عمل شيء	Keep on stirring until the liquid comes to a boil.
keep somebody/ something out	يمنع من الدخول	Try to keep the wet dog out of the living room.
known for	مشهور بـ	This company is known for high-quality products and excellent service.
lead to	يؤدي إلى	The latest products will lead to even greater success in the future.
let down	يحبط/يخيب الآمال	The fans hoped to win the cup, but their team let them down.
lie down	يستلقي	We need somewhere for our staff to lie down and relax when they need to.
log in (or on)	يدخل على الإنترنت أو قاعدة بيانات	I can't log in to Facebook because I've forgotten my password.
log out (or off)	يخرج من الإنترنت أو قاعدة بيانات	If you don't log off, somebody could get into your account.
long for	يشتاق إلى	He longed for freedom, but knew he'd always put his responsibilities first.
look after	يعتني بـ	I have to look after my sick grandmother.
look down on somebody	يحتقر/يعتبره أقل شأناً	Ever since we stole that chocolate bar, dad has looked down on me.
look for	يبحث عن	I'm looking for a red dress for the wedding.
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	I'm looking forward to the weekend.
look into something	يفحص/ينظر في	We are going to look into the price of snowboards today.
look something up	يبحث في مرجع أو قاعة بيانات	We can look her phone number up on the Internet.
look up to	يحترم	My little sister has always looked up to me.
make something up	يخترع/يختلق قصة	Dalia made up a story about why she was late.
make up	يسامح كل منهم الآخر	We were angry last night, but we made up at breakfast.

make up for	يعوض	We'll have to make up for lost production due to the problems with machinery.
make somebody up	يستخدم المكياج	My sisters made me up for my graduation party.
make up the mind	يقرر	Have you made up your mind about where to go for your holiday?
name after	يسمى على اسم	The new species of beetle was named after the person who discovered it.
object to	يعترض على	The workers objected to the salary cut and protested against it.

Check Point 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She insists .... having her own bedroom.

a) on b) to c) for d) with

2 A good manager will try to involve everyone .... the decision-making process.

a) on b) with c) in d) about

3 The employees strongly objected .... the terms of the contract بنود العقد.

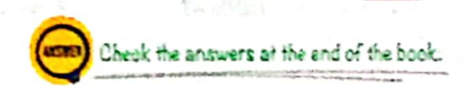
a) on b) for c) with d) to

4 I'm trying to make .... for the time I lost while I was sick.

a) on b) up c) at d) with

5 A degree in English could lead .... a career in journalism.

a) to b) on c) with d) about



Phrasal Verb	Arabic Meaning	Examples
pay somebody back	يرد الدين	Thanks for buying me a ticket. I'll pay you back on Friday.
pay for something	يدفع ثمنًا	That bully will pay for being mean to my little brother.
pick something out	يختار	I picked out three sweaters for you to try on.
pick up	يلتقط	The phone rang and I picked it up.
put something off	يؤجل	We are putting off our trip until January because of the hurricane إعصار.
put something out	يطفئ	The neighbours put the fire out before the firemen arrived.
put up with	يطيق/يتحمل	I don't think I can put up with three small children in the car.

put something on	يرتدي	Don't forget to put on your new earrings for the party.
result in	ينتج عنه	The new tax regulations resulted in many small firms starting up.
run after	يطارد	I ran after the thief, but he was too fast for me and I couldn't catch him.
run into	يقابل بالصدفة	I ran into an old school-friend at the mall.
run over	يدهس	I accidentally ran over your bicycle in the driveway.
run away	يهرب	The child ran away from home and has been missing for three days.
set off	ينطلق/ينفجر	I'll set off early to avoid the traffic.
show off	يستعرض متفاخرًا	He always shows off on his skateboard.
stand for	يرمز إلى	Do the letters 'PR' stand for 'public relations' or 'public relationships'?
stick to something	يستمر فى عمل شىء	You will lose weight if you stick to the diet.
sum up	يلخص	After summing his ideas up, the speaker answered some questions.
switch something off	يغلق	The light is too bright. Could you switch it off?
switch something on	يشغل/يفتح	We heard the news as soon as we switched on the car radio.
take after somebody	يشبه أحد أفراد العائلة	I take after my mother. We are both impatient.
take care of	يعتنى بـ	Who will take care of the children while we are away?
take in	يستوعب/يفهم	He was nodding as if he understood, but he wasn't really taking much in.
take in	يخدع	Don't be taken in by products claiming to help you lose weight in a week.
take in	يمتص	Fish take in oxygen through their gills.
take off	تقلع الطائرة	My plane takes off in five minutes.
take something off	يخلع شيئًا	Take off your shoes and socks and come in the lake!
take up	يشغل حيزًا	He loves chess, but says running the chess club takes up too much time.
tear something up	يمزق	I tore up all the letters he had sent me.
think something over	يفكر مليًا	I'll have to think this job offer over before I make my final decision.

throw something away	يتخلص من	We threw our old furniture away when we moved in the new flat.
turn something down	يخفض الصوت أو القوة	Please turn the TV down while the guests are here.
turn something down	يرفض	I turned the job down because I don't want to move.
turn something off	يغلق	Your mother wants you to turn the TV off and come for dinner.
turn something on	يشغل	It's too dark in here. Let's turn some lights on.
turn over	يقلب	Cook the steak on one side for about 5 minutes and then turn it over.
turn something up	يعلى/يزيد	Can you turn the music up? This is my favourite song.
try something on	يقيس ملابس	I'm going to try these jeans on, but I don't think they will fit.
use something up	يستنفد/يستهلك	The kids used all of the toothpaste up so we need to buy some more.
wear off	يتلاشى	Most of my make-up wore off before I got to the party.
work something out	يحسب	We have to work out the total cost before we buy the house.

Check Point 7 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The thieves ran .... when the alarm went off.

a) into b) after
c) away d) over

2 Although I had enough money, Ali insisted on paying .... the drinks.

a) for b) to
c) of d) at

3 I'm the eldest member of the family and all my younger brothers takes .... me.

a) up b) after
c) on d) in

4 My neighbours take .... their garden very well.

a) in b) off
c) after d) care of

5 I couldn't have a shower as my sister had used .... all the hot water.

a) up b) off
c) of d) in

Check the answers at the end of the book



Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Check your understanding

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You can't leave the hotel without checking ....
a) in b) out c) into d) against

2 This company deals .... buying and selling cars.
a) in b) with c) about d) of

3 He has travelled for a year. I'm looking forward .... hearing from him.
a) on b) for c) to d) about

4 You can count .... Osama. He's very reliable.
a) on b) of c) to d) for

5 I never hear .... Ragab these days. Do you know how he is?
a) about b) of c) from d) on

6 Our boss believes .... the power of positive thinking and teaches us about it.
a) of b) in c) to d) on

7 The terrorists planned to blow .... the bridge but in vain.
a) off b) to c) in d) up

8 When he was a baby, Ahmed was .... up by his grandfather in Sohag.
a) brought b) used c) turned d) made

9 Hany cared .... his mother while she's recovering from her illness.
a) on b) of c) for d) to

10 I'm still not sure if we can play tennis today. It depends .... the weather.
a) to b) on c) for d) in

11 When he was young, he dreamed .... being a famous football player.
a) on b) in c) to d) of

12 Many soldiers were exposed .... dangerous chemicals during the war.
a) to b) on c) of d) in

13 We're concentrating .... opening new markets for our products overseas.
a) to b) of c) on d) with

14 My sister and I used to argue a lot, but now we get .... well.
a) up b) along c) through d) over

15 The company's directors were arrested and charged .... tax evasion تهرب ضريبي.
a) to b) of c) on d) with

16 We trust Ola, so we .... her up when the company accused her of stealing.
a) brought b) made c) turned d) backed

17 When Basma was driving to work, her car .... , so she took a taxi instead.
a) turned down b) used up c) broke down d) fell off

18 Did you call .... Maher and see his new apartment?
a) on b) for c) in d) over

19 After you check .... to the hotel, the porter will take your bags up to your room.
a) out b) on c) onto d) in

20 Do you think going for a walk would .... Sally up? She's still feeling bad about losing her job.
a) make b) bring c) cheer d) back

21 If you're overweight, it's time to ________ on the amount of fatty food, junk food and snack foods that you eat.

a) turn off b) cut down c) get through d) use up

22 Would you mind dealing ________ this customer's inquiry? I'm too busy at the moment.

a) in b) to c) with d) on

23 She can't do ________ her coffee in the morning. It gets her going.

a) without b) with c) to d) well

24 The new government will focus ________ developing the country's industrial sector.

a) over b) in c) to d) on

25 In many developed countries, people get at least four weeks ________ for vacations.

a) for b) of c) off d) on

26 How're you getting ________ with the other people in the office?

a) away b) on c) in d) through

27 Companies advertise in order to interest people ________ their products.

a) in b) to c) of d) about

28 In our staff meetings, we want everyone to join ________ and share their ideas.

a) of b) to c) in d) by

29 Old Sohir longs ________ the days when everything was cheap.

a) about b) to c) with d) for

30 We named our daughter ________ my grandmother, so now there are two Zainabs in our family.

a) with b) after c) for d) before

31 Some people try to impose their views or beliefs ________ other people.

a) to b) about c) in d) on

32 How can I get my son to ________ all his vegetables?

a) bring up b) make up c) eat up d) back up

33 If we work as a team, we can get ________ the reports much faster.

a) through b) up c) to d) over

34 I don't feel like going ________ to a restaurant. Let's stay home and eat ________ tonight.

a) in/out b) out/in c) in/in d) out/out

35 Many languages are dying ________ because fewer and fewer people are learning and speaking them.

a) from b) of c) out d) down

36 After her husband's death, she decided ________ devote more time ________ bringing up her children.

a) to/to b) on/to c) to/on d) to/in

37 During the war, people were driven ________ of their homes and forced to live in refugee camps معسكرات اللاجئين by invading soldiers.

a) on b) over c) off d) out

38 He ran fast to get ahead ________ his competitors, and now he's leading ________ the race.

a) to/of b) of/to c) of/------ d) of/of

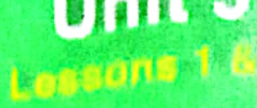
39 The doctor told him to take ________ his shoes and ________ down on the couch.

a) on/turn b) off/lie c) off/turn d) in/get

40 The wounded soldier cried ________ in pain as his friends picked him ________ and put him on a stretcher.

a) of/up b) over/of c) up/out d) out/up

Test Yourself

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 If you press this button on the speaker, you will .... the microphone and no one will hear your speech.
a) mute b) damage c) increase d) double

2 The .... quality of the CD wasn't good, so I didn't enjoy the song.
a) view b) sound c) sight d) image

3 When I go to the movies, I like to sit close to the .... so I book tickets in the front row.
a) actors b) speaker c) screen d) camera

4 Thirty people applied for the job, but the director chose only five ....
a) guards b) employers c) interviewers d) interviewees

5 Most jobs in service industries require people who are efficient at human ....
a) attach b) link c) contact d) method

6 You can download a free trial .... of the anti-virus from the website.
a) vision b) version c) revision d) provision

7 The president is very concerned about the .... of the citizens and he exerts great effort for that.
a) welfare b) luck c) aspect d) view

8 My uncle runs a shop selling carpentry .... such as hammers and saws.
a) seeds b) machines c) tools d) weeds

9 He cut .... the funny picture from the magazine.
a) off b) down c) on d) out

10 Wait until her anger dies ....
a) of b) out c) down d) to

11 You can drop me .... at the end of the street.
a) on b) off c) in d) by

12 It's too bright in here. Let's close the curtains to .... the sunlight.
a) block out b) turn off c) take in d) run away

13 Omar .... the candles on his birthday cake, and then he made a wish.
a) blew up b) turned on c) picked up d) blew out

14 Don't forget to give back the room key when you .... of the hotel.
a) check in b) check out c) ran away d) run out

15 The terrorists were killed when the bomb .... in their truck.
a) blew up b) ran into c) got through d) got to

16 Kathy was born in South Africa, but her parents .... her up in England.
a) turned b) made c) brought d) backed

17 .... can be used in place of a comma, parenthesis, or colon to emphasise the conclusion of a sentence.
a) En dash b) Hyphen c) Em dash d) Semicolon

18 Which of the following is correctly punctuated?
a) Yasser has all the ingredients! minced meat, milk, potatoes, and onions.
b) Yasser has all the ingredients: minced meat, milk, potatoes, and onions.
c) Yasser has all the ingredients" minced meat, milk, potatoes, and onions.
d) Yasser has all the ingredients, minced meat, milk, potatoes, and onions."

19 "Moreover, when tourists come to Egypt, they can visit the places of interest."
What kind of sentence is the one above? A .... sentence.
a) Introductory b) Topic c) Supporting d) Closing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

London is the capital of Great Britain. It is situated in the southeast of England on the River Thames and there are lots of bridges across the Thames. The most famous of these bridges is Tower Bridge. The machinery[1] which draws up[2] the bridge when a ship passes under it is hidden in the two towers. Near Tower Bridge, on the north bank of the Thames there is the Tower of London. It is a big castle, its oldest part, White Tower, dates back[3] to the times of William the Conqueror. Back in history, the tower served as a prison, now it is one of London's main tourist attractions[4]. Tourists are guided by "Beefeaters" in historic uniforms and the Crown Jewels are on display there.

The London home of the Queen is Buckingham Palace where you can see the "Changing of the Guards". The coronation[5] of the Kings and Queens takes place in Westminster Abbey. Near this enormous church, there are the Houses of Parliament, the seat of the British government. They consist of a group of buildings, among them St. Stephen's Tower, the famous clock tower housing Big Ben, one of the world's biggest bells.

Not far from the Houses of Parliament there is Trafalgar Square with Lord Nelson's Column, erected[6] in the memory of Admiral[7] Nelson, who won against the Spanish in the Battle of Trafalgar.

London is also famous for its parks. There is Hyde Park, there is St. James's Park, which is the oldest and there is Regent's Park, which houses the London Zoo. In former[8] times all the parks were royal[9] gardens.

Apart from sightseeing[10], tourists also love shopping in London. You will find the big stores[11] in Oxford Street and the smaller shops in the little side streets.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20 What is Big Ben?
a) A bell. b) A church. c) A clock. d) A clock tower.

21 London is situated ....
a) in the centre of England
b) in the southwest of England
c) in the north of England
d) in the southeast of England

22 What is the river running through London called?
a) The Danube.
b) The Thames.
c) The Seine.
d) The Nile.

23 How many towers has the Tower Bridge got?
a) One.
b) Four.
c) Two.
d) Three.

24 What is the oldest part of the Tower of London?
a) White Tower.
b) Black Tower.
c) Bloody Tower.
d) Hyde Park.

25 What is the greatest attraction at the Tower of London?
a) Wax figures.
b) The Crown Jewels.
c) Paintings of the Kings and Queens.
d) Hyde Park.

(1) الات (2) ترفع (3) يعود إلى (4) موقع سياحي (5) تتويج (6) مقام (7) أميرال (8) سابق (9) ملكي (10) زيارة المعالم (11) محلات تجارية

26 Where does the Queen live?

a) In Westminster Abbey.
b) In Buckingham Palace.
c) In the Houses of Parliament.
d) In the White Tower.

27 Where is the London Zoo?

a) In St. James's Park.
b) In Hyde Park.
c) In Regent's Park.
d) In the White Tower.

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d:

28 The world of work is changing. Technological progress and globalisation are re-shaping the labour market. At the same time, new organisational business models are contributing to the emergence of new forms of work.

a) عالم العمل يتغير حيث يعمل التقدم التكنولوجي والعالمية على إعادة تشكيل سوق العمل. فى الوقت نفسه تساهم نماذج الأعمال الجديدة فى ظهور أشكال عمل جديدة.

b) عالم العمل يتغير حيث يعمل التقدم التكنولوجي والعولمة على إعادة تشكيل سوق العمل. فى الوقت نفسه تساهم نماذج الأعمال الجديدة فى ظهور أشكال عمل جديدة.

c) عالم العمل يتغير حيث يعمل التقدم التكنولوجي والعولمة على إعادة تطوير سوق العمل. فى الوقت نفسه تساهم نماذج الأعمال الجديدة فى ظهور آليات عمل جديدة.

d) عالم العمل يتغير حيث يعمل التقدم التكنولوجي والعولمة على إعادة تشكيل قوة العمل. فى الوقت نفسه تساهم نماذج الأعمال الجديدة فى ظهور أشكال عمل جديدة.

29 According to the World Economic Forum' s report, AI is expected to replace 85 million jobs worldwide by 2025. However, the report says that it will also create 97 million new jobs in that same timeframe.

a) وفقًا لتقرير المنتدى الاقتصادى العالمى، من المتوقع أن يحل الذكاء الاصطناعى محل ٨٥ مليون وظيفة فى جميع أنحاء العالم بحلول عام ٢٠٢٥. ومع ذلك، يقول التقرير إنه سيخلق أيضًا ٩٧ مليون وظيفة جديدة فى نفس الإطار الزمنى.

b) وفقًا لتقرير المؤتمر الاقتصادى العالمى، من المتوقع أن يحل الذكاء الاصطناعى محل ٨٥ مليون وظيفة فى جميع أنحاء العالم بحلول عام ٢٠٢٥. ومع ذلك، يقول التقرير إنه سيخلق أيضًا ٩٧ مليون وظيفة جديدة فى نفس الإطار المكانى.

c) وفقًا لتقرير المنتدى الاقتصادى العالمى، من المتوقع أن يطور الذكاء الاصطناعى ٨٥ مليون وظيفة فى جميع أنحاء العالم بحلول عام ٢٠٢٥. ومع ذلك، يقول التقرير إنه سيخلق أيضًا ٩٧ مليون وظيفة جديدة فى نفس الإطار الزمنى.

d) وفقًا لتقرير المنتدى الاقتصادى العالمى، من المتوقع أن يحل الذكاء الاصطناعى محل ٨٥ مليون وظيفة فى جميع أنحاء العالم بحلول عام ٢٠٢٥. وبالإضافة لذلك، يقول التقرير إنه سيخلق أيضًا ٩٧ مليون وظيفة جديدة فى نفس الإطار الزمنى.

30 ما أقبح الحروب! فهى تسبب انهيار البنية التحتية للدول وتشرد المواطنين وتقتل الأبرياء وتظل نتائجها لسنوات كثيرة قادمة.

a) How ugly are wars! They cause the destruction of the government's understructure, displace citizens, and kill innocent people. Its results live for many years to come.

b) How ugly are wars! They cause the collapse of the state's infrastructure, dismiss citizens, and kill innocence people. Its results remain for many forward years.

c) How ugly wars are! They cause the collapse of the country's downstructure, displace citizens, and kill innocence people. Its results remain for many past years.

d) How ugly wars are! They cause the collapse of the state's infrastructure, displace citizens and kill innocent people. Its results remain for many years to come.





Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

brainstorm (n) (v) (ed)	عصف ذهنى/يقوم بعصف ذهنى	point (n)	نقطة
centre (n)	مركز/وسط	prepare (v) (d)	يعد/يجهز
click (v) (ed)	ينقر (بالفارة)	presentation (n)	عرض
creative (adj)	مبدع	session (n)	جلسة
effectively (adv)	بفاعلية	similar (adj)	مشابه
explain (v) (ed)	يشرح/يفسر	slide (n)	شريحة لعرض البيانات
give up (v)	يستسلم/يتخلى عن	summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
heading (n)	عنوان	technique (n)	تقنية/أسلوب
highlight (v) (ed)	يسلط ضوءًا/يميز	text (n)	نص/يرسل رسالة نصية
link (n) (v) (ed)	رابط/يربط	tip (n)	نصيحة/تلميح
list (n)	قائمة	topic (n)	موضوع
mind map (n)	خريطة ذهنية	understand (v)	يفهم
order (n)	ترتيب	word (n)	كلمة

Workbook Vocabulary

address (n) (v) (ed)	عنوان/يخاطب	guess (v) (ed)	يخمن/يظن
arrow (n)	سهم	icon (n)	رمز/أيقونة
attach (v) (ed)	يصل/يلحق بـ	mark (n) (v) (ed)	درجة/علامة/يميز
background (n)	خلفية	option (n)	اختيار
certain (adj)	معين/محدد/متأكد	phrase (n)	عبارة
clip (n)	مقطع (فيديو)	reduce (v) (d)	يخفض/يقلل
concentration (n)	تركيز	revise (v) (d)	يراجع
details (n)	تفاصيل	shocked (adj)	مصدوم
essential (adj)	ضرورى	tend to (v) (ed)	يميل إلى
express (v) (ed)	يعبر عن	unit (n)	وحدة
grateful (adj)	ممتن/معترف بالجميل	video call (n)	مكالمة فيديو

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

at the start/end of	فى بداية/فى نهاية	it sounds like	هذا يبدو وكأنه
feel free to	لا تتردد أن	keep ... healthy	يبقى ... بصحة جيدة
get stressed	يتعرض للضغط	make a list	يعد قائمة
in advance	مقدمًا	make changes	يجرى تغييرات
bring/get ... together	يجمع	meet up with	يتقابل/يجتمع مع
learn about	يعرف/يتعلم عن	surprised by	مندهش من

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
attach	يلحق	attachment	ملحق	attached	متصل/مرفق
explain	يفسر	explanation	شرح/تفسير	explanatory	تفسيرى
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	معبر/تعبيرى
link	يصل/يربط	link	رابط	linked	متصل
prepare	يعد/يجهز	preparation	إعداد/تجهيز	prepared	معد/مجهز
present	يقدم	presentation	تقديم/عرض تقديمى	presentational	تقديمى
reduce	يقلل/يخفض	reduction	تخفيض	reduced	مخفض
shock	يصدم	shock	صدمة	shocked shocking	مصدوم صادم
summarise	يلخص	summary	ملخص	summarised	ملخص

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym العضاد	
attach	يربط/يلحق	connect/stick	detach/divide	يفصل/يقسم
creative	مبدع	artistic/imaginative	ungifted	غير موهوب
effectively	بفاعلية	efficiently/adequately	doubtfully ineffectively	بارتياب بشكل غير فعال
essential	ضرورى	important/vital	extra/optional	إضافى/اختيارى
explain	يشرح/يفسر	clarify/illustrate	confuse/question	يربك/يتساءل
guess	يخمن/يظن	imagine/suppose	disbelieve/refuse	ينكر/يرفض
highlight	يميز	distinguish	neglect	يهمل
link	رابط/صلة	contact/connection	detachment	فصل
prepare	يعد/يجهز	arrange/get ready	halt/scatter	يتوقف/يبعثر
reduce	يخفض/يقلل	decrease/lessen	increase/expand	يزيد/يوسع
shocked	مصدوم	amazed/astonished	relaxed	مستريح

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My best friend and I have .... hobbies and interests. We share a lot of them.

a) similar
b) curious
c) difficult
d) different

2 The email had a very long file .... to it which took a long time to download.

a) attached
b) established
c) connected
d) enclosed

3 Fast foods fill children up but do not provide the .... nutrients they need for healthy development.

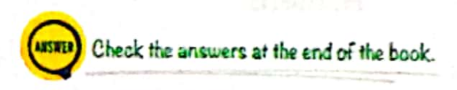
a) unimportant
b) essential
c) introductory
d) affecting

4 The young actress is so fond of photos that she has two or three photo .... a month.

a) roles
b) experiments
c) sessions
d) experiences

5 All researches show a .... between high cholesterol and an increased risk of heart attacks.

a) tie
b) clash
c) sign
d) link



Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)

TIP 1: Make a study plan before you start studying.

Start by thinking what you need to learn. For example, if you need to study for a Maths exam, make a list(1) of all the topics(2) you need to know. Then, decide how much time you'll need to learn about each one. Finally, decide which topics are the most important and plan to spend more time on these.

TIP 2: Draw mind maps

This is a creative(3) way of bringing information about a topic together in one place. You start by writing the topic in the centre of the page and then draw lines from the centre. At the end of each line, you write a different part of the topic and make short notes about it. You could even use pictures instead of text in your mind map too.

TIP 3: Create a study system with colours

For example, if you write the most important points about a topic on cards, you could use the same colour cards for similar(4) topics. This will help you to find information more quickly. You could also get some different coloured pens and highlight(5) different types of words (verbs, nouns, adjectives, etc.) in different colours.

(1) قائمة
(2) موضوعات
(3) مبدع
(4) مشابه
(5) يميز

Reading Text (2)



To : Monica@mail.com
From: Iman@mail.com

Hi Monica,

Thank you for your email about virtual meetings. I understand how to join the meeting by clicking on the link[1] in an email and turning my microphone and camera on and off, but I'm not sure about how to give a presentation[2] during a meeting. It sounds like you have to share your screen if you want to show other people a document or PowerPoint slides[3], is that right? So, I need to join the meeting, share my screen and then stop sharing when I've finished showing the thing I wanted to show. Have I understood that correctly? If I haven't, feel free to let me know how I should be doing it. Maybe we could have a quick call so you can talk to me through it.

(1) رابط/صلة
(2) عرض تقديمي
(3) شرائح

Thanks very much in advance for your help. I'm sure I'll be able to give presentations in our meetings without any problems very soon.

Talk to you soon

Iman

Reading Text (3)

Hi there,

You asked for some study tips[1] and I have two good ones for you.

Try using the Pomodoro technique[2]. You concentrate on your work for 25 minutes, then take a break, then do another session[3] for the same amount of time, then take another break. After a few of these, you take a longer break. Try teaching another student something you find difficult to understand. Prepare[4] something before you meet up with them. Then explain to your friend as well as you can.

(1) نصائح
(2) تقنية بومودرو لإدارة الوقت
(3) جلسة
(4) يعد/يجهز

Let me know how the studying goes.

Talk to you soon.

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

Studying on my Head

By Hamid Shazly

I was never very good at concentration, so my dad gave me a book called 'Study skills for you'. I discovered lots of new ideas.

The first message in the book is that we all learn differently. So, the first thing I did was to learn how I best remember things. I tried making a summary of each unit of the schoolbook, then a summary of the summary until I reduced the essential information into a small mind map. Highlighting important details in different colours helped me so much that I was even able to remember where on the map certain information was.

History was my worst subject. So, while I was making my notes, I played a song in the background. When I went to sleep, I used to listen to the same song again to make me think about the History notes. To avoid too much sitting on my desk, I got up every 20 minutes and walked around my room or went and studied in the park. I also recorded my notes on my phone and listened to them while walking in the park.

So, I guess you're wondering whether all these experiments worked? Well, it certainly helped me discover how I remember things best and it made revising a lot more interesting. This meant I spent more time doing it. When I got my final results, I was shocked but very happy to tell my dad that the highest mark I got was in History!

Reading Text (5) (Workbook)

Hi Eman,

Thanks so much for your help with sharing documents while in a virtual meeting. I think I have understood everything, but I'd just like to check.

I read your email carefully and from your explanation I understand that there are different ways to share documents. The first is to send each person an email with the document attached. That's a good idea but there are 25 people in my class, and I don't have all their email addresses.

The other option is to attach the document in the chat box. Am I right in thinking that I have to click on the clip icon to do this? After that I need to choose the option which says 'everyone' and click on the arrow to send it to everyone in the video call. Have I understood correctly?

Thanks again for all your wonderful advice which has been really helpful. If I have any more questions, do you mind me emailing you again for your help?

All the best

Heba

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 At schools, children should be helped to develop their .... abilities.
a) creative b) affecting
c) recessive d) oppressive

2 The PowerPoint presentation had interesting .... that attracted the staff's attention.
a) programmes b) slides
c) shows d) signals

3 The spelling mistakes in the students' compositions are .... in red.
a) spoiled b) damaged
c) highlighted d) inspected

4 To apply for the job, you should follow the .... to the online form and send your details.
a) icon b) painting
c) tie d) link

5 Surgical .... have improved considerably in the last twenty years.
a) wards b) searches
c) techniques d) corridors

Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

presentation عرض تقديمي
- an event at which you describe or explain a new product or idea

session جلسة
- a period of time used for a particular activity, especially by a group of people

mind map خريطة ذهنية
- a diagram that presents information with a central idea in the middle and connected ideas arranged around it

background خلفية
- the sounds that you can hear apart from the main thing that you are listening to

icon أيقونة
- a small sign or picture on a computer screen that is used to start a particular operation

Notes on Vocabulary

1

speech
خطاب (أخبار عن موضوع خاص أمام مجموعة بشكل رسمى)
- In her speech, the minister proposed major changes to the welfare system. People with special needs/learning difficulties

presentation
عرض تقديمى (لوصف أو شرح فكرة وخاصة فى مجال العمل)
- I had to give a presentation to the board of directors.

statement
بيان (شفوى أو مكتوب أمام جمهور وخاصة الصحفيين)
- The minister issued a short statement in which he said he had no plans to resign.

2

say
يقول (يخبر شيئًا باستخدام الكلمات)
- Mariam said she'd probably be late.

announce
يعلن عن شيء بشكل رسمى
- The results will be announced tomorrow.
- We will announce the winners next Sunday.

express
يعبر عن مشاعر أو رأى
- Young children often find it difficult to express their emotions.

3

list
قائمة (أسماء/أرقام/أشياء) لمراجعتها أو القيام بها
- Make a list of all the things you have to do.

menu
١- قائمة طعام (فى مطعم)
٢- قائمة (مهام) فى جهاز يمكن الاختيار منها
- He looked at the menu and decided to have the salad.
- Select PRINT from the main menu.

heading	عنوان مقال/صحيفة/أجزاء كتاب	I only had time to read the heading of the chapters in the book.
title	١- عنوان (كتاب/مقال/مسرحية) ٢- لقب ٣- مسمى وظيفى	The title of this play is "King Lear". The title "Ms" became much more popular in the 1980s. Her official title is Personnel Manager.
address	١- عنوان (مكان) ٢- عنوان موقع إنترنت أو بريد إلكترونى ٣- خطاب/يخاطب	I can give you the address of a good restaurant. They have changed their website address. The president delivered his first address in the parliament.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- For example, if you need to study for a Maths exam, make a list of all the topics you need to know.

لاحظ استخدام صيغة الأمر (make) كجواب الشرط فى الحالة الأولى لـ (if).

- This will help you to find information more quickly.

Well, it certainly helped me discover how I remember things ....

لاحظ استخدام الفعل فى صيغة المصدر أو (المصدر + to) بعد الفعل (help).

- .... you want to show other people a document or PowerPoint slides, is that right?

لاحظ استخدام صيغة السؤال المذيل (is that right).

- I used to listen to the song again to make me think about the history notes.

لاحظ استخدام فعل فى المصدر بدون (to) بعد الفعل (make).

- .... and listened to them while walking in the park.

لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد (while) لأنها لم يتبعها فاعل.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Press the Esc button if you want to return to the main ....

a) picture b) photo c) list d) menu

2 I've read one of Naguib Mahfouz's books, but I can't remember the ....

a) address b) title c) heading d) award

3 He's making a/an .... to the management board about his department's achievements.

a) speech b) statement c) presentation d) chat

4 The farmers have .... anger at the plans of building a power station near their fields.

a) expressed b) said c) stated d) lectured

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Workbook Vocabulary & Vocabulary Notes

1 Magdi Yacoub's Heart Foundation succeeded in establishing a .... in Aswan.
a) background b) centre c) clinic d) session

2 My cousin is so .... that she sometimes makes her own clothes which we all like.
a) creative b) ordinary c) strange d) imaginary

3 With the telescope, we can see .... of the planet's surface that are invisible to us.
a) slides b) tips c) recipes d) details

4 If you click on this ...., it takes you to our flight timetable to different destinations around the world.
a) connection b) contact c) link d) way

5 The company director is expected to make an official .... about the new branch to the press soon.
a) speech b) presentation c) statement d) proverb

6 You must use a special cable to .... the printer to the computer or it won't work well.
a) catch b) contact c) attach d) comply

7 You can say they are identical twins. Even their likes and dislikes are ....
a) ambitious b) similar c) worthwhile d) mature

8 We were .... to hear about Mahmoud's heart attack – he's so young.
a) shocked b) shocking c) grateful d) creative

9 The bark of the tree had made black .... on my trousers which are difficult to remove.
a) signs b) corrections c) marks d) signals

10 The government has a plan to .... the amount of artificial chemicals used in food production.
a) produce b) introduce c) deduce d) reduce

11 My mother always tells me when I am tired, it's easy to lose my ....
a) connection b) investigation c) concentration d) reflection

12 The young architects had a meeting to .... some ideas about the new project.
a) brainstorm b) brain drain c) brain wave d) brain wreck

13 On reading texts, the students .... important vocabulary in their textbooks.
a) attached b) highlighted c) darkened d) expressed

14 Farmers should employ the latest .... in farming to increase production.
a) slides b) options c) techniques d) plans

15 Applicants should know that most job interviews focus on the candidate's ability to communicate ....

a) inaccurately b) reflectively c) defectively d) effectively

16 Paying your bills online is a/an .... for people with Internet access.

a) option b) obligation c) casualty d) inquiry

17 Some studies show that girls .... to be better at languages than boys.

a) blend b) tend c) mend d) repent

18 The clerk sent an email .... the main points we had discussed in our meeting.

a) preparing b) erasing c) summarising d) pressing

19 The manager .... the meeting via the internet because he was abroad on business.

a) oppressed b) depressed c) blessed d) addressed

20 Our company may need to .... its sales policy in the light of the recent reports.

a) improvise b) revise c) address d) aspire

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21 Students are asked to .... free to ask questions if they don't understand.

a) fall b) keep c) feel d) miss

22 People were evacuated from the coastal regions .... advance of the hurricane.

a) with b) for c) at d) in

23 You look great. It .... like you had a good time on your trip.

a) sounds b) views c) relies d) depends

24 The medical company brought .... researchers from three different universities to work on the new vaccine.

a) up b) together c) in d) for

25 I often meet .... with my friends at the weekends.

a) down b) of c) by d) up

26 One of the most important tips to do well in your exams is that you shouldn't .... stressed.

a) get b) turn c) make d) fly

27 The friendly game was good .... for our team's games at the international championship.

a) prepare b) preparation c) prepared d) impaired

28 The old man sold the house at a .... price because of his financial problems.

a) reduce b) reduction c) reduced d) reducing

29 I guessed that you must be related because you look so similar. The synonym of the verb "guess" is ....

a) respect b) assert c) propose d) suppose

30 Experience is essential for this job. The antonym of the adjective "essential" is ....

a) obligatory b) costly c) optional d) revised



B Language

-ing forms or the infinitive

1. Some verbs are always followed by the –ing form:

١) أفعال يأتي بعدها الفعل به ing

admit (to)	يعترف بـ	dislike	يبغض/يكره	suggest	يقترح
deny	ينكر	enjoy	يتمتع بـ	finish	ينهي
avoid	يتجنب	practise	يمارس	go (activities)	يذهب
spend	يقضي	understand	يفهم	recall	يسترجع
appreciate	يقدر	imagine	يتخيل	recollect	يستحضر
consider	يفكر/يتأمل	involve	يحتوى	report	يبلغ
continue	يواصل	keep	يواصل/يحافظ	resent	يستاء
delay	يؤجل	mention	يذكر	resist	يقاوم
discuss	يناقش	mind	يمانع	risk	يخاطر
escape	يهرب	miss	يخطئ	save	يصون
excuse	يسامح	postpone	يؤخر	stand	يصمد
fancy	يتخيل	prevent	يمنع	tolerate	يتسامح
forgive	يسامح	quit	يوقف/يترك		

- Karim admitted/denied taking my pen without asking me.
- The driver of the car avoided hitting the motorbike.
- He dislikes/enjoys sleeping during the day.
- They're going home as soon as they've finished working.
- Samir and his brother practise playing tennis every day.
- My friend suggested going for a picnic on the beach.

2. Some verbs are always followed by to + infinitive:

٢) أفعال يأتي بعدها to + inf.

arrange	ينظم	expect	يتوقع	offer	يقدم
decide	يقرر	hope	يأمل	promise	يَعِد
agree	يقبل/يوافق	learn	يتعلم	plan	يخطط
want	يريد	allow	يسمح	advise	ينصح
aim	يهدف	demand	يطلب	hurry	يسرع
appear	يبدو	deserve	يستحق	forbid	يمنع
prepare	يعد/يجهز	pretend	يتظاهر	determine	يصمم
long	يشتاق	prove	يثبت	ask	يطلب
warn	يحذر	manage	يتمكن	refuse	يرفض
attempt	يحاول	fail	يفشل	threaten	يهدد
care	يهتم	guarantee	يضمن	neglect	يهمل
wait	ينتظر	choose	يختار	happen	يتصادف
dare	يجرؤ	wish	يتمنى	seem	يبدو

- Everyone agreed/arranged/decided to meet at the airport.
- I expect/hope to finish my homework later this evening.
- I learned to swim when I was three years old.
- She offered/promised to help her mother prepare lunch.
- What do you plan/want to do in the summer?

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I don't enjoy .... as much as I used to.

a) to cook b) cook c) cooking d) to cook

2 Her parents didn't want her .... him.

a) to marry b) marrying c) married d) to be married

3 Some students decided .... snow sculptures in a park.

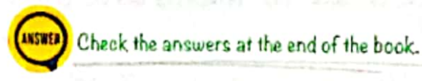
a) make b) to be made c) making d) to make

4 I'll suggest .... to the Sham El-Nessim festival in Egypt next year.

a) go b) going c) to go d) to going

5 Before you go to London, you should practise .... English.

a) to speak b) speak c) speaking d) to speaking



Check the answers at the end of the book.

3. Some verbs can be followed by (to + infinitive) or (the -ing form), with no change in meaning.

٣) أفعال يأتى بعدها .to + inf أو v.ing بدون تغيير فى المعنى.

hate يكره	like يحب	love يحب	intend ينوى
prefer يفضل	start يبدأ	continue يستمر	begin يبدأ

- I hate/like/love/prefer to do/doing exercise every day.
- It has started to rain/raining.

4. Some verbs can be followed by (to + infinitive) or (the -ing form), but there is a change in meaning:

٤) أفعال يأتى بعدها .to + inf أو v.ing وهناك تغيير فى المعنى.

A) stop

stop + v + ing	يتوقف عن فعل شىء لفترة أو يقلع عن الشىء تمامًا.
stop + to + inf.	يتوقف عن شىء ليفعل شيئًا آخر (هدفًا) وغالبًا عندما يكون ماشيًا.

- Leila stopped listening to the radio. كانت ليلى تسمع الراديو ثم توقفت .
- Leila stopped to listen to the radio. كانت ليلى تفعل شيئًا آخر ثم توقفت لكى تسمع الراديو.

B) remember

remember + v.ing	يتذكر أنه فعل شيئًا. تم الحدوث أولًا ثم تذكر ثانيًا
remember + to + inf.	يتذكر أن يفعل شيئًا. يتذكر أولًا ثم يفعل الشىء ثانيًا

- I remember phoning my mother. تذكرت أننى اتصلت بوالدتى.
- I remembered to phone my mother. تذكرت أن أتصل بوالدتى (لم أنس).

C) forget

forget + v + ing	تم حدوث الشيء أولاً ثم نسيه أو لم ينسه بعد ذلك.
forget + to + inf.	نسى أن يفعل الشيء أصلاً. فيعتذر أو يذهب ليفعله بعد ذلك.

- I forgot locking the door. لقت الباب ولكنى نسيت.
- I'll never forget driving my car for the first time. لق فى ذاكرتى الرؤية لأول مرة
- I forgot to bring my book. I'm sorry. نسيت أن أحضر كتابى.

D) regret

regret + v + ing	فعل شيئًا ثم ندم بعد ذلك.
regret + to + inf.	يأسف أن يقول شيئًا أو يفعل شيئًا مضطرًا لذلك.

- I regret arriving late. صل متأخرًا وهو نادم الآن.
- He regrets to say that he can't go. ويأسف أن يقول إنه لا يستطيع أن يذهب.

E) try

try + v.ing	حاول أن يفعل شيئًا ونجح فيه – يحاول تجريب شىء ويرى نتيجته
try + to + inf.	يحاول أن يفعل شيئًا ببذل الجهد

- The firemen are trying to put out the fire.
- Why don't you try adding some sugar to taste better?

5. When "to" means so as to/in order to", it is followed by an infinitive:

نستخدم المصدر بعد أدوات الربط الخاصة بالهدف والغرض وهى تحتوى على to (بمعنى لكى أو أن).

to/so as to/in order to لكى

- I study hard to get good marks.

6. When "to" is part of an expression, it is often following by the -ing form:

يمكن أن تكون to جزءًا من تعبير وفى هذه الحالة يأتى بعدها v.ing، هنا تعتبر to حرف جر.

owing to	نتيجة لـ	in addition to	بالإضافة إلى
contribute to	يساهم فى/يشارك فى	own up to/admit to	يعترف بـ
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	take to	يعتاد على
object to	يعترض على	(be) accustomed to	يعتاد على
(be)(get) used to	يعتاد على	lead to	يؤدى إلى

- I look forward to/am used to spending the holidays in Sharm.

7. Some expressions are followed by the -ing form:

نستخدم (v + ing) بعد الأفعال والتعبيرات الآتية:

(be) busy	مشغول فى	have difficulty in	لديه صعوبة فى
(be) worth	يستحق	can't help	لا يستطيع منع
It's no good	لا فائدة من	can't stand	لا يتحمل
It's no use	لا فائدة من	feel like	أشعر برغبة فى
how/what about	وماذا عن (اقتراح)	put off	يؤجل
what's the use of	ما فائدة	there is no point in	لا جدوى من الجدال

- It's no good/no use wasting time.
- I feel like/can't help eating sweets.

8. **We use the infinitive without (to) with the following:**

٨) نستخدم المصدر بدون (to) بعد التعبيرات و الأفعال الآتية:

had better ينبغي	would rather من الأفضل	let يسمح
make يجعل	help (+ inf. or to + inf.)	

- The thieves made the man empty his pocket.
- Mona'd better take the umbrella with her in case it rains.

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She never forgets .... a cat when she was young.
   a) to kill b) kill
   c) killing d) killed
2. It was difficult for Nour to get used to .... in a foreign country.
   a) live b) living
   c) lived d) be lived
3. Would you be so kind and help me .... the sofa?
   a) to moving b) move
   c) moved d) moving
4. "Let's go jogging!" "No, I'd rather .... sailing."
   a) to go b) going
   c) to going d) go
5. Don't forget .... all of the doors before you go to bed.
   a) to lock b) locking
   c) to locking d) locked



Extra points

1) go on

go on + v.ing	يستمر في عمل شيء
go on + to + inf.	يستمر في عمل شيء بعد الانتهاء من شيء آخر

- She went on talking for hours.
- After finishing the report, she went on to type some letters.

2) mean

mean + v.ing	يشمل/يضم
mean + to + inf.	ينوي/يهدف إلى

- Finding a job means attending many interviews.
- He means to find a job abroad.

3) see/hear/listen/watch

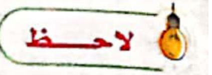
see/hear/listen/watch + v.ing	يسمع أو يرى جزءًا من الشيء
see/hear/listen/watch + inf.	يسمع أو يرى الشيء كله

- I watched my father painting the living room.

رأيت والدي يدهن الحجرة (جزء من الحدث).

- I watched my father paint the living room.

رأيت والدي يدهن الحجرة من البداية إلى النهاية.



١) بعد كلمة only والتعبيرات .it's the first/second/last, etc وصفات التفضيل نستخدم .to + inf

- Ahmed was the last one to arrive at the party.
- He called me only to say that he would be late.

٢) نستخدم (.to + inf) بعد 'd like/'d love/'d prefer

- I'd love to go for a walk.

٣) لاحظ أننا نستخدم (not) قبل(verb + ing) أو (to+infinitive) عند النفى:

- I regret not warning him about the drop in the road. He fell off the bike.
- They decided not to buy this house. It's old fashioned.

٤) الأفعال advise/permit/allow/forbid يأتى بعدها v.ing إذا لم يأتِ بعدها مفعول.

- My teacher advised taking a course during the summer vacation.



Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He hopes .... a prize for his school work.
a) winning b) to win c) to winning d) that win

2 She offered .... me to the station in her car.
a) to take b) taking c) took d) take

3 We all noticed that she avoided .... at us.
a) looks b) to look c) looking d) to be looked

4 My parents want me .... hard and get high marks.
a) studying b) studied c) study d) to study

5 We've just finished .... a TV programme about Egyptian history.
a) to watch b) watching c) to watching d) watch

6 When did you decide .... biology at university?
a) to study b) studying c) study d) to studying

7 We've arranged .... my brother up from the airport.
a) picking b) to picking c) pick d) to pick

8 Tamer and I agreed .... seven pounds each.
a) paying b) pay c) to pay d) was paying

9 Ali is planning .... all weekend revising for next week's maths test.
a) spending b) to spend c) to spending d) spend

10 Hany and his sister practise .... tennis every day after school.
a) playing b) to play c) played d) play

11 My parents suggested .... to the theatre.
a) go b) to go c) to going d) going

12 I'd like .... something on this for our project.
a) being done b) doing c) to do d) do

13 How about .... at that festival for our project?
a) to looking b) looking c) to look d) looked

14 I regret .... to the cinema. It was not a very good film.
a) to go b) go c) going d) went

15 If you can't find the key, try .... the lock with something else, like a knife or a screwdriver.
a) open b) to open c) to opening d) opening

16 I am not used .... a suit and tie every day.
a) to wear b) having worn c) to wearing d) to have worn

17 I prefer .... by bus to .... by train.
a) to travel/travelling b) being travelled/having travelled
c) travelling/to travel d) travelling/travelling

18 We spent a very enjoyable evening .... about old times.
a) talking b) talk c) having talked d) to talk

19 It's no use .... to him. He's asleep.
a) talk b) talking c) to talk d) having talked

20 Would you care .... a look at my latest report?
a) had b) having c) to have d) have

21 I couldn't help .... when you fell down.
a) laughed b) to laugh c) at laughing d) laughing

22 On my first day at school, I remember .... into my classroom and seeing my teacher.

a) going b) to go c) went d) to going

23 She can't get used to .... for such a large company.

a) work b) working c) being work d) worked

24 Nehad regrets .... her mother on her birthday. She should have done it.

a) not phoning b) not phoned c) not phone d) not to phone

25 I completely forgot .... you my electronic dictionary. I thought I had lost it.

a) lend b) to lend c) to lending d) lending

26 It's no good .... to fix this machine. It's completely broken.

a) try b) to try c) trying d) to trying

27 Amina admitted not .... how to open the door.

a) to be known b) knowing c) to know d) known

28 I asked my father to let me .... the match at the stadium.

a) watch b) to watch c) watching d) to watching

29 Hesham likes .... a nap in the afternoon.

a) to be taken b) to taking c) to take d) take

30 I'm looking forward to .... more on this project.

a) be done b) do c) did d) doing

31 Hala hoped .... to Jana's party.

a) for being invited b) she will be invited

c) being invited d) to be invited

32 Would you please .... this case into the boot of the car?

a) help lift b) help to lifting c) help me lifting d) to help lift

33 Pupils are made .... very hard at this school before the exams.

a) work b) working c) to work d) works

34 He advised .... an automatic car instead of my used Fiat.

a) to be bought b) buying c) to buy d) to buying

35 After talking about the accident, he went on .... about the match.

a) talks b) to talking c) talking d) to talk

36 There is no point in .... with her.

a) to argue b) arguing c) argued d) to have argued

37 I went to the airport .... to meet her, but she didn't arrive.

a) to have expected b) to expect

c) expecting d) to be expected

38 **A:** Why does your sister bite her nails?

B: She doesn't enjoy .... them; she just can't help .... it.

a) biting / to do b) biting / doing c) bite / do d) to bite / doing

39 She is afraid of the dentist, so she always puts off .... till the last possible moment.

a) to go b) go c) gone d) going

40 I always look forward to .... as the captain of the team.

a) chose b) choosing c) choose d) being chosen





Lessons 3 & 4

C General Skills



Writing

A reply to an email

You receive an email from a friend who's trying to help you to study more effectively. Plan a reply to this email.



Hi there,

Thank you for your email about helping me to study more effectively. I understand how to arrange my study sessions following Pomodoro technique taking short breaks between my study sessions and then a long one after finishing a certain task such as studying for an important exam. This would benefit me to refresh my energy and enable me to get good results. Have I understood that correctly?

You also advised me to teach what I have studied to another classmate. I've already had a deal with one of my classmates to do that. Moreover, she would also do the same with me. I would explain maths lessons for her and she would explain history lessons for me. Really I expect this would be very useful for both of us.

Thanks very much for your tips. They have really made a difference to my study and exam results. I think I will do better in the near future.

Talk to you soon.

A Letter of Application

Write a letter of application for a job as a student welfare officer in your local university. Include the following information:

- How you can help other students.
- Why you would like to work on this post.
- What skills you have that will help them.

Model Letter



Dear Sir/Madam,

I am writing this letter to apply for the position of student welfare officer. I believe that I am suited to the role because I have good skills to help people feel more positive and enthusiastic. This has been one of my best qualities which made my friends call me 'Positive Energy' for all the support I gave them in their problems.

At school, I did a course in dealing with stressful situations. That's because I wanted to be a psychiatrist, however. I didn't get enough grades to join the Faculty of Medicine. However, I studied psychology in the Faculty of Arts, Cairo University. I like using my free time to help other people. I also do a lot of voluntary work helping in a children's hospital.

I am very excited to apply and I hope you decide to offer me the position. I hope to hear from you soon.

Yours faithfully,
Mahmoud Ahmed Helmy

Test Yourself 20



Unit 5
Lessons 3 & 4

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 People wonder if there is a ………… between illnesses and radioactive waves.
a) link b) contact c) communicating d) connecting

2 The article contains some useful beauty ………… which women should follow.
a) taps b) tapes c) tops d) tips

3 People ………… to be happier if they have a successful career and good family relationships.
a) trend b) tend c) pretend d) attend

4 We did our best to repair the engine, but in the end, we had to ………… it up as impossible.
a) stay b) bring c) give d) do

5 The names of the students in the class were listed in an alphabetical ………… .
a) order b) system c) request d) menu

6 I am extremely ………… to all my teachers for all the help and support they gave me.
a) efficient b) grateful c) doubtful d) intensive

7 The documentary began with a ………… from a battle in the Second World War.
a) clap b) grip c) gap d) clip

8 We had to ………… changes to our holiday plans because of urgent financial matters.
a) make b) miss c) lose d) devise

9 Our teacher refused ………… our questions as we were talking during the lesson.
a) to answer b) answering c) answer d) being answered

10 They expect thousands of people ………… Sapporo for the Snow Festival.
a) visit b) to visit c) visiting d) to visiting

11 If I were you, I'd avoid ………… into the city during the festival.
a) travel b) to travel c) travelling d) to travelling

12 I really want ………… to Hong Kong for the Chinese New Year.
a) go b) going c) to going d) to go

13 Their teacher is used to ………… students with their homework.
a) help b) be helped c) helping d) helps

14 She tried ………… him the terrible truth, but she just couldn't bring herself to do it.
a) tell b) to tell c) telling d) to telling

15 Gehan forgot ………… her money, so I lent her ten pounds.
a) bring b) to bringing c) bringing d) to bring

16 Ibrahim was the first one ………… at the office.
a) to arrive b) arrives c) to arriving d) arrived

17 Which are examples of punctuation marks?
a) Commas and full stops. b) Dollar and pound signs.
c) Plus and minus signs. d) Abbreviations and phonetics.

18 "I've never forgotten this bad experience, and I'd like to advise everyone not to drive when he/she is very tired."
The sentence above is ………… .
a) an introduction to a narrative essay
b) the final outcome and the message when concluding an essay
c) a topic sentence to narrate an incident
d) a supporting sentence to persuade the reader to do something

19 Narrative essays ....

a) should be interesting to impress the reader

b) should contain imaginative incidents to make suspense

c) can tell real or imaginative stories

d) all of the above

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

If the sun were turned off suddenly, like an electric lamp, our Earth would begin to cool. Ice would form but never melt. The temperature would drop towards the absolute zero point[1]. Life would stop. The Earth would begin to resemble[2] the planets Jupiter and Saturn, which get almost no heat from the sun.

Distance from the sun is necessary for the amount of heat a planet receives. If you've ever sat around a campfire during a chilly night, you know how pleasant it is to be near the fire. The outer planets, like campers kept at a distance, get very little heat. On the other hand, Mercury and Venus[3], which are closer to the sun than we are, get more heat than we could stand without protection.

While almost all our heat comes from the sun, a small amount of it comes from the Earth itself. Most scientists think the Earth was formed several billion years ago, it was a fiery, glowing[4] liquid mass. Gradually this mass cooled like hot chocolate sauce cooling and turning into solid on the sides of a pan, and the hot liquid material of the Earth cooled and turned slowly into the solid rock crust[5] we live on today. But deep inside the Earth, the heat was held in by the solid outside crust. There the cooling was so slow, in fact, that enormous amounts of heat are left in the Earth's core[6]. Miners[7] going to work feel the increasing heat as they go down inside the mine. Even those of us who stay on the surface of the Earth sometimes see violent evidence of the imprisoned heat. A volcano erupts[8], spewing up[9] fiery liquid lava from deep inside the Earth. The lava flows down the volcano's sides and cools, turning into solid rock.

Thus, we see that there are two important sources of heat to keep us from cooling down to absolute zero. The sun is the most important one, giving off a steady amount of heat at just the right distance from us. The Earth also helps a bit to keep us warm with the heat that comes very slowly from its centre. But neither of these could keep us alive without the life-saving blanket that circles our Earth, the air.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20 The amount of heat a planet receives depends on ....

a) how far it is from the farthest planet

b) its atmosphere

c) its distance from the outer planets

d) its distance from the sun

21 As miners go down inside the mine for work, they feel the ....

a) increasing air

b) decreasing heat

c) increasing heat

d) rising light

22 The underlined "chilly" in the second paragraph means ....

a) very hot

b) rather cold

c) pleasant

d) dark

23 The two sources of heat on our Earth are ....

a) the sun and the earth

b) the sun and the moon

c) the earth and the moon

d) Mercury, Venus and the sun

(1) نقطة الصفر المطلق (2) يشابه (3) عطارد و الزهرة (4) متوهج (5) القشرة الصخرية الصلبة (6) لب/باطن (7) عمال منجم (8) يثور (9) يقذف

24 The heat from inside the earth comes up in the form of ....

a) tornadoes b) volcanoes c) winds d) earthquakes

25 The antonym of the word "erupt" is ....

a) flare up b) blow up c) go off d) subside

26 The underlined word "There" refers to ....

a) in the sun b) outside crust c) deep inside the Earth d) in the rock

27 One of the following is untrue ....

a) the heat from the sun and earth doesn't keep life without the air
b) almost all our heat comes from the sun
c) when the volcano erupts, it sends fiery solid lava
d) most of our heat comes from the earth

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d:

28 A virtual meeting is a form of communication that enables people in different locations to use their internet connected devices to meet in a virtual room. They are used for connecting with family and friends, or in business.

a) الاجتماع الافتراضى هو شكل من أشكال الاتصال يمكّن الأشخاص فى مواقع مختلفة من استخدام أجهزتهم المتصلة بالإنترنت للالتقاء فى غرفة افتراضية ويتم استخدامها للتواصل مع العائلة والأصدقاء أو فى العمل.

b) الاجتماع الافتراضى هو شكل من أشكال الاتصال يمكّن الأشخاص فى مواقع متشابهة من استخدام أجهزتهم المتصلة بالإنترنت للالتقاء فى غرفة افتراضية ويتم استخدامها للتواصل مع العائلة والأصدقاء أو فى العمل.

c) الاجتماع الافتراضى هو شكل من أشكال الاتصال يمكّن الأشخاص فى مواقع مختلفة من استخدام أجهزتهم المتصلة بالإنترنت للالتقاء فى غرفة وهمية ويتم استخدامها للتواصل مع العائلة والأصدقاء أو فى العمل.

d) الاجتماع الوهمى هو شكل من أشكال الاتصال يمكّن الأشخاص فى مواقع مختلفة من استخدام أجهزتهم المتصلة بالإنترنت للالتقاء فى غرفة ويتم استخدامها للتواصل مع العائلة والأصدقاء أو فى العمل.

29 يعتبر التخطيط الجيد للدراسة من أهم الأعمال التى يسعى لها الطلاب المتميزون للحصول على الراحة عند أداء دراستهم ولتوفير كثير من الوقت والجهد للحصول على النجاح والتفوق.

a) Good study planning is one of the most important tasks that distinguished students seek to obtain comfort when performing their studies and to keep a lot of time and effort to obtain success and excellence.
b) Good study planning is one of the most important tasks that distinguished students seek to obtain comfort when performing their studies and to save a lot of time and effort to obtain success and excellence.
c) Good study planning is one of the most important responsibilities that distinguished students seek to obtain comfort when performing their studies and to save a lot of time and effort to refrain success and excellence.
d) Good study planning is one of the most important tasks that ordinary students seek to obtain comfort when performing their studies and to waste a lot of time and effort to obtain success and excellence.

30 بعد أن أصابه المرض وعد أخى الأكبر بأنه سيتوقف عن التدخين الذى سبب له الضرر لكنه لم يستطع أن يفى بوعده.

a) After he fell ill, my eldest brother promised that he would stop to smoke, which hurt him but he could not keep his promise.
b) After he fell ill, my eldest brother promised that he will stop smoking, which hurt him, but he could not meet his promise.
c) After he fell ill, my eldest brother promised that he would stop smoking, which hurt him but he could not keep his promise.
d) After he fell ill, my eldest brother promised that he would stop to smoke, which hurt him but he could not break his promise.

Study

Chapter 5
(Great Expectations)

Vocabulary

adopt (v) (ed)	يتبنى	fiancé (n)	خطيب
afterwards (adv.)	بعد ذلك	footsteps (n)	خطوات أقدام
alive (adj)	على قيد الحياة	grumpy (adj)	سهل الغضب
behave (v) (d)	يتصرف	half-brother (n)	أخ غير شقيق
cheerful (adj)	مرح/ مبتهج	handsome (adj)	وسيم
clerk (n)	موظف	inherit (v) (ed)	يرث
coach (n)	وسيلة نقل عام	jealous (adj)	غيور
comfortable (adj)	مرتاح	lodging (n)	مسكن
convince (v) (d)	يقنع	ordinary (adj)	عادى
cruel (adj)	قاسٍ	secret (adj)	سر/ سرى
dare (v) (d)	يجرؤ	share (n)	نصيب
disappointed (adj)	محبط	suitable (adj)	مناسب
engaged (adj)	مخطوبة	unpleasant (adj)	غير سار

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

at once	فى الحال	in a few days' time	فى خلال سنوات قليلة
got engaged	تتم خطبتها	take revenge on	يثأر من
angry with	غاضب من	scared of	مرعوب من
jealous of	غيور من	speak to	يتحدث إلى



Great Expectations Exercises

Chapter (5)

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analysing • Evaluating • Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She was offered a job as an account .... with a travel firm.

a) diary b) clerk c) book d) keeping

2 We found a .... for the night in a beautiful little bed and breakfast right off the bicycle trail.

a) ledge b) ledger c) legging d) lodging

3 They have no children of their own, but they're hoping to .... a child from the orphanage.

a) adopt b) adapt c) adjust d) inherit

4 I was .... that the lazy secretary was part of the problem in the office.

a) infected b) influenced c) convinced d) conveyed

5 Hanan was so .... of Leila's new dress that she went out and bought herself one.

a) concerned b) jealous c) victimised d) cold

6 Farida's .... gave her a big diamond ring on her birthday.

a) fiancé b) opponent c) victim d) genius

7 The rich man's son will .... the factory when his father dies.

a) intake b) inhale c) inhibit d) inherit

8 It can be beneficial to .... your feelings with someone you trust.

a) share b) divide c) split d) use

9 She got .... last summer, and the wedding is set for next month.

a) engage b) engaged c) engaging d) engagement

10 Most people don't like the new manager, but they don't .... to say so.

a) care b) share c) bare d) dare

11 The king took .... on those who accused him of treason.

a) revenge b) treaty c) bravery d) confidence

12 Mr Ahmed had been in a .... mood since he got up.

a) grump b) grumpily c) grumpy d) grunge

13 Someone's .... is a boy or man who has either the same mother or the same father as they have.

a) half-brother b) half-sister c) step-father d) step-mother

14 Please don't be angry .... me for breaking the table. It wasn't my fault.

a) for b) in c) with d) of

15 The old man was kept .... on a life-support machine.

a) injured b) fainted c) dead d) alive

Unit 5 Advanced & Open General Exercises

Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: إجابة هذه التدريبات موجودة بنهاية الكتاب

1 I didn't want to get .... up in endless arguments about this subject.
a) brought b) caught c) lost d) releases

2 We arranged to meet at 7.30, but Reda never .... up saying he was busy.
a) played b) returned c) turned d) caught

3 We politely .... our neighbour's invitation to his son's birthday party.
a) declined b) decreased c) diminished d) increased

4 Doctors say that Malaria is .... through dirty drinking water.
a) spoken b) contacted c) linked d) communicated

5 The .... of the final match will be shown in the news later this evening.
a) icons b) defects c) highlights d) aspects

6 Since her husband travelled abroad, Mary has had trouble keeping her teenage sons in ....
a) law b) order c) arrangement d) request

7 When I travel to Alexandria, I always take the .... train to save time.
a) express b) impress c) repress d) oppress

8 Adel Imam has become a/an .... in the movie business.
a) clip b) icon c) flag d) inferior

9 The book explains the complex historical .... to the Second World War.
a) playground b) result c) background d) research

10 School teachers say that the internet has become one of the important reasons for the .... in student performance.
a) influence b) impact c) jump d) slide

11 My father is too busy .... his relatives every week.
a) visiting b) visit c) visits d) to visit

12 As he had a serious illness, he was advised .... by a specialist in medicine.
a) to see b) to be seen c) seeing d) being seen

13 When I saw a man .... in my neighbour's flat, he ran away.
a) break b) broke c) breaking d) to break

14 Ahmed was the first one who .... to the meeting.
a) came b) to come c) coming d) come

15 Although he allows me to smoke in his home, he doesn't allow .... in the office.
a) to smoke b) smoking c) to smoking d) us smoke

16 This pen is used to .... on wood.
a) be written b) being written c) writing d) write

17 "He can't help thinking about the past" means that ....
a) he wants to think about the past, but he can't
b) he never thinks about the past as it was dreadful
c) he always thinks about the past and can't change it
d) he wants someone to help him think about the past

18 Dieting means .... careful about which foods you buy.
a) being b) to be c) to being d) be

19 They advise that a passport .... with you at all times.
a) being carried b) be carried c) to be carried d) to carry

20 She insisted .... a suit to attend the wedding.
a) he wearing b) to wear c) on him wearing d) on him to wear

Unit 5 Al-Adwaa Test

Question Bank

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analysing • Evaluating • Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The style of .... is very important in a museum as it attracts visitors.
a) sale b) propaganda c) presentation d) ancestors

2 My friend sent me a .... to say he would be late for the meeting.
a) book b) click c) signal d) text

3 My daughter has a weekly karate .... at the club on Saturdays.
a) fiction b) session c) conference d) seminar

4 The library's only open at .... times of day, so it wouldn't be open this evening.
a) certain b) sure c) common d) gradual

5 Modern technology has become one of the most important .... to enhance teaching methods.
a) imaginations b) sections c) machines d) tools

6 Before a .... meeting, all participants should test the devices and make sure they are comfortable with the major features.
a) fictional b) virtual c) verbal d) musical

7 Doctors believe that pollution can .... a lot of health problems.
a) create b) apply c) employ d) sell

8 Our house has been much less hot since my father had an air conditioner ....
a) put b) done c) installed d) made

9 I advise you .... smoking.
a) to start b) starting c) not to starting d) not to start

10 How about .... our teacher about the best way to study English?
a) asking b) ask c) to ask d) to asking

11 The school arranged .... a new charity this year.
a) to supporting b) supporter c) to support d) supporting

12 Kareem finished .... his dinner at 6.30.
a) being eating b) eating c) to eat d) eaten

13 I have promised my son .... him to the zoo after the exams.
a) taking b) to be taken c) to taking d) to take

14 If you can't remember an English word, try .... it.
a) guessed b) to guess c) guessing d) to guessing

15 It was a mistake .... the door unlocked.
a) to leave b) leaving c) to leaving d) left

16 We regret .... you that your application has been refused.
a) informing b) to inform c) to informing d) informed

17 If a writer uses a word or phrase in a special way, such as ironically, he can put it in ....
a) squares b) round brackets
c) quotation marks d) square brackets

18 Choose the correctly punctuated sentence:
a) Because, doctors are concerned about COVID-19, they wanted to know its causes.
b) Because doctors are concerned about COVID-19, They wanted to know its causes.
c) Because doctors are concerned about COVID-19, they wanted to know its causes.
d) Because Doctors are concerned about "COVID-19", they wanted to know its causes.

19 In an essay about "The advantages and disadvantages of a thing."
The introduction sentence should ....

a) refer to the two different points of view b) refer to the writer's point of view
c) refer to one point of view d) refer to other people's opinion

20 A message to your manager is a kind of ....

a) a formal email b) an informal email c) a descriptive essay d) a narrative essay

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Whales are the largest animals in the world, even larger than some species[1] of dinosaurs. Ironically[2], whales are among the gentlest creatures[3] we know. There are people who go through great lengths to help them.

In 1988, when three young whales were trapped in the sea. It was close to winter and the sea had begun to freeze over. Whales require oxygen from the air, so the frozen ice was a great danger as it prevented them from getting any air. Volunteers from all over soon turned up to help these creatures. They cut holes in the ice so as to provide more breathing holes for the whales. This effort was a success although one whale drowned.

Although the whale is very huge, it is not hindered at all by its size when it is in water. Whales have tails that end like flippers[4]. With just a gentle flick[5], it can propel[6] itself forward. The skin of a whale is so smooth that it does not create any friction[7] that can slow the whale down. A whale's breathing hole is located on the top of its head, so it can breathe without having to completely push its head out of the water. Whales are protected from the cold seawater by body fat that is called blubber[8].

Whales live in the ocean but in terms of behaviour, they are more similar to humans than fish. They live in family groups and they even travel in groups when they have to migrate[9] from cooler to warmer waters. The young stay with their parents for as long as fifteen years. Whales are known not to desert the ill or injured members; instead, they cradle[10] them. Moreover, female whales have very strong maternal instincts[11].

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 The best title to the passage is ....

a) Whales and their life b) How to save whales
c) Whales and the different seasons d) Whales are big creatures

22 Volunteers helped the three young whales as ....

a) whales are gentle creatures and they were trapped
b) winter is near
c) they wanted to hunt them
d) it was hot around them, and they were about to die

23 By using the word 'ironically' in the second sentence, the writer suggests ....

a) it is not true that whales are very gentle
b) it is difficult to believe whales are gentle despite their humungous size
c) whales may not be as gentle as they look
d) whales are definitely the gentlest creatures in the world

24 Winter poses such a danger to whales because ....

a) they cannot swim in icy cold water
b) whales can drown without sufficient air
c) they cannot eat when the weather is too cold
d) the water is too cold for them as they are warm-blooded

25 Whales can move easily in water because of their ....

a) tail b) flippers
c) tail and skin d) tail, skin and breathing hole

(1) أنواع (2) بشكل ساخر (3) مخلوقات (4) زعانف (5) هزة (6) يدفع (7) احتكاك (8) شحم (9) يهاجر (10) يضم (11) غرائز أمومية

26 The human qualities of whales are not highlighted by the fact that ....

a) they do not desert the ill or injured members
b) they migrate from cooler to warmer waters
c) they live in family groups and travel in groups
d) they young stay with their parents for almost fifteen years

27 The phrase 'maternal instincts' (last paragraph) suggests that female whales ....

a) are close to her family and other whales in the group
b) strongly believe in living and travelling with her own family
c) are very caring towards their young
d) tend to leave their young to fend for themselves once they are ready

28 The synonym of the word "drown" is ....

a) sink **b)** float **c)** drift **d)** swim

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It was the beginning of the school holidays and Ramy was looking forward to spending time with his friends from his neighbourhood, playing football and running around the playground. He was very upset when his mother told him that he was going to stay at his grandparents' house as both she and his father were going on a business trip. He had no friends there and had no computer games to play with. Even the television programmes were boring because he and his grandparents had different preferences. However, he had no say in the matter.

Ramy loved his grandparents but being elderly[1], they could not take him out or play games with him. His younger sister was not interested in the same things as he was. She only liked to play with her dolls. During the initial[2] couple of days, Ramy killed time by doing his holiday homework.

One day, he devised[3] a plan. When his grandparents were taking their naps[4], he sneaked[5] out of the house. He attempted to take a public bus back to his neighbourhood to find his friends. This was a whole new experience for him. However, on the bus ride home, he fell asleep on the bus. By the time he woke up, he was in a strange place. This worried him. He then borrowed the telephone of a nearby shop to call his grandfather.

An hour later, Ramy's grandfather arrived in a taxi. He was silent throughout the ride back. Ramy was feeling very guilty[6]. He knew that his impetuous[7] behavior must have caused his grandparents a lot of worry. He apologised to his grandparents profusely[8]. Seeing his remorse[9], they decided to give him a second chance and did not report the incident to his parents. Ramy was relieved.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

29 The best title to the passage is ....

a) Ramy's adventure at a new place
b) Ramy's holiday wasn't a success
c) Ramy's holiday with his grandparents
d) Ramy's grandparents

30 According to paragraph one, why was Ramy feeling upset?

a) It was the start of the school holidays.
b) His parents did not allow him to watch television.
c) His father was going on a business trip without him
d) He had to stay with his grandparents for the holidays.

31 Which one of the following pieces of information is not true?

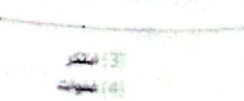
a) Ramy was an only child.
b) Ramy loved his grandparents.
c) Ramy had holiday homework.
d) Ramy felt bored at his grandparents' house

32 Why did Ramy devise a plan?

a) He wanted to get enough rest.
b) He wanted to get out of the house.
c) He wanted to irritate his grandparents.
d) He wanted to let his grandparents have their afternoon nap.







(3) ابتكر
(4) غفوات
(5) تسلل
(6) مذنب
(7) متهور
(8) بشدة
(9) تأنيب الضمير

33 Ramy's grandparents proved to be ....

a) kind and understanding
b) cruel
c) aggressive
d) unpleasant

34 What does "This" in paragraph three refer to?

a) Feeling very grown-up.
b) Calling his grandfather.
c) Being lost.
d) Falling asleep on the bus.

35 Why did Ramy feel relieved at the end?

a) He managed to find his way home.
b) His grandfather came to pick him up in a taxi.
c) His grandparents were not worried about him.
d) His grandparents forgave him for his actions.

36 The synonym of the word "remorse" is ....

a) happiness
b) regret
c) pride
d) tolerance

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d:

37 Sooner or later, youth will face huge responsibilities so they should be armed with determination and a strong will. School is the best place to prepare them for these responsibilities.

a) عاجلًا أم آجلًا، سيواجه الشباب مسئوليات جسيمة، لذا يجب أن يكونوا مسلحين بعزم وإرادة قوية، والمدرسة هي أفضل مكان لإعدادهم لهذه المسئوليات.

b) عاجلًا أم آجلًا، سيواجه الشباب مسئوليات ضخمة، لذا يجب أن يكونوا مسلحين بالصبر والوصية القوية، والمدرسة هي أفضل مكان لإعدادهم لهذه المسئوليات.

c) عاجلًا أم آجلًا، سيواجه الشباب مسئوليات هائلة، لذا يجب أن يكونوا مسلحين بالتصميم والمستقبل القوى، والمدرسة هي أفضل مكان لإعدادهم لهذه المسئوليات.

d) عاجلًا أم آجلًا، سيواجه الشباب مسئوليات عملاقة، لذا يجب أن يكونوا أصحاب أذرع قوية وعزيمة للمستقبل المدرسة هي أفضل مكان لإعدادهم لهذه المسئوليات.

38 The government pays great attention to developing slums and providing them with the necessary services for a better life. This will surely promote the life of the people living there.

a) تدفع الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بتطوير المدن وإمدادها بالخدمات اللازمة لحياة أفضل وهذا بالتأكيد سيغير حياة الناس الذين يعيشون هناك.

b) تولى الحكومة حضورًا كبيرًا بتطوير القرى وإمدادها بالخدمات اللازمة لحياة أفضل وهذا بالتأكيد سيعدل حياة الناس الذين يعيشون هناك.

c) تدفع الحكومة عطفًا كبيرًا لتطوير العشوائيات وإمدادها بالخدمات اللازمة لحياة أفضل هذا بالتأكيد سيدون حياة الناس الذين يعيشون هناك.

d) تولى الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بتطوير العشوائيات وإمدادها بالخدمات اللازمة لحياة أفضل هذا بالتأكيد سيطور حياة الناس الذين يعيشون هناك.

39 رغم كل الصعوبات والأزمات التى واجهتها مصر إلا أن الوحدة والتعاون التى يتميز بها المجتمع المصرى هى ما جعلتنا نتغلب عليها كلها.

a) Although all the difficulties and crises that Egypt faced, the unity and cooperation that characterise the Egyptian society is what made us overcome them all.

b) Despite all the difficulties and crises that Egypt faced, the unity and cooperation that characterise the Egyptian society is what made us overcome them all.

c) Though all the difficulties and crises that Egypt faced, the unity and cooperation that specialise the Egyptian society is what made us overcome them all.

d) Despite all the difficulties and crisis that Egypt faced, the unity and cooperation that privatise the Egyptian society is what made us overcome them all.

40 لقد ندم العامل على تركه وظيفته السابقة لأن عمله الجديد فى مصنع الكيماويات سبب له كثيرًا من المتاعب الصحية بالرغم من زيادة الأجر.

a) The worker has regretted to leave his previous job because his new job in the chemical factory caused him a lot of health problems although the increase in wages.

b) The worker has regretted leaving his previous job because his new job in the chemical factory caused him a lot of health problems despite the increase in fares.

c) The worker has regretted leaving his previous job because his new job in the chemical factory caused him a lot of health problems despite the increase in wages.

d) The worker has regretted leave his previous job because his new job in the chemical factory caused him a lot of health problems although the increase in fees.

Assess your progress

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Unit
6



Let's get it done!

Objectives

- Reading : A report on a study into productivity
- Writing : A reflective text
- Listening : An interview with an expert on productivity
- Speaking : Brainstorm and discuss ideas to improve productivity
- Language : Get something done; Causative verbs
- Life skills : Productivity; Self-management





Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

assess (v) (ed)	يقيم/يحلل	productivity (n)	إنتاجية
decline (v) (d) (n)	ينخفض/انخفاض	progress (n) (v) (ed	تقدم/يتقدم
efficiency (n)	كفاءة	raise (v) (d)	يرفع/يزيد
productive (adj)	منتج	vary (v) (y-ied)	يتغير/يتنوع/ينوع

Vocabulary on Reading

achieve (v) (d)	يحقق/ينجز	period (n)	فترة من الوقت
aim (n) (v) (ed)	هدف/يهدف	positive (adj)	إيجابى
analysis (n)	تحليل	regularly (adv.)	بانتظام
conclusion (n)	استنتاج/ختام	repeat (v) (ed)	يكرر
diary (n)	يوميات/مذكرات	researcher (n)	باحث
finding (n)	اكتشاف	rest (v) (ed)	باقٍ/راحة/يرتاح
habit (n)	عادة	significantly (adv.)	بشكل كبير
individual (n)	فرد	state (v) (d) (n)	يعلن/يصرح/حالة
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر	varying (adj)	مختلف/متنوع

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب	result (n)	نتيجة
level (n)	مستوى	specific (adj)	محدد
manage (v) (d)	يدير/يتحكم فى	stress (n)	قلق/توتر
owl (n)	بومة	task (n)	مهمة
private (adj)	خاص	tip (n)	نصيحة/تلميح
research (n)	بحث علمى	worry (n) (v) (y-ied)	قلق/يقلق
response (n)	رد/استجابة		

Workbook Vocabulary

analyse (v) (d)	يحلل	hand (v) (ed)	يُسلم
delay (v) (ed)	يؤجل/يؤخر/تأجيل	honest (adj)	مخلص/صادق/أمين
distracted (adj)	مشتت	interrupt (v) (ed)	يقاطع/يعترض
effectiveness (n)	فاعلية	procrastinate (v) (d)	يماطل
error (n)	خطأ	procrastination (n)	مماطلة
excuse (n) (v) (d)	عذر/يعذر	result in (v) (ed)	ينتج عنه
fail (v) (ed)	يفشل/يرسب	tidy (v) (y ied) (adj)	يرتب/مرتب

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at the same time	في نفس الوقت	keep a diary	يكتب يوميات بانتظام
draw conclusions	يستخلص استنتاجات	make a study plan	يعد خطة للمذاكرة
in detail	بالتفصيل	on time	في الوقت المحدد
change to	تغيير لـ	happy with	سعيد بخصوص
come over	يزور	increase in	زيادة في
effects of	تأثير لـ	lead to	يؤدي إلى

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
analyse	يحلل	analysis	تحليل	analysed	تم تحليله
assess	يقيم/يحلل	assessment	تقييم	assessable	قابل للتقييم
distract	يشتت	distraction	تشتت	distracted	مشتت
effect	يفعل	effectiveness	فاعلية	effective	فعال
excuse	يعذر	excuse	عذر	excusable	معذور
interrupt	يقاطع/يعترض	interruption	مقاطعة/اعتراض	interrupted	مقاطَع
repeat	يكرر	repetition	تكرار	repetitive	متكرر
vary	يختلف/يتنوع	variety	تنوع/اختلاف	various	مختلف/متنوع

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
aim	هدف	goal/target	avoidance تجنب
assess	يقيم	analyse/evaluate	ignore/neglect يتجاهل
interrupt	يقاطع/يعترض	interfere/stop	continue يستمر
mention	يذكر	refer to/report	conceal/neglect يخفى/يتجاهل
productive	منتج	energetic/fruitful	idle/inactive كسول/غير نشيط
progress	تقدم	advance/evolution	decline/failure انخفاض/فشل
state	يعلن	declare/confirm	confuse/hide يربك/يخفى
vary	يختلف/يتنوع	differ/modify	conform/remain يتفق/يبقى

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Kareem .... for three days saying he was getting ready and missed the application deadline.
   - a) hurried
   - b) procrastinated
   - c) inspected
   - d) aspired
2. I had a very .... day. I finished school, went to the training session and helped my mother.
   - a) puzzling
   - b) idle
   - c) negative
   - d) productive
3. Experts say that it's important that parents teach their children good eating .... at an early age.
   - a) habits
   - b) expectations
   - c) studies
   - d) costumes
4. The lawyer says that the DNA .... shows that the blood and the saliva come from the same person.
   - a) inspection
   - b) prediction
   - c) analysis
   - d) prospection
5. The reason I .... good results is because I work hard – and so could you.
   - a) achieve
   - b) ignore
   - c) lose
   - d) miss

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)

A report on a recent study into productivity amongst students

In our research study, we assessed[1] the productivity[2] levels of sixteen to eighteen-year-old students. The aim was to find out which situations led to an increase in the students' productivity levels while they are studying. We chose a group of 250 students and asked them to keep a diary over a six-month period. In these diaries they wrote down how much time they spent studying every day and what they achieved[3].

At the start of the study, we asked all the students to make a change to their study habits[4]. We wanted to find out what effect this change would have on the students' productivity. We repeated this process at the start of every month for the rest of the study to look at the effects of varying study habits.

Our analysis[5] of the students' diaries resulted in some interesting conclusions. We noticed that most students' productivity levels increased significantly when they got up earlier to study before school. This was even true for students who had said they weren't very efficient when they studied early in the morning.

On the other hand, most students' productivity levels declined[6] significantly when they regularly studied until late into the evening. Another interesting finding was that studying with other students had a very positive effect on some students' productivity levels, but a very negative effect on other students' productivity levels.

In conclusion, we can state that studying in the morning seems to help most students to become more productive[7], but the effects of other factors, like whether or not students study alone, vary, depending on the individual.

(1) يقيم
(2) إنتاجية
(3) يحقق
(4) عادات
(5) تحليل
(6) ينخفض
(7) منتج

Reading Text (2)

1. Don't procrastinate



There is one common error[1] which stops students from being productive: procrastination[2]. Procrastination is when we delay[3] doing something important. Students often look for an excuse to do other things, such as tidy their bedrooms, when they should be studying. Make a study plan and then make yourself follow it!

2. Don't study all night

Another bad habit that some students have is studying all night. (Sometimes this is because they have been procrastinating in all day!) Studying at night instead of sleeping does not allow the body and brain to rest. It's important to switch off to study effectively the next day.

3. Put the phone away

Some teachers allow students to keep their phone with them in class. But students shouldn't let themselves be distracted[4] by their phones. Even better, hand it to the teacher at the beginning of the class – they will let you have it back at the end!

(1) خطأ
(2) مماطلة
(3) يؤجل
(4) مشتت

Listening Text (1)

Eman : I try hard to finish my homework on time, but I can never get it all done. After just a few minutes my productivity levels start to decline[1], and I start looking at my phone.

Amany : It sounds like you need to raise your productivity so you can get more homework done.

Eman : So, I need to become more productive[2]?

Amany : Yes, exactly. You need to do good work, but get it done faster by increasing your efficiency. First, assess[3] when and where you find it easiest to work. You could try to vary[4] the time and place where you work and see what happens at different times and in different places.

Eman : That's a good idea. I'll try doing that and hopefully I'll soon be making more progress[5] with my homework.

(1) ينخفض
(2) منتج/مثمر
(3) يقيم
(4) ينوع/يغير
(5) تقدم

Listening Text (2)

Productivity means managing[1] your study or work time so that you get all your work done in the time you have, but also doing that work well.

When people ask me for tips[2] about how to be productive, the first thing I tell them is that everyone's different so different things will help different people. Let's start with the place where you work. It's a good idea to try out different places and assess where you can concentrate the best and get the most work done. For example, going to a café to work or study might help some people to make faster progress, but it may make it harder for other people to concentrate and they'll get less work done. You need to find the best place for you.

The same is true for the time of day you study. Some people are 'early birds' and their efficiency tends to be higher in the morning. Whereas other people are 'night owls' who are most productive in the evening. Try working at different times of day and find out which time of day is best for you. Then make sure that you always work or study at that time.

Whatever type of person you are, your productivity levels[3] will decline when you try to do several different tasks[4] at the same time, or you quickly move from one task to another. So that's definitely something to avoid[5] if you want to raise your productivity levels. Instead, you should complete one task and then move on to the next.

Stress[6] and feeling worried also make us less productive. Assess how you're feeling before you sit down to work. If you are experiencing stress or feeling worried, try to relax by doing exercise or maybe writing your worries down so you stop thinking about them. This should make it easier for you to concentrate on your work rather than other things that are happening in your life and therefore increase your productivity levels.

(1) يدير/ يتحكم فى
(2) نصائح
(3) مستويات
(4) مهام
(5) يتجنب
(6) قلق/توتر

Listening Text (3)

Woman 1 : Do you think you would get the same results[1] with younger students?

Researcher : Hmm, good question. We're actually going to let younger students take part in our next study. And I would expect that we'll see similar results. By which I mean: some students will become more productive in response[2] to the changes we make, and others won't.

Man : Did you have any situations where a student really didn't want to make the changes that you asked them to make?

Researcher : Well, we definitely didn't want to make anyone study in a specific[3] way. That isn't what it's all about and it probably isn't going to work. Fortunately, all the students who took part were happy to make the changes we suggested. In fact, sometimes it was difficult to stop them from continuing with the change when we needed to move on to the next one.

Woman 2 : I wanted to know if the students in the study allowed you to share their diaries with other researchers.

Researcher: Oh no, we agreed to keep all of that information within our research[4] team. We saw that as private[5] information and we're just sharing our analysis[6] of it.

(1) نتائج
(2) رد/استجابة
(3) محدد
(4) بحث علمي
(5) خاص
(6) تحليل

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The doctor says you'll get the results when the blood .... is complete.
   a) pattern b) cell
   c) analysis d) disease
2. I am writing an email in .... to the company's email of last week.
   a) activity b) response
   c) refusal d) hacking
3. In a five-star hotel, each guest has a .... bathroom in his / her room.
   a) public b) general
   c) special d) private
4. In this video game, players advance to the next .... by collecting all the pieces and constructing the spaceship.
   a) level b) floor
   c) standard d) route
5. This week's health programme has some .... on healthy eating.
   a) taps b) tapes
   c) tips d) traps

Check the answers at the end of the book

Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

assess — يقيم/يحلل
- to make a judgment about a person or a situation after thinking carefully about it

decline — ينخفض
- to decrease in quantity or importance

efficiency — كفاءة
- the quality of doing something well and effectively, without wasting time, money, or energy

productivity — إنتاجية
- the rate at which goods are produced, and the amount produced

progress — تقدم
- the process of getting better at doing something

raise — يرفع/يزيد
- to move or lift something to a higher position, place, or level

vary — يتغير/يتنوع
- if several things of the same type vary, they are all different from each other

Notes on Vocabulary

1

delay يؤجل (ينتظر حتى وقت لاحق لفعل شيء)	*to wait until a later time to do something* - He decided to delay his decision until he had seen the full report.
procrastinate يماطل (يؤجل فعل شيء يجب فعله)	*to delay doing something that you ought to do* Don't procrastinate – make a start on your assignments as soon as you get them.

progress
تقدم (عملية التحسن فى أداء شىء)

the process of getting better at doing something
- Assessment tests are evaluating the students' progress.
- We have made good progress towards meeting our objectives.

advance
تقدم (اكتشاف أو اختراع أو تغير يجلب التقدم)

a discovery, invention, or change that brings progress
- There have been a lot of advances in scientific knowledge lately.
- In recent years, there have been enormous economic and social advances in Egypt.

breakthrough
إنجاز/اختراق (اكتشاف أو إنجاز هام خاصة ما يحدث بعد فترة طويلة من المحاولة)

an important discovery or achievement, especially one that happens after a long period of trying
- Scientists have described the discovery as a major breakthrough.
- The breakthrough in the investigation came when police found a stolen car.

2

reason
سبب (تبرير لسبب حدث أو القيام بفعل)

why something happens, or why someone does something
- What was the reason for the delay?
- I don't know the reason why he left his last job.

explanation
تفسير (مجموعة من الأسباب توضح سبب حدوث شىء)

a set of reasons that helps you to understand why something happens
- There are various possible explanations for climate change.
- Is there any explanation for his behaviour?

excuse
عذر (تبرير لشىء فعلته أو كان يجب أن تفعله وغالبًا غير حقيقى أو دقيق)

a reason that you give to explain why you have done something bad, or haven't done something that you should have done
- She said she couldn't come because she had to work late, but it was just an excuse.

3

aim = goal
هدف (شىء تأمل أن تحققه بفعل شىء)

something you hope to achieve by doing something
- The main aim of the plan was to provide employment for local people.
- The country can achieve its goal of reducing poverty by a third.

target
مستهدف (كمية أو مقدار تريد أن تحققه)

a particular amount or total that you want to achieve
- The company is hoping to meet its target of increasing profits by 10%.

ambition
طموح (شىء تأمل أن تحققه فى حياتك أو مهنتك فى المستقبل)

something that you very much want to achieve in your future life/career
- Ferial Ashraf achieved her ambition of winning a medal in the Olympic Games.

4

diary
يوميات/ مذكرات (لتسجيل أحداث أو آراء)

- I've put the date of the party down in my diary.

journal
دورية (يوميات يكتبها شخص هام)

- The university library buys a copy of all the major science journals.

blog
مدونة (مذكرات أو تسجيل آراء على أحد مواقع الإنترنت)

- The chef has a food blog in which she shares recipes, tips and restaurant reviews.

5

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

Did you notice these notes while reading?

- .... we assessed the productivity levels of sixteen to eighteen-year-old students.
  .... and asked them to keep a diary over a six-month period.

لاحظ استخدام صيغة المفرد وليس الجمع مع العدد (year - month) فى مثل هذه التعبيرات.

- Studying at night instead of sleeping does not allow the body and brain to rest.

In conclusion, we can state that studying in the morning seems to help most students to become more productive

لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) كفاعل بمعنى الاسم (الدراسة أو المذاكرة) كما لاحظ استخدام الفعل معه فى صيغة المفرد.

- Another bad habit that some students have is studying all night.

لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) هنا كمفعول بعد الفعل (is) وليس بمعنى المضارع المستمر.

- Try working at different times of day and find out which time of day is best for you
  ... levels will decline when you try to do several different tasks at the same time, ...

لاحظ استخدام (verb+ing) بعد الفعل (try) بمعنى يجرب واستخدام (المصدر + to) بمعنى يحاول.

- If you are experiencing stress or feeling worried, try to relax by doing exercise or maybe writing your worries down so you stop thinking about them.

لاحظ استخدام المضارع المستمر فى فعل الشرط فى الحالة الأولى لـ (if) كما لاحظ صيغة الأمر فى جواب الشرط.

- Well, we definitely didn't want to make anyone study in a specific way.

لاحظ استخدام الفعل فى صيغة المصدر بدون (to) بعد الفعل (make) بمعنى يجعل.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The doctor decided to .... my grandfather's surgery for a week for more tests.
   a) delay b) procrastinate c) forward d) delete
2. The owners of the new club are setting a/an .... of 2,000 new members.
   a) aim b) target c) ambition d) result
3. Because of being late for work, I made up some .... about my car breaking down.
   a) reason b) explanation c) excuse d) cause
4. Regular tests enable the teacher to monitor the .... of each child.
   a) progress b) advance c) breakthrough d) result
5. You can post anything on a .... — a message, link, photo or video clip.
   a) diary b) journal c) research d) blog

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Workbook Vocabulary & Vocabulary Notes

1 The teacher is satisfied with our .... at school but he thinks we can do better.
a) breakthrough b) progress c) failure d) respect

2 The tennis game was .... twice by rain, so it continued for three hours.
a) explained b) repeated c) depicted d) interrupted

3 For years, the politician had kept a detailed .... and he intends to publish it in a book.
a) blog b) journal c) diary d) research

4 The directors of the different departments will meet .... to discuss the company's financial problems.
a) regularly b) totally c) accidentally d) significantly

5 The rooms in this hotel may .... in size but they all have a television and a telephone.
a) evolve b) vary c) manage d) raise

6 The young man will be in a wheelchair for the .... of his life after the accident.
a) change b) part c) rest d) conclusion

7 Although she has severe pains, the secretary never complained or used her illness as a/an ....
a) excuse b) reason c) explanation d) intention

8 The company director said that the new fashion line .... to meet its sales targets.
a) failed b) felt c) fell d) filled

9 The monthly tests are used to .... individual students' ability and knowledge.
a) redirect b) assess c) decline d) delay

10 I was impressed by the .... with which the new secretary types documents.
a) analysis b) deficiency c) efficiency d) oppression

11 Successful managers are always looking for effective ways to increase employees' ....
a) stress b) immobility c) laziness d) productivity

12 The police officer said that the chemical .... of the victim's dress revealed traces of blood.
a) treatment b) analysis c) result d) error

13 The new strategy is helping children develop the .... of reading for fun.
a) habit b) custom c) fiction d) response

14 Your mobile phone can make you ...., so it is better to put it away while studying.
a) analysed b) concentrated c) focused d) distracted

15 Some people tend to .... when it comes to paying their bills.

a) duplicate b) procrastinate c) hibernate d) recuperate

16 The opening of the new branch of the bank is .... until the New Year.

a) damaged b) forwarded c) procrastinated d) delayed

17 My brother's teacher complains that he is always making .... for his low test marks.

a) results b) plans c) excuses d) space

18 My boss told me that I can trust the secretary – she's completely ....

a) regular b) honest c) deceitful d) specific

19 The news announced that the crash .... in the deaths of 14 passengers.

a) resulted b) reasoned c) persuaded d) varied

20 Police investigations proved that the accident was caused by human ....

a) task b) aim c) error d) quality

21 The nurse .... the patient a glass of lemonade and told him to drink and try to calm down.

a) warned b) delivered c) treated d) handed

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

22 The police officer said that he would .... some conclusions from the investigations.

a) refuse b) draw c) take d) give

23 The teachers will explain the school's needs .... detail in their next meeting.

a) at b) for c) of d) in

24 My teachers always advise me to .... a study plan to get high marks.

a) make b) do c) discard d) replace

25 While I was travelling, I .... a diary every day.

a) read b) kept c) lost d) missed

26 Her investigations ultimately led .... the discovery of the missing documents.

a) with b) for c) in d) to

27 The .... of the COVID-19 vaccines are still questioned by some scientists.

a) effect b) effectiveness c) effective d) affecting

28 The jacket is available in .... colours you can choose from.

a) vary b) variety c) various d) varying

29 She didn't mention the economy in her speech. The verb "mention" is similar in meaning to ....

a) lead b) leave c) ignore d) refer to

30 We need to tidy the house before the guests arrive. The verb "tidy" is the opposite of the verb ....

a) realise b) organise c) disorganise d) evaporate



Lessons 1 & 2



B Language

Causative verbs

الأفعال السببية

make/let/allow/stop

نستخدم هذه الأفعال لنقول إن شخصًا ما أو موقفًا أجبر أو سمح لشخص ما آخر بفعل شيء ما أو أوقفه عن عمل شيء:

Rule	Example
1) make + obj. + inf.	My parents make me tidy my room.
2) let + obj. + inf.	Ali lets me use his mobile phone.
3) allow + obj. + to + inf.	Ali allows me to use his mobile phone.
4) stop + obj. + from + v.ing.	The cold weather stops us from going out.

عند استخدام make يعني إجبار الشخص بفعل شيء وهي تعني force

عند استخدام let/allow يعني السماح لشخص بفعل شيء وهي تعني permission

نستخدم السببية أيضا لبيان أننا غالبًا لا نفعل الشيء بأنفسنا ولكن شخصًا آخر يقوم بفعل الشيء لنا وهي قسمان:

١) معلوم ٢) مجهول

والأفعال المستخدمة هي have - get:

Causative

Active

Have + عاقل + Inf.

I have my son clean the room every Friday.

Get + عاقل + to +Inf. = persuade

Ali got his mother to make a cake.

Passive

Have/get + غير عاقل + P.P.

I have my room cleaned every day.

Ali had his car repaired yesterday.

She will have a ring bought tomorrow.

لاحظ

١) عند استخدام have يعني الطلب أو سؤال شخص أن يفعل شيء وهي تعني ask

٢) عند استخدام get يعني إقناع شخص أن يفعل شيء وهي تعني persuade وإن كان لها معنى «يجعل» أيضًا بدون إقناع مثل:

- My stomach pain got me to stay in bed for a week.

Causative (Passive)

ونبدأ السببية فى المجهول بالشخص صاحب الشىء

الشخص صاحب الشىء + v. to have/ get + الشىء (المفعول) + p.p.

Causative (Passive)

	have			present simple
	had			past simple
	am having			present cont.
	was having			past cont.
I	have had	my car	repaired	present perfect
	had had			past perfect
	will have			future
	can have			infinitive
	must have			infinitive

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My friend allowed me .... his car twice.
a) borrow
b) to borrowing
c) borrowing
d) to borrow

2 Let's .... this crossword puzzle together.
a) did
b) doing
c) do
d) to do

3 We'll get the plumber .... the pipes.
a) to fix
b) fixes
c) fixing
d) fix

4 What made you .... that?
a) to do
b) do
c) doing
d) done

5 The rain didn't stop us .... the trip.
a) enjoy
b) to enjoy
c) from enjoying
d) enjoyed

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Language Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I had my friend .... me to the airport.
a) to drive b) driving c) drive d) driven

2 She grabbed the rail to stop herself ....
a) from falling b) falls c) to fall d) fall

3 The teacher made us .... the whole exercises.
a) to rewrite b) rewritten c) rewriting d) rewrite

4 His wife got him .... wasting much money on buying useless things.
a) stops b) to stop c) stop d) stopping

5 I don't allow my guests .... in my flat.
a) smoking b) smoke c) to smoke d) to smoking

6 I can let you .... another 10 pounds, but no more.
a) to have b) have c) having d) be having

7 You should have your visa .... before it expires.
a) to extend b) be extended c) to be extended d) extended

8 Before the meeting, the manager always gets the reports ....
a) typed b) to type c) typing d) type

9 I .... a plumber to fix the dripping tap yesterday.
a) am having b) got c) had d) made

10 We usually have a chef .... our food.
a) cook b) to cooking c) to cook d) cooked

11 My glasses are broken. I'm going to have a new pair .... this evening.
a) to make b) will make c) made d) make

12 Some people seem to let their kids .... whatever they like.
a) have done b) doing c) to do d) do

13 Nothing can stop us .... what we want to achieve
a) from achieving b) to achieve c) of achieving d) achieve

14 We must allow young people .... independence.
a) develop b) to develop c) developing d) developed

15 My parents always .... me do my homework before I go out.
a) get b) allow c) make d) persuade

16 The examiner made us .... our identification in order to be admitted to the test.
a) showing b) to show c) showed d) show

17 Would you approve if I had this article ....?
a) to be copied b) copied c) been copied d) to copy

18 She tries hard to finish her homework on time, but she can never .... it all done.
a) has b) gets c) get d) let

19 Don't allow your problems .... your life.
a) to dominate b) dominate c) will dominate d) dominating

20 The internet has stopped young people .... to each other.
a) talked b) talk c) talking d) from talking

21 If you ask nicely, mum will probably .... a piece of cake.
a) make you have b) let you have c) get you to have d) to let you have

22 Samy's parents should .... him study because his grades are poor.
a) get b) make c) allow d) let
23 I have got a technician .... my washing machine recently.
a) to check b) checked c) check d) checking
24 We had a maid .... our house last Tuesday. It doesn't need doing today.
a) to cleaning b) cleans c) clean d) to clean
25 You can't stop people .... what they think.
a) from saying b) say c) to say d) to saying
26 Let him .... the calculator to finish the mathematics problem quickly.
a) to use b) using c) uses d) use
27 A 24-hour ceasefire allowed the two armies .... an agreement.
a) to reaching b) to reach c) reaching d) reach
28 Someone stole my bike last night. Have you ever ....?
a) had stolen your bike b) stolen your bike
c) had your bike stolen d) been stolen your bike
29 My father always .... my homework before going to bed.
a) makes me done b) made me to do
c) makes me do d) makes me to do
30 I .... my house decorated last week and it looks wonderful.
a) had had b) got c) have d) was got
31 I'll have the clothes .... and ....
a) wash / iron b) washed / ironed
c) to wash / to iron d) to be washed / ironed
32 Are you going to have your shoes polished? - No, I will .... myself.
a) polish them b) polish it c) have them polished d) get it polished
33 What makes him .... and his eyes .... all the time?
a) coughing/watering b) to cough/to water
c) cough/water d) coughs/water
34 Mind you don't get your fingers .... in the door.
a) to catch b) caught c) catching d) catch
35 The boss made the employees stay for another 3 hours after work. This means he .... them.
a) begged b) asked c) persuaded d) forced
36 It is high time we .... the car serviced.
a) had b) have c) having d) to have
37 Which of the following is correctly structured?
a) I allowing myself to get distracted very easily.
b) I allow myself to get distracted very easily.
c) I allow to myself to get distracted very easily.
d) I allow myself getting distracted very easily.
38 My father had a barber cut his hair yesterday. This means that ....
a) he forced him to do it b) he persuaded him to do it
c) he advised him to do it d) he asked him to do it
39 My uncle trims the trees in his garden every 6 months. This means that ....
a) he doesn't trim them himself. b) he gets someone to trim them
c) he trims the trees himself. d) he has the trees trimmed
40 Ali had his car washed the other day. This means that ....
a) Ali washed his car himself b) someone washed Ali's car
c) Ali's car is still dirty d) someone will wash Ali's car

Test Yourself in 20



Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The Minister of Health .... that standards at the governmental hospitals were developing.
a) denied b) relied c) stated d) prospected

2 Experts advise us to start studying very early because most of us are more .... in the morning.
a) defective b) productive c) reflective d) abusive

3 After the storm, the government officials .... the town's need for aid.
a) accused b) recessed c) insisted d) assessed

4 In the last few years, scientists have made great .... in the fight against diseases.
a) progress b) battle c) race d) inspection

5 The cost of a room at most hotels can .... according to the season.
a) carry b) vary c) reply d) deploy

6 The study of the new vaccine was carried out by .... at Oxford University.
a) consumers b) sellers c) researchers d) managers

7 The editor asked me to rewrite the report as it contained a lot of typing ....
a) sorts b) rights c) details d) errors

8 The methods used by younger teachers differ .... from those used by older ones.
a) abusively b) significantly c) reflectively d) repulsively

9 I don't let the cats .... on the bed.
a) slept b) to sleep c) sleep d) sleeping

10 I had my eyeglasses .... when I was at the stadium.
a) stole b) stealing c) to steal d) stolen

11 .... your brother do some of the work.
a) Make b) Tell c) Allow d) Ask

12 My parents wouldn't allow me .... to the party.
a) go b) to go c) going d) gone

13 Parents should .... their children to limit the amount of time they spend using mobile phones.
a) have b) make c) get d) let

14 There's nothing to stop you .... for the job yourself.
a) apply b) to apply c) of applying d) from applying

15 After I had .... the fence built, no one broke into my garden.
a) had b) let c) made d) caused

16 My boss let me leave early. This means that he .... to leave early.
a) forced me b) gave me permission
c) persuaded me d) asked me

17 Which of the following is correctly punctuated?
a) My pin number has two 5's. It's easy to remember.
b) My pin number has two 5s. It's easy to remember.
c) My pin number has two 5s'. It's easy to remember.
d) My pin number has two 5s!. It's easy to remember.

18 Choose the essay topic that best suits this statement.
"It's important that we always follow traffic rules to reduce the chances of accidents, keep pedestrians safe, and prevent traffic jams."

a) How to prevent highway traffic jams.
b) How to ensure pedestrian safety.
c) Ways to prevent traffic accidents.
d) Advantages of following traffic rules.

19 On the one hand, technology has rendered us great services, but on the other hand, it has caused us some problems. The underlined expressions show ....

a) similarity between two different facts
b) comparing two different facts
c) addition
d) expressing cause and result

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Computers are gradually[1] replacing human labor[2] in many areas of our lives. An important area in computer technology is the use of computer systems to perform jobs which require intelligence, such as learning how to sing or spotting[3] familiar objects. Most computers cannot do these things because they do not have a 'brain' to think. However, things are changing as people come up with newer and smarter computers.

Computer scientists have come up with computers which can 'think'. These special computers do not actually have 'brains' but are fed with many facts and pieces of information about the job they are built to do. For example, there are computers which can identify[4] which area contains gold or other materials. They learn about the important qualities of the mineral[5] such as its color, weight and the areas it is most likely to be found. This makes it easier for computers to spot the mineral in different parts of the world.

Computers can also be used in factories. Businessmen and factory owners use computers in the form of robots. These robots contain computer systems that enable them to perform the job they are programmed to do. A single robot can do a job which would take three people to do; this saves businessmen precious[6] time. There would no longer be any need to train workers for different tasks and it would be cost-effective for employers as well.

In time to come, it is possible that computer systems would take away many jobs. However, there is also an increased need for people who can build, design and repair computers. Thus, not all jobs will run out in the near future.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20 The best title to the passage is: ....

a) Computers in factories
b) Having a computer is something useless
c) The computer is a great invention
d) The computer will destroy man

21 According to paragraph 1, what are some tasks which need 'thinking' that computers are not able to do?

a) Performing jobs.
b) Learning.
c) Replacing human labor.
d) Coming up with newer computers.

22 The phrase 'things are changing' (paragraph 1) refers to ....

a) people buying computers
b) computers looking like people
c) people thinking like computers
d) computers being able to perform intelligent tasks

(1) تدريجيًا (2) عمالة (3) التعرف على (4) يحدد (5) معدن (6) ثمين

23 What is different about today's computers?

a) They can 'think'. b) They can 'sink'. c) They can 'sing'. d) They can 'fly'.

24 The word "fed" (paragraph 2) suggests that ....

a) computers are given food to eat to do work

b) information has to be input into the computers

c) nourishing vitamins have to be provided to computers

d) information has to be obtained from computers and given to another source

25 Robots save time for businessmen by ....

a) training other workers

b) being built in factories

c) doing the job of one person

d) not being needed to be trained

26 According to paragraph 3, employers can save on money by using robots as ....

a) robots need not be paid

b) robots are not expensive

c) robots cannot be trained

d) robots can create more jobs

27 The antonym of the word "precious" is ....

a) valuable b) priceless c) worthless d) important

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d:

28 Having a lot of work to do can lead to procrastination and stop all productivity. Therefore, students should learn how to prioritize tasks they should be working on.

a) قد يؤدى القيام بالكثير من العمل إلى المماطلة وإيقاف الإنتاجية بالكامل لذلك يجب أن يتعلم الطلاب كيفية تحديد أولويات المهام التى يجب أن يعملوا عليها.

b) قد يؤدى القيام بالكثير من العمل إلى المعالجة وإيقاف الإنتاجية بالكامل لذلك يجب أن يتعلم الطلاب كيفية تحديد أولويات المهام التى يجب أن يعملوا عليها.

c) قد يؤدى القيام بالكثير من العمل إلى المماطلة وإيقاف الإنتاج بالكامل لذلك يجب أن يتعلم الطلاب كيفية تحديد أولويات المهام التى يجب أن يعملوا عليها.

d) قد يؤدى القيام بالكثير من العمل إلى المماطلة وزيادة الإنتاجية بالكامل لذلك يجب أن يتعلم الطلاب كيفية تحديد أولويات المهام التى يجب أن يعملوا عليها.

29 Motivation is what energizes, and controls behaviour. Motivated employees will retain a high level of innovation while producing higher- quality work at a higher level of efficiency.

a) الدافع هو ما يثبط ويسيطر على السلوك حيث سيحتفظ الموظفون المحبطون بمستوى عالٍ من الابتكار مع إنتاج عمل عالى الجودة بمستوى أعلى من الكفاءة.

b) الدافع هو ما ينشط ويسيطر على السلوك حيث سيحتفظ الموظفون المتحمسون بمستوى عالٍ من الابتكار مع إنتاج عمل عالى الجودة بمستوى أعلى من الكفاءة.

c) الدافع هو ما ينشط ويسيطر على السلوك حيث سيحتفظ الموظفون المتحمسون بمستوى عالٍ من الابتكار مع إنتاج عمل عالى الجودة بمستوى أعلى من الكفاءة.

d) الدافع هو ما يثبط ويسيطر على السلوك حيث سيحتفظ الموظفون المتحمسون بمستوى عالٍ من الاستهلاك مع إنتاج عمل عالى الجودة بمستوى أعلى من الكفاءة.

30 تختلف أسباب السعادة من شخص لآخر، فالبعض يجدها فى جمع المال، وآخرون يجدونها فى مساعدة الآخرين والتغلب على لحظات الفشل.

a) The reasons of happiness different from one person to another, some find it in collecting money and others find it in helping others and overcoming moments of failure.

b) The reasons for happiness different from one person to another, some find it in collecting money and others find it in helping others and overcoming moments of failure.

c) The causes for happiness differ from one person to another, some find it in saving money and others find it in helping others and overcoming moments of failure.

d) The causes of happiness differ from one person to another, some find it in collecting money and others find it in helping others and overcoming moments of failure.





Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

alarm (n) إنذار/منبه	logic (n) منطق
area (n) منطقة/مساحة	manage (v) (d) ينجح/يتمكن/يدير/يتحكم فى
carry on (v) (y-ied) يستمر فى	mean(v) يقصد/يعنى
drawback (n) عيب	naturally (adv) بشكل طبيعى
evaluate (v) (d) يقيم	overall (adj) (adv) إجمالى/شامل/بصورة شاملة
exactly (adv) بالضبط	task (n) مهمة
experience (n) (v) (d) خبرة/تجربة/يجرب	unpleasant (adj) غير سار
impact (n) تأثير/اصطدام	

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

add (v) (ed) يضيف	involve (v) (d) يتضمن
alone (adj) بمفرده	option (n) اختيار
anxiety (n) قلق	performance (n) أداء
beliefs (n) معتقدات	point (n) رأى
brainstorming (n) عصف ذهنى	priority (n) أولوية
burned out (adj) منهك/محترق الأعصاب	process (n) عملية
chaos (n) فوضى	quality (n) نوعية/جودة
commuter (n) مسافر يوميًا إلى العمل	reflect (v) (ed) يتأمل/يفكر مليًا
cortisol (n) هرمون الكورتيزول	reflection (n) تفكير/تأمل
create (v) (d) يخلق/ينتج	revise (v) (d) يراجع
decision (n) قرار	session (n) جلسة
definition (n) تعريف	stressful (adj) مجهد
detail (n) تفصيل	summarise (v) (d) يلخص
discussion (n) مناقشة	take part (v) يشارك
disturb (v) (ed) يزعج	tough (adj) قاسٍ/عنيف
forward (adj) متقدم	valuable (adj) قيم/نفيس
hormone (n) هرمون	workplace (n) مكان العمل

Workbook Vocabulary

absolutely (adv)	بالتأكيد/تمامًا
alternative (n)	بديل
blog (n) (v) (ged)	مدونة/يقوم بالتدوين
coach (n)	مدرب
copy (v) (y-ied) (n)	ينسخ/نسخة
cycling (n)	ركوب الدراجات
cyclist (n)	راكب الدراجة
diet (n)	حمية/نظام غذائى
ear plug (n)	سدادة الأذن
evidence (n)	دليل
fan (n)	معجب/مشجع
focus (v) (ed)	يركز/تركيز
grade (n)	تقدير (اختبار)/صف دراسى
massive (adj)	ضخم/شاسع
mentally (adv)	عقليًا/نفسيًا
Olympic (adj)	أولمبى
Olympics (n)	الدورة الأولمبية
performance (n)	أداء
pillow (n)	وسادة/مخدة
practice (n)	ممارسة/تدريب
refreshed (adj)	مسترخ/منتعش
strategy (n)	استراتيجية

Phrases & Expressions & Idioms & prepositions

a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت
add to options	يضيف إلى الاختيارات
at least	على الأقل
come up with ideas	يستنبط/يخرج بأفكار
feel comfortable	يشعر بالراحة
feel my best	أشعر بأفضل حالة
make a difference	يحدث فرقًا
add to	يضيف إلى
dislike about	يكره/يمقت بخصوص
make sure	يتأكد
pros and cons of	مميزات وعيوب
put ... into practice	يضع موضع التنفيذ
set world records	يحقق أرقامًا قياسية عالمية
share ideas	يشارك أفكارًا
take action	يتخذ إجراء
take/ have break	يأخذ فترة راحة
feel about	يشعر بشأن
focused on	مركز على

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
add	يضيف	addition	إضافة	additional	إضافى
evaluate	يقيم	evaluation	تقييم	evaluative	تقييمى
focus	يركز	focus	تركيز	focused	مركز
manage	يدير/يتحكم فى	management	إدارة	managerial	إدارى
mean	يعنى/يقصد	meaning	معنى	meaningful	ذو مغزى/ذو معنى
perform	يؤدى	performance	أداء	performing	مؤدٍ
practise	يمارس/يتمرن	practice	ممارسة/تدريب	practised	ممارس
refresh	يسترخى/ينتعش	refreshment	انتعاش	refreshed	منتعش/مسترخ

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
alarm	إنذار	alert/warning	quietness	هدوء
discussion	مناقشة	argument/debate	agreement/silence	اتفاق/صمت
drawback	عيب	disadvantage/demerit	advantage	ميزة
evaluate	يقيم	judge/assess	neglect	يهمل
focus	يركز	concentrate/aim attention	ignore	يتجاهل
manage	يدير	handle/control	mismanage/fail	يفشل
overall	شامل	comprehensive	specific	محدد
practice	ممارسة/تدريب	training	idleness	كسل
priority	أولوية	preference	inferiority	دونية

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The computer programmer has the difficult .... of organizing the information.
   - a) task
   - b) profession
   - c) position
   - d) work
2. You can find a .... amount of information on the Internet through thousands of websites.
   - a) useless
   - b) tiny
   - c) massive
   - d) strange
3. The pilot skillfully .... to land the plane on the runway and saved the passengers.
   - a) directed
   - b) managed
   - c) passed
   - d) accepted
4. Planning your study well helps you get the best .... in exams.
   - a) grades
   - b) ranks
   - c) degrees
   - d) courses
5. A healthy .... helps build the body's natural defences against diseases.
   - a) plight
   - b) right
   - c) fight
   - d) diet



Reading Text (1)

Trying to raise my productivity levels: Week 1

I tried dividing my study time into twenty-five minute periods and taking breaks between them. I can understand the logic[1] of doing this and I'm sure it helps some people to concentrate better because they only have to concentrate for short periods. However, the big drawback[2] for me was that I kept looking at the time to see when it was time to have a break. Looking back, I suppose I should have set an alarm instead so I didn't have to do that and then it might have been more helpful for me.

I decided to always do the task[3] that I found the most difficult first and, of course, this was quite hard to do at first because it isn't what you naturally want to do. However, I kept going with it and after a few days, I noticed how it was helping me to manage[4] my time better and meant that I made a better job of the unpleasant tasks than I did before. This definitely had a positive impact on my productivity.

I liked the idea of making a study plan because I thought it would help me to get better organised. It definitely helped me to feel less stressed about what I needed to do because I wrote down exactly what I had to do in a list and that made it seem easier to get everything done. I was surprised by what a big difference the study plan made. I'm definitely going to carry on[5] making study plans.

(1) منطق
(2) عيب
(3) مهمة
(4) يدير/يتحكم بـ
(5) يستمر

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

Huge benefits from small changes

The last time I blogged, I was worried about my exams. Well, you won't believe what happened!

A teacher told me about a coach called David Brailsford. He helped the British Olympic cycling team set 7 world records in the 2012 London Olympics. But how did this coach change their performance? Well, he analysed absolutely everything and improved each thing by 1%. He made lots of small changes to the cyclists' clothes, their diet and even their pillows! It had a very positive impact on their productivity.

So, I thought I'd do the same to help me study more effectively. I looked into the following areas:

- when I concentrate best
- for how long I can concentrate for before I need a break
- how I sleep best
- what food makes me feel my best

At first, I thought it was a waste of time but I kept going with it. I realised I was more mentally active in the morning and after 6 pm so that's when I studied the most difficult subjects. I also reduced the amount I ate for dinner and bought some ear plugs. I now wake up feeling really refreshed and ready to go.

Did it work? Well, I was surprised by what a big difference this strategy made. In Maths and History, my worst subjects, I got the second highest marks in the class and my grades in all my other subjects increased by 48% in just one month! Looking back, I should have done this before! Making a 1% change in different things made a massive difference for me and I'm sure it'll help you too! So why not try it yourself?

Adam



Listening Text (1)



Zeinab : OK, we're all here now and we have everything we need. So, we need to come up with ideas for how we can welcome new students to our school and make them feel comfortable here. Does anyone already have any ideas they want to share(1)?

Nabila : I was thinking that we could put every new student together with a student who's already here. That student could show the new student and be there to help them when they need it.

Zeinab : That sounds like a nice idea. Would you be happy for us to add that to our possible solutions(2), Reem?

Reem : Sure, yes. I was just thinking how that would work. But I think it could work well.

Nabila : Well, it might lead to a new student spending a lot of time with just one other student, but at least the new student will get a lot of support.

Reem : Yes, exactly and that's our priority(3).

Zeinab : Great. So, do we all agree that this could be a good solution?

Nabila : Well, I clearly do!

Reem : Yes, I think it's a good idea too. Let's add it to our options(4).

(1) يشارك
(2) حلول
(3) أولوية
(4) اختيارات

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

Sami : Ok, Rami, do you want to summarise what we have so far?

Rami : OK, we have two ideas so far. One is close your bedroom door and ask your family not to disturb you and the other one, which Adel mentioned, is to leave your phone in another room. Does anyone have any other ideas they want to share?

Sami : How about making a study plan? It might lead to using some valuable study time but at least you have things clearly organised and know when you should take a break and what subjects you need to concentrate more on. What do you think, Adel?

Adel : That's a good idea. Let's add it to our options. Another way to be more productive when revising for exams is to revise with a friend.

Rami : Yes, but don't you think that might lead to you chatting about other things?

Adel : Perhaps. But at least it makes the revision more interesting, and you can test one another too.

Sami : I see your point. It could be useful. Would you be happy for us to add that to our possible solutions?

Adel : Yes, of course. Can you think of other ideas?

Rami : I think it's important to eat healthily and practise self-care when we're stressed about studying.

Sami : Really? Can you expand on that?

Rami: Well, revising for exams can be really stressful. When we're stressed, we produce a hormone called cortisol in our bodies. If we have too much in our bodies for a long time it can lead to heart problems, depression and anxiety which is not good for our well-being at all.

Adel : Wow! Where did you hear that?

Rami: My mum's a doctor. She told me about it when she made me create a study plan because she said good organisation and forward planning is the best way to avoid negative stress. Organising ourselves well should be a priority because it helps to reduce stress.

Adel : Interesting point. So, we have five solutions, but we need to decide on which is the most efficient way to be more productive when revising for exams. What do you think Sami?

Sami: That's a tough one. I'm between 'making a study plan' and 'leaving your phone in a different room'. What about you Rami?

Rami: Yes, both ideas are good. But speaking from experience, I'd go for the study plan as the most effective. How about you Adel?

Adel : At first, I thought that eating healthily was the most efficient idea but after hearing what Rami's mum said I've come round to that idea too.

Sami: So, do we all agree that this is the best option?

Rami: Yes, I think so.

Adel : Yes, I agree.

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My son's .... at school has greatly improved since he started making a study plan.

a) activation b) performance
c) acting d) interference

2 By 7:30 the Cairo metro is jammed with the usual morning .... going to work and students going to school.

a) opponents b) enemies
c) scorers d) commuters

3 I couldn't work with the kids around .... my concentration.

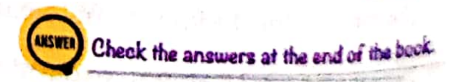
a) assisting b) conveying
c) disturbing d) riddling

4 Every training .... starts with a series of stretching exercises.

a) access b) session
c) recession d) recreation

5 My father always says that .... planning is important to get good exam results.

a) forward b) backward
c) middle d) restarted



Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

blog — مدونة
- a web page containing information or opinions from a particular person or about a particular subject, to which new information is added regularly

drawback — عيب
- a disadvantage of a situation, plan, product, etc.

grade — درجة/تقدير
- a mark that a student is given for their work or for an examination

logic — منطق
- a way of thinking about something that seems correct and reasonable, or a set of sensible reasons for doing something

priority — أولوية
- the thing that you think is most important and that needs attention before anything else

Notes on Vocabulary

1

method طريقة (لفعل شىء خاصة المعروفة أو المستخدمة)	You can choose whichever method of payment you prefer.
strategy استراتيجية (مجموعة مخططة بعناية من الطرق لتحقيق شىء صعب أو يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا)	The firm is considering a change in its marketing strategy.
tactics تكتيكات (طرق مستخدمة لتحقيق ما تريده فى لعبة أو مسابقة أو معركة)	The team was discussing tactics for the game.

2

copy ينسخ (يصنع أو ينتج شيئًا مثل شىء آخر)	Many people have tried to copy his paintings.
photocopy يصـور (مستندًا أو ورقة مكتوبة أو يصور باستخدام آلة)	I'll photocopy the letter and give it to you.
forge يزور (ينسخ شيئًا مكتوبًا أو مطبوعًا بطريقة غير قانونية)	He forged my signature on the contract.
pirate يقرصن (ينسخ شيئًا ويبيعه بطريقة غير قانونية مثل الكتب والأسطوانات وبرامج الكمبيوتر)	A survey suggests that 27% of software in the UK has been pirated.

practice

ممارسة/اعتياد (على شيء كجزء من العمل أو الحياة اليومية)

- The hotel has ended the practice of leaving chocolates in guests' rooms.

3

habit

عادة شخصية (شيء تفعله عادة بدون تفكير)

- Biting your nails is a bad habit.
- I always go to the same supermarket, out of habit.

custom

عادة مجتمعية (شيء يفعله الناس كتقليد مقبول في المجتمع)

- In Japan, it is the custom to take off your shoes when you enter a house.

discussion

مناقشة (إعطاء آراء عن شيء مهم)

- I had a discussion with my son about his school work.

4

debate

مناظرة (جدال) غالبًا أطراف الجدال مختلفون

- There has been a great debate about genetically modified food.

manage

ينجح/يتمكن من (يتبعها اسم أو ضمير أو المصدر + to)

- I don't think I can manage a long walk today.
- We managed to persuade him to come with us.

5

succeed (in)

ينجح/يتمكن من (يتبعها noun أو verb + ing)

- Many women were able to succeed in politics.
- My brother succeeded in passing his final tests.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

Did you notice these notes while reading?

- A teacher told me about a coach called David Brailsford.

لاحظ حذف ضمير وصل يتبعه (verb to be) فالجملة أصلها:

- A teacher told me about a coach who is called David Brailsford.

- I now wake up feeling really refreshed and ready to go.

لاحظ استخدام (verb +ing) هنا بمعنى الحال (أصحو شاعرًا بـ).

- Looking back I should have done this before!

لاحظ استخدام (should have+ p.p.) هنا بمعنى الندم على شيء في الماضي.

- So why not try it yourself?

لاحظ الصيغة غير الرسمية للاقتراح فيمكن أن يكون الاقتراح كالتالي:

- So why don't you try it yourself?

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The criminal .... to escape by diving into the river and the police couldn't find him.

a) managed b) succeeded

c) failed d) passed

2 My parents were in the same .... at school.

a) rank b) grade

c) degree d) course

3 It is standard medical .... in Egypt not to tell the patient about potentially fatal illnesses, especially cancer.

a) habit b) practice

c) custom d) training

4 The young programmer was accused of .... games on CDs.

a) preparing b) printing

c) pirating d) forging

5 World countries need to devise an effective long-term .... to deal with climate change.

a) method b) strategy

c) tactic d) play

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Workbook Vocabulary & Vocabulary Notes

1 A fire .... went off and the supermarket had to be evacuated at once.
a) arm b) weapon c) force d) alarm

2 I think improving public transport is one of the most difficult .... we face in Egypt, but we are doing better.
a) tasks b) works c) professions d) expeditions

3 The book would look a lot more attractive if the publisher .... a few colour pictures to the pages.
a) added b) took c) removed d) developed

4 The new computer company was accused of .... some software and selling them under different names.
a) copying b) photocopying c) forging d) pirating

5 After a long .... with her father, she was convinced not to take the job.
a) debate b) fight c) discussion d) dispute

6 The total .... of Egypt is a bit more than one million square kilometres.
a) region b) district c) part d) area

7 There is no difference between the two cars. They look .... the same.
a) effectively b) awfully c) terribly d) exactly

8 The secretary always keeps a .... of any official or important documents that she sends off.
a) part b) letter c) copy d) kind

9 The writer's work as a diplomat gave him .... which he used in his novels.
a) experiments b) experts c) experiences d) excuses

10 Despite the noise made by some journalists, the spokeswoman .... on her statement as if nothing had happened.
a) lifted b) carried c) gave d) lasted

11 It can be difficult to .... the effectiveness of a new drug in a pandemic.
a) evaluate b) neglect c) defy d) doubt

12 I sometimes don't understand the .... of my teenage son's actions.
a) science b) logic c) search d) art

13 Doctors always advise mothers that a balanced .... is important for a child's development.
a) right b) diet c) fight d) insight

14 The essay is equivalent to 180 words and counts for nearly 10 per cent of the .... marks of the test.
a) doubtful b) flexible c) overall d) effectible

15 Education is a top .... in the government's policy, so a lot of money is spent on it.
a) priority b) inferiority c) ability d) possibility

16 The band gave a great .... at the opening ceremony with their songs.

a) race b) performance c) affection d) reflection

17 I felt very .... after taking the short trip in the great beaches of Sharm El Sheikh.

a) refreshed b) concerned c) depressed d) gloomy

18 Our football team has changed the .... after losing four matches and hired a more efficient one.

a) trainee b) owner c) pitch d) coach

19 The government has developed a successful .... for dealing with regional unemployment.

a) step b) foundation c) strategy d) style

20 An .... is a piece of soft material that you put into your ear to keep out noise or water

a) earring b) ear plug c) earphone d) eardrop

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21 Fish is really the food which makes me feel my ...., so I eat it twice a week.

a) health b) best c) back d) better

22 Experts say that chlorine can be added .... the water to kill bacteria.

a) for b) of c) to d) at

23 The only big drawback with the plan was its high cost. The antonym of the noun "drawback" is ....

a) plight b) error c) disadvantage d) advantage

24 The new project gave him the chance to .... his ideas into practice.

a) put b) do c) fly d) design

25 Having a good teacher has made a/an .... for my daughter's progress at school.

a) reply b) effect c) way d) difference

26 The restaurant is now under new .... and is making great profits.

a) manger b) management c) managerial d) managed

27 You must get as much practice as possible before the competition. The synonym of the word "practice" is ....

a) training b) habit c) custom d) reply

28 The young weight lifting champion .... a world record in the last championship.

a) miss b) set c) keep d) reflect

29 After graduation, all my brother's efforts were focused .... getting a suitable job.

a) by b) of c) with d) on

30 Josef returned from vacation in the North Coast feeling relaxed and ....

a) refresh b) refreshment c) refreshed d) refreshes




Lessons 3 & 4

B Language

Causative (Extra points)

١) السببية فى السؤال (نستخدم do/does للمضارع البسيط وdid للماضى البسيط).
٢) السببية فى النفى (نستخدم don't/doesn't للمضارع البسيط وdidn't للماضى البسيط).

- Did you have your meal prepared?
  - No, I didn't (have it prepared). I prepared it myself.

وفى الأزمنة الأخرى نستخدم الفعل المساعد أو الناقص الموجود فى أول السؤال.

- Are you going to have your tooth pulled out by the dentist?
- Have you had your car checked at the garage?
- Will you have your house painted?

٣) تستخدم get بدلًا من have ليفيد الصعوبة أحيانًا.

- He finally got the seats booked.

٤) يمكن القول إن have تأتى على شكل الفعل الذى يكون فى المعلوم فلو كان الفعل به ing فإننا نستخدم having وإن كان الفعل مصدرًا نستخدم have وإن كان الفعل to + inf. فإننا نستخدم to have مثل.

- She likes cleaning her house.
- She'd like(likes) to clean her house.
- She likes having her house cleaned.
- She'd like (likes) to have her house cleaned.

٥) ليس دائمًا استخدام غير العاقل بعد have/get فى المجهول ولكن يمكن استخدام العاقل أيضًا إذا وافق المعنى مثل.

- If you don't get out of my house, I'll have you arrested.

٦) هناك تعبيرات نستخدم معها v.ing ويوجد بها have مثلًا منها I have difficulty وبالقياس I have a hard time/trouble

- I have difficulty finding a flat nowadays.

٧) إذا حول الفعل make (الذى يأتى بعده المصدر) إلى المجهول فإننا نستخدم to قبل المصدر.

- He made me clean the flat on my own.
- I was made to clean the flat ....

٨) يمكن استخدام الفعل stop بدون from بنفس المعنى وهو يوقف شخصًا من عمل شىء.

- I couldn't stop her crying.

٩) لاحظ الفرق بين يوقف شخصًا من stop from ويتوقف قليلًا عن stop of.

- The protesters stopped short of a violent confrontation.

توقف المتظاهرون عن المواجهة العنيفة

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I had my car repaired, but I .... my room painted.
   a) didn't make b) had c) got d) didn't get
2. .... your flat cleaned every week?
   a) Do you have b) Did you have c) Did you get d) Have you had
3. She'd like .... the dinner prepared tonight.
   a) having b) have c) to have d) get
4. I have difficulty .... all these questions.
   a) answered b) answering c) to answer d) answer
5. The children were made .... the homework twice as a kind of punishment.
   a) write b) writing c) to writing d) to write

Check the answers at the end of the book.



Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The sergeant made the criminal talk. This means he .... him to talk.
a) asked b) advised c) persuaded d) forced

2 The bodyguard won't .... you into the center without your card.
a) get b) let c) make d) have

3 It is certainly true, but I can't .... you believe it.
a) make b) allow c) let d) get

4 You should .... him explain why he made such a mistake.
a) allow b) get c) have d) have got

5 He asked if it was possible for us to allow him .... the garden wall.
a) painting b) paint c) painted d) to paint

6 I have the mechanic .... my car for repairs every year.
a) checking b) checked c) check d) to check

7 I will have my house .... next month.
a) redecorating b) redecorated c) to redecorate d) redecorate

8 We weren't .... to take photographs inside the palace by the security staff.
a) allowed b) made c) had d) got

9 His going on holiday without permission from his parents .... them very furious.
a) got b) made c) get d) had

10 Lay the carpet on paper to stop it .... to the floor.
a) to stick b) stuck
c) stick d) from sticking

11 Fathy's car is really dirty. He ought to .... it cleaned at the garage.
a) cause b) have c) make d) let

12 When are you going to get someone .... the carpets?
a) cleaning b) cleaned c) to clean d) clean

13 The teacher doesn't .... his students to chew gum in the classroom.
a) allow b) let c) stop d) get

14 If you don't know how to use the computer, ... your older brother to help you.
a) stop b) have c) let d) get

15 My parents have the garden .... at the weekend.
a) been watered b) to water c) water d) watered

16 Mona .... her older sister .... her clothes yesterday.
a) got/to iron b) have/iron
c) lets / iron d) made/to iron

17 The boss .... him .... a suit, though he wanted to wear sportswear.

a) got/wearing
b) makes/wear
c) made/wear
d) had/worn

18 Ali .... his credit card .... two days ago.

a) made/to change
b) get/to change
c) has/change
d) had/changed

19 The manager .... his secretary .... the documents.

a) made/typed
b) had/type
c) got/type
d) had/typed

20 It is a very profitable business, but I couldn't .... him.......................... up his mind to start it.

a) let/to make
b) get/to make
c) want/to make
d) made/make

21 We were made .... still with our arms folded.

a) sat
b) to sitting
c) sitting
d) to sit

22 My father blamed me for not letting the gardener .... the trees.

a) trim
b) not trim
c) to trim
d) trimming

23 The father has got his children .... a company of their own.

a) find
b) to find
c) to found
d) founding

24 Dad .... me use his car all weekends. It was great.

a) makes
b) got
c) lets
d) let

25 I couldn't stop myself ....

a) from laugh
b) to laugh
c) laughing
d) laugh

26 Teachers at my school don't allow .... during exams.

a) cheating
b) to cheat
c) to cheating
d) cheated

27 Mum does not .... me .... sweets very often.

a) get/have
b) make/to have
c) get/to have
d) let/have

28 He .... his leg broken when he fell off his horse.

a) had
b) was having
c) was getting
d) had had

29 Which of the following is correctly structured?

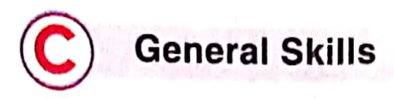
a) He let me use his computer now.
b) He was allowed me to use his computer yesterday.
c) I was allowed to use his computer yesterday.
d) I was allowing to use his computer yesterday.

30 Which of the following isn't correctly structured?

a) He prevented me from interfering in his personal affairs.
b) He stopped me from interfering in his personal affairs.
c) He stopped me interfering in his personal affairs.
d) He stopped me of interfering in his personal affairs.



Lessons 3 & 4



C General Skills

Don't forget to study this part from the Skills Booklet.



Writing

Plan a text about your experiences of using two study tips from Lesson 3. Include the following:

- What you did.
- How you feel about the experiences from your position now.
- The positive effects of using each study tips (if any).
- The negative effects of using each study tips (if any).
- How helpful you found using the study tips overall.
- Plan a text about your experiences of using two study tips from experts.

Model comment

I had a problem raising my productivity and studying harder than before. My friends had three study tips for doing so. However, I decided to choose two of them to try. The first one was having a study plan. The second was revising with a friend before exams.

Firstly, I made a perfect study plan for my school subjects. I decided to study only two subjects after school. I also set a definite time for each subject. This really had a fantastic effect on my study and marks. My teachers were pleased with my progress at school.

Secondly, I decided to revise with my close friend before exams. We studied together at my house as I had my own room whereas he shared his room with his younger brother. Although we did well on the first day, we started wasting a lot of time chatting and surfing the internet on the second and third day. That's why we both decided to stop it and I began to revise alone.

In conclusion, I got a lot of benefits from these study tips. They really boosted my progress at school. I got the final marks in three exams and better marks in the others. I am really grateful to my friends who gave me this useful advice and I suggest that every student try these study tips to increase their productivity and change their study for the better.

Test Yourself in 20 min



Unit 6
Lessons 3 & 4

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 If the .... light in the car goes on, you should fasten your seat belt.
a) alarm b) arm c) disarm d) armour

2 .... medicine can cure many problems, but not diseases like cancer.
a) Nuclear b) Radiology c) Alternative d) Excessive

3 One of the most important ways to .... the symptoms of diabetes is leading a healthy lifestyle.
a) direct b) manage c) vanish d) display

4 Some animals give off a/an .... smell that keeps attackers away.
a) inflected b) cured c) pleasant d) unpleasant

5 The police have arrested a number of people who took .... in the criminal attacks.
a) piece b) place c) part d) apart

6 The .... was about to win the race when his bicycle broke down.
a) driver b) cyclist c) motorist d) assistant

7 After this long and tiring day, I'll be asleep as soon as my head hits the ....
a) pillow b) chair c) case d) safe

8 Karam Gaber became a/an .... champion after winning the gold medal in the Olympics.
a) inventive b) reflective c) defective d) Olympic

9 I liked him because he made me .... a lot.
a) laughed b) to laugh c) laughing d) laugh

10 Students should be allowed .... their own decisions.
a) making b) to make c) making d) to be made

11 Ramy was absent this morning because he had his tooth ....
a) to fill b) to be filled c) filled d) filling

12 When he reached the hotel, he had his luggage .... to his room by the porter.
a) to take b) taken c)) take d) been taken

13 When I was young, I used to have all my clothes .... by my mother.
a) ironed b) ironing c) to iron d) iron

14 We had someone .... our new flat last year and it still looks like new.
a) painted b) to paint c) paint d) painting

15 The grass in my garden is too long. I should get a gardener .... it.
a) to cutting b) cutting c) cut d) to cut

16 Mohamed's house is very hot. He needs to get a technician .... an air conditioner.
a) to install b) install c) installed d) installing

17 The .... is a great achievement. It was nationalised during ....
a) Suez canal, Nasser's Reign. b) Suez Canal, nasser's Reign.
c) Suez Canal, Nasser's reign. d) suez Canal, Nasser's reign.

18 Pollution damages the environment. **Moreover**, it causes many serious health problems. The underlined word shows ....

a) similarity between two different facts
b) comparing two different facts
c) addition
d) expressing cause and result

19 Which of these is not a type of essay?

a) A narrative essay.
b) A descriptive essay.
c) A persuasive essay.
d) A personal essay.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People thought that dreams always came true, and that they came from something outside the person dreaming. Since the end of the 19th century, physicians(1), psychologists(2) and other scientists have been studying dreams. Although they still have much to learn, they think that dreams are created by the dreamer granted(3), or in which they become somebody they would like to be. These are wish-fulfilling(4) dreams; They occasionally dream they are being chased by robbers, or are in danger from fire or flood. These frightening dreams are called nightmares(5). People usually have nightmares when they are upset about something.

Studies about the causes of dreams show many reasons. For example, changes in the brain occur during sleep, and these are probably related to(6) dreaming. But no one knows enough yet about the brain changes in dreaming to say exactly what they are. A dreamer's health affects his dreams. A person who is ill will have different kinds of dreams from those of one who is well. If a person is hungry, or cold, or tired, his dreams may include these feelings. In addition, a large part of any dream comes from the events of the day before. Often the persons or situations in a night dream are those the dreamer met during the day. The feelings of happiness or disappointment(7) which came out in dreams were probably in the dreamer before. All that dream does is to give them an outlet(8).

Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

20 Changes in the brain take place ....

a) by day
b) at night
c) during sleep
d) during meals

21 .... is a terrible dream.

a) A day-dream
b) A nightmare
c) A dreamer
d) Dreamland

22 The underlined word "them" refers to ....

a) feelings
b) dreams
c) nightmares
d) dreamers

23 Who have been studying dreams since the end of the 19th century?

a) Scientists.
b) Psychologists.
c) Physicians.
d) All of these.

24 When do people usually have nightmares?

a) When they are disappointed and sad about something.
b) When they are happy and delighted about something.
c) When they are about to die.
d) When they are cold and hungry.

(1) طبيب (2) طبيب نفسي (3) منح (4) تحقيق (5) كوابيس (6) متعلقة بـ (7) خيبة أمل (8) متنفس

25 The antonym of the word "disappointment" is ....

a) displeasure
b) frustration
c) satisfaction
d) distress

26 The brain changes in dreaming are ....

a) still a mystery
b) known by all
c) known by physicians-psychologists and other scientists
d) easy to understand

27 While dreaming, people are ....

a) the same
b) different
c) alike
d) similar

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d:

28 Worrying about exams is normal. You need some level of worry or stress to motivate you to study. However, too much stress can limit your motivation and stop you from performing at your best.

a) القلق بشأن الامتحانات أمر مميز فأنت بحاجة إلى مستوى معين من القلق أو التوتر لتحفيزك على الدراسة ومع ذلك، فإن الكثير من التوتر يمكن أن يزيد من دوافعك ويمنعك من الأداء بأفضل ما لديك.

b) القلق بشأن الامتحانات أمر غير طبيعى فأنت بحاجة إلى مستوى معين من القلق أو التوتر لتعويدك على الدراسة ومع ذلك، فإن الكثير من التوتر يمكن أن يحد من دوافعك ويمنعك من الأداء بأفضل ما لديك.

c) القلق بشأن الامتحانات أمر طبيعى فأنت بحاجة إلى مستوى معين من القلق أو التوتر لتحفيزك على الدراسة ومع ذلك، فإن الكثير من التوتر يمكن أن يزيد من دوافعك ويدفعك إلى الأداء بأفضل ما لديك.

d) القلق بشأن الامتحانات أمر طبيعى فأنت بحاجة إلى مستوى معين من القلق أو التوتر لتحفيزك على الدراسة ومع ذلك، فإن الكثير من التوتر يمكن أن يحد من دوافعك ويمنعك من الأداء بأفضل ما لديك.

29 إن التعليم الفنى هو مستقبل مصر الفترة القادمة فى ظل التنمية التى تشهدها الدولة المصرية لذا تقوم وزارة التربية والتعليم بإنشاء عدد من المدارس التكنولوجية فى جميع المجالات.

a) Technical education is the future of Egypt in the coming period in shade of the development witnessed by the Egyptian state. Therefore, the Ministry of Education is establishing a number of technology schools in all fields.
b) Technical education is the future of Egypt in the coming period in light of the development witnessed by the Egyptian state. Therefore, the Ministry of Education is establishing a number of technology schools in all fields.
c) Technical education is the future of Egypt in the coming period in light of the development driven by the Egyptian state. Therefore, the Ministry of Education is establishing a number of technology schools in all fields.
d) Technical education is the future of Egypt in the past period in shadow of the development witnessed by the Egyptian state. Instead, the Ministry of Education is establishing a number of technology schools in all fields.

30 تؤدى الرياضة إلى تقوية العلاقات بين أفراد المجتمع فمن يمارسون الرياضة يعتادون على الالتقاء بشكل منتظم ممًا يوطّد العلاقات بينهم.

a) Sports strengthen relations between organs of society. Those who practise sports are accustomed to meeting regularly, that strengthens the relationship between them.
b) Sports strengthen relations between members of society. Those who practise sports are accustomed to meeting gradually, that strengthens the relationship between them.
c) Sports strengthen relations between members of society. Those who practise sports are accustomed to meeting regularly, which strengthens the relationship between them.
d) Sports strengthen relations between organs of society. Those who practise sports are obliged to meeting regularly, which strengthens the relationship between them.

Study

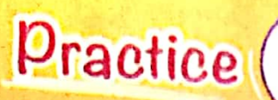
Chapter 6
(Great Expectations)

Vocabulary

affectionately (adv.)	بمودة	housekeeper (n)	مديرة منزل
anxious (adj)	قلق	life sentence (n)	حكم مؤبد
attention (n)	اهتمام	plenty (n)	كثرة/ وفرة
audience (n)	متفرجين	relief (n)	راحة
avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب	remarkable (adj)	رائع
boast (v) (ed)	يتباهى	scars (n)	ندبات
competition (n)	منافسة	shiny (adj)	لامع
cough (v) (ed)	يسعل/ يكح	skill (n)	مهارة
enthusiastic (adj)	متحمس/ حماسي	sleeves (n)	أكمام
glad (adj)	سعيد	tutor (n)	معلم/ مرشد
guard (n)	حارس	wrist (n)	معصم
hold on to(v)	يتمسك بـ		

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

after all	على أية حال	came back to haunt me	عادت تطاردني
as a form of entertainment	كنوع من التسلية	get too much attention	يحصل على اهتمام أكثر من اللازم
at the request of	بناء على طلب	took turns	يتبادل الأدوار
far from	بعيد عن	ready for	جاهز/ مستعد لـ
keep away from	يبتعد عن	unfriendly to	غير لطيف مع





Great Expectations Exercises
Chapter (6)

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He was .... that the weather would not improve in time for the party.
a) keen b) relieved c) cooled d) anxious

2 Mrs Hanan is always .... about how wonderful her children are.
a) boasting b) priding c) pasting d) blasting

3 Make sure you wind that bandage tightly around your .... so that it doesn't move.
a) wrath b) wrest c) wrist d) wrap

4 Mona wore a dress with long .... at the meeting this morning.
a) slaves b) sleeves c) salivas d) sleets

5 He has a large .... on his arm from a cut he got while working in a logging camp last summer.
a) scar b) star c) spar d) spat

6 Mr Ali has a .... memory. He has the ability to remember things in great detail after seeing them.
a) remarkable b) regrettable c) removable d) reusable

7 Ahmed is really .... about his university course. He can't wait for the beginning of the term.
a) enthusiastic b) magnetic c) aquatic d) fanatic

8 The girls were made wards of court at the .... of a local authority.
a) requirement b) inquiry c) request d) order

9 The boat sank and all the crew drowned except young sailor, who held .... some floating wood.
a) out b) onto c) out on d) off

10 The mother looked .... at her son as he was drawing pictures at the table.
a) fortunately b) effectively c) affectionately d) affectionate

11 After the criminal was arrested, he was sent to prison for .... sentence.
a) life b) death c) living d) dead

12 Investing all your money in one place and losing it is an error that would come back to .... you for years to come
a) catch b) hatch c) hunt d) haunt

13 Ali cleaned and polished his new leather shoes. They look very .... now.
a) shone b) shine c) shiny d) light

14 The .... were clapping for 10 minutes after the play ended.
a) directors b) audience c) guards d) crew

15 There were two security .... on duty outside the building.
a) nets b) fences c) gaps d) guards

Unit 6

Advanced & Open

General Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

إجابة هذه التدريبات موجودة بنهاية الكتاب.

1 At the summer camp, we were taught how to .... the sun's rays on dried grass and make a fire.
a) control b) manage c) focus d) distract

2 The journalist .... the footballer to ask exactly how he had broken his ankle.
a) disturbed b) interrupted c) annoyed d) heckle

3 Samy was taken to .... for not finishing his reports in time.
a) task b) duty c) work d) job

4 Work on the new towers in the New Capital is now in ....
a) practice b) breakthrough c) advance d) progress

5 I learned most of what I know about gardening through trial and ....
a) accident b) coincidence c) error d) misprint

6 The exact price of the tickets is .... on the back.
a) stated b) decided c) hidden d) announced

7 Our officers have to concentrate 100 per cent on the task in ....
a) research b) inspection c) advance d) hand

8 I admired Amira's confidence, not to .... the fact that she was intelligent and well spoken.
a) speak b) refer c) mention d) advertise

9 After the terrorist action, they will have the president .... by an army battalion.
a) guard b) to guard c) guarding d) guarded

10 Some of my friends have difficulty .... unit (11), and so do I.
a) to understand b) understanding c) understand d) understood

11 You are always free. Haven't you got anything ....?
a) do b) done c) to do d) doing

12 I had a hard time .... his house as it was dark and there was no one to ask.
a) finding b) find c) to found d) found

13 You should .... the car .... last week.
a) have/repaired b) make/repair c) have had/repaired d) had/repaired

14 **A:** Did someone really write those words on the wall?
B: Yes, I actually saw them .... on the wall.
a) to write b) writing c) to be written d) written

15 **A:** Did they play that song on the radio?
B: Well, I heard it .... on the radio this morning.
a) play b) played c) playing d) to be played

16 Come in now. I'm sorry .... you waiting so long.
a) to have kept b) to have got c) to have let d) to have had

17 Every half hour he stops work .... a cigarette.
a) smoking b) from smoking c) to smoke d) smoke

18 If you don't mind, we will have the car .... tomorrow.
a) being serviced b) to service c) servicing d) service

Unit 6 Al-Adwaa Test

Question Bank

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 There is a growing .... at the increase in internet crimes such as phishing in Egypt.
a) arm b) relief c) alarm d) excitement

2 The judge told the lawyers that all the evidence should be carefully ....
a) duplicated b) dictated c) ignored d) evaluated

3 The film's central .... is the relationship between poverty and crime.
a) ignorance b) focus c) project d) reference

4 One of the drawbacks of some vaccines is that they must be stored at a very low temperature. The synonym of " drawback" is ....
a) disadvantage b) advantage c) relaxation d) benefit

5 If you want to stay in this job, you'll need to get your .... up.
a) reality b) productivity c) similarity d) possibility

6 According to the latest reports, car sales have .... sharply due to the great rise in prices.
a) inclined b) retried c) declined d) respired

7 The water samples will be .... for the presence of polluting chemicals.
a) conducted b) infected c) delayed d) analysed

8 I told my daughter to stop .... and start studying quickly.
a) postponing b) procrastinating c) analyzing d) inspection

9 The security guard doesn't let anyone .... the building without an invitation.
a) entering b) to enter c) enter d) entered

10 Hala always .... her brothers tidy their beds.
a) gets b) makes c) got d) allows

11 We .... the painter .... our house every year.
a) have/paint b) make/to paint
c) let/paint d) get/to painted

12 He'll stop his brother .... TV because he wastes a lot of time.
a) watching b) to watch
c) watch d) from watching

13 Heavy music .... her nervous.
a) lets b) has c) makes d) allows

14 The pain of her broken leg got her ....
a) crying out b) cried out c) cry out d) to cry out

15 When did you .... your bank accounts .... ?
a) have/check b) have/checked
c) get/to check d) make/checked

16 The orchestra members should get their musical instruments .... and be ready to begin.
a) tune b) to be tuned c) tuned d) tuning

17 Quotation marks are put .... the words being quoted.
a) before b) after c) before and after d) between

18 Which of the following is correctly punctuated?
a) Waiting for the storm to stop, I was anxiously looking out the window.
b) Waiting for the storm to stop I was anxiously looking out the window.
c) Waiting for the storm to stop! I was anxiously looking out the window.
d) Waiting for the storm to stop I was anxiously looking out the window!

19 In an essay about "Education" which of the following sentences can be a topic sentence?
a) Education enlightens, empowers, and creates a positive development.
b) As explained, there are three distinct types of Education.
c) Education is a process of learning through which we acquire knowledge.
d) Therefore, it is highly important to educate the children and youth to live a productive life.

20 The words 'despite' and 'conversely' are both words that can be used ....
a) as the first word when you begin an article
b) as the last word to end an article
c) in a paragraph only once
d) in a paragraph to show contrast

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

When we are young, we learn that tigers and sharks are dangerous animals. We might be scared of them because they are big and powerful. As we get older, however, we learn that sometimes the most dangerous animals are also the smallest animals. In fact, the animal that kills the most people every year is one that you have probably killed yourself many times: the mosquito[1].

While it may seem that all mosquitoes are biters[2], this is not actually the case. Male mosquitoes eat plant nectar[3]. On the other hand, female mosquitoes feed on animal blood. They need this blood to live and produce eggs. When a female mosquito bites a human being, it transmits[4] a small amount of saliva[5] into the blood. This saliva may or may not contain a deadly disease. The result of the bite can be as minor[6] as an itchy bump[7] or as serious as death.

Because a mosquito can bite many people in the course of its life, it can carry diseases from one person to another very easily. Two of the most deadly diseases carried by mosquitoes are malaria and yellow fever.

Many scientists are working on safer and better ways to kill mosquitoes, but so far, there is no sure way to protect everyone in the world from their deadly bites. Mosquito nets can be placed over beds to protect people against being bitten. Mosquitoes have many natural enemies like bats, birds, dragonflies[8], and certain kinds of fish. Mosquitoes can be killed with poisons or sprays. Even though these sprays kill mosquitoes, they may also harm other plants or animals.

Although mosquitoes may not seem as scary[9] as larger, more powerful animals, they are far more dangerous to human beings. But things are changing. It is highly likely that one day scientists will find a way to keep everyone safe from mosquitoes and the diseases they carry.

Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

21 Male mosquitoes and female mosquitoes have ....
a) the same eating habits
b) different eating habits
c) a large family
d) nothing to bite with

22 To cut down the numbers of mosquitoes in any area, we may ....
a) have cats and dogs
b) wear masks in order not to be bitten
c) bring bats, birds, dragonflies, and certain kinds of fish
d) have poisons at all places

23 "This saliva may or may not contain a deadly disease." This means ....
a) the bite is completely safe
b) the bite is completely dangerous
c) there is no danger in the bite
d) the bite can cause death

24 "Minor" most nearly means ....
a) insignificant
b) deadly
c) frustrating
d) dangerous

25 If you get sick with malaria or yellow fever, your chances of survival are ....
a) ordinary
b) terrible
c) good
d) excellent

(1) بعوضة (2) لادغات (3) رحيق (4) تنقل (5) لعاب (6) أقل أهمية (7) حكة (8) اليعسوب (9) مخيف

26 Dragonflies might reduce the number of flies in a given area because dragonflies ....

a) cannot be killed by poisons or sprays
b) work together with mosquitoes
c) kill mosquitoes
d) attract bats

27 Which of the following isn't true?

a) Mosquito nets can protect from deadly mosquitoes.
b) Poisons and sprays can protect from deadly mosquitoes.
c) The mosquito's natural enemies can protect from deadly mosquitoes.
d) There is a perfect solution to the mosquito problem.

28 The best title to the passage is: ....

a) Although it's very small, the mosquito is very scary
b) The mosquito isn't very dangerous
c) The dangers of tigers and sharks
d) How to kill mosquitoes

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Amr was waiting for his father. His father was supposed(1) to be there at 11 o'clock promptly(2) but it was already half-past 11 and yet there was still no sign of him. Amr was getting worried and impatient. He was supposed to arrive at his piano teacher's house at half past eleven. He paced the ground while looking at his watch time and again. To worsen things, he had forgotten to bring along his mobile phone today so there was no way for him to contact his father as well. Finally, after another fifteen minutes, Amr's father arrived. He looked all flustered(3) and upset.

"What happened, Dad? Why are you late today?"

Amr's father started telling him about the car accident that he was in. On his way to pick Amr up, a car had carelessly driven into his lane(4) and knocked into his car. It was a good thing that his father was not driving at a high speed, otherwise the consequences(5) would have been far worse than the scratched(6) paintwork that his car had suffered. His father had to spend some time getting down the other driver's license details and taking photographs of the damage as evidence. However, the accident had put his father in a bad mood because his car was relatively(7) new.

By the time Amr arrived at his piano teacher's house, he was already half an hour late for his lesson. His mother had called up his teacher earlier to explain the situation so she was not angry with him for being late.

A week after the accident, Amr's father told the family that the driver of the other car offered to pay for the damages of his car. Amr's father was relieved(8) that the matter was resolved so easily.

Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

29 The best title to the passage is: ....

a) The car accident delayed Amr's piano lesson.
b) Amr's piano lesson.
c) Amr's father's accident.
d) The piano teacher's forgiveness.

30 According to paragraph one, why did Amr pace the ground?

a) He was looking at his watch.
b) He was getting impatient.
c) He was going for his piano lesson.
d) He had forgotten to bring his mobile phone.

31 Which one of the following pieces of information is true?

a) Amr's father was upset because he was late.
b) Amr was worried because he had lost his mobile phone.
c) Amr waited 45 minutes for his father.
d) Amr was impatient because his father had been in an accident.



(1) مفترض (2) فورًا (3) مرتبك (4) حارة مرورية (5) نتائج (6) مخدوش (7) نسبيًا (8) مرتاح

32 The car was .... as a result of the accident.
a) dented b) injured c) knocked d) scratched

33 Amr's father was especially upset with the accident because ....
a) his car was new
b) his car looked ugly now
c) the other driver had been careless
d) the other driver had not been injured

34 How was the matter resolved?
a) Amr's father painted the car himself.
b) Amr's father repaired the car himself.
c) The other driver repaired the damaged car.
d) The other driver paid for the repairs of the damaged car.

35 The piano teacher was not angry with Amr for being late because ....
a) she was so patient and kind.
b) Amr's father phoned and calmed her.
c) Amr's mother explained the situation to her.
d) Amr was always late so she was accustomed to it.

36 The antonym of the word "flustered" is ....
a) agitated b) nervous c) disturbed d) calm

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d:

37 There is a lack of modern facilities in rural areas, but the clean air and the peace of mind are beneficial for the health. However, many people leave them for many reasons such as finding jobs.

a) هناك نقص فى التسـهيلات الحديثة فى المناطق القروية، لكن الهواء النظيف والسـلام مفيدان للصحة ولذلك، يتركها كثير من الناس لأسباب عديدة مثل العثور على وظائف.

b) هناك عجز فى التسهيلات المعاصرة فى الريف، لكن الهواء النقى وسلامة العقل مفيدان للصحة ومع ذلك، يتركها كثير من الناس لأسباب عديدة مثل العثور على وظائف.

c) هناك حرمان فى المرافق الجديدة فى مناطق الفلاحين، لكن الهواء النظيف وسلام المخ مفيدان للصحة ومع ذلك، يتركها كثير من الناس لأسباب عديدة مثل العثور على وظائف.

d) هنـاك نقـص فى المرافـق الحديثة فى المناطق الريفية، لكن الهواء النقى وراحة البال مفيـدان للصحة ومع ذلك، يتركها كثير من الناس لأسباب عديدة مثل العثور على وظائف.

38 Egypt has a rich history and culture dating back thousands of years, starting with the Pharaonic culture, then Christianity and Islam. Egypt is among the earliest civilizations.

a) تتمتع مصر بتاريخ وثقافة غنية مستمرة إلى آلاف السنين، بدءًا بالثقافة الفرعونية ثم المسيحية والإسلام فمصر من أقدم الحضارات.
b) تتمتع مصر بتاريخ وثقافة غنية يعود تاريخهما إلى آلاف السنين، بدءًا بالثقافة الفرعونية ثم المسيحية والإسلام فمصر من أقدم الحضارات.
c) تتمتع مصر بتاريخ وثقافة مكلفة يعود تاريخهما إلى آلاف السنين، بدءًا بالثقافة الفرعونية ثم المسيحية والإسلام فمصر من أبكر الحضارات.
d) تتمتع مصر بتاريخ وتقدم غنى يعود تاريخهما إلى آلاف السنين، بدءًا بالثقافة الفرعونية ثم المسيحية والإسلام فمصر من أقدم الحضارات.

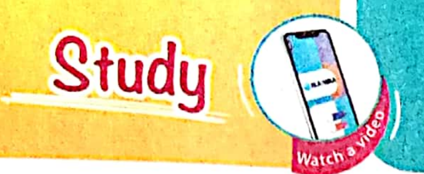
39 ينتج عن الأمية انتشار البطالة والجهل والمرض لذلك تبذل الحكومة جهودا كبيرة لمحو هذه المشكلة الخطيرة.

a) Illiteracy results in the spread of unemployment, ignorance and disease. Therefore, the government is making great efforts to eliminate this serious problem.
b) Illiteracy comes from the spread of unemployment, ignorance and disease. Therefore, the government is making great efforts to promote this serious problem.
c) Illiteracy results in the publishing of unemployment, ignorance and disease. Therefore, the government is making great efforts to eliminate this serious problem.
d) Illiteracy brings back the publication of unemployment, ignorance and disease. Therefore, the government is making great efforts to debate this serious problem.

40 الأعمال الدرامية ليست مجرد وسيلة للترفيه، ولكن لها دور مهم فى تشكيل وعى المجتمع، وحفظ قيمه وأهمها حب الوطن.

a) Dramatic actions are just a means of entertainment, but they have an important role in shaping the deforming of society, and preserving its values, the most important of which is patriotism.
b) Dramas are not just a means of entertainment, but they have an important role in shaping the awareness of society, and rescuing its values, the most important of which is patriotism.
c) Dramas are not just a means of entertainment, but they have an important role in shaping the awareness of society, and preserving its values, the most important of which is patriotism.
d) Dramatic actions are not just a means of entertainment, but they have an important role in figuring the awareness of society, and preserving its values, the most important of which is patriotism.

Assess your progress	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
★ ★ ★ ★ ★	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!



Vocabulary on Reading

ability (n)	قدرة/مقدرة
actually (adj)	بالفعل
alternatively (adv)	بدلًا من ذلك
avoid (v) (d)	يتجنب
blame (v) (d) (n)	يلوم/لوم
brain (n)	مخ
conflict (n)	صراع
efficiency (n)	كفاءة
imagine (v) (ed)	يتخيل
inevitable (adj)	محتوم/لا مفر منه
level (n)	مستوى
option (n)	اختيار
solution (n)	حل
survey (n)	دراسة/تقييم
task (n)	مهمة
tough (adj)	قاسٍ/عنيف
unrealistic (adj)	غير واقعى
virtual (adj)	افتراضى
whereas (conj.)	بينما

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

for a short period	لفترة قصيرة
get better at	يتحسن فى
in the first place	فى المقام الأول
compared to	مقارنة بـ
concentrate on	يركز على
make changes to	يجرى تغييرات على
miss school	يفوته الحضور للمدرسة
take part in	يشارك فى
react to	يقوم برد فعل لـ
talk about	يتحدث عن

Reading Text (1)

Procrastination? Blame your brain!

Have you ever tried to get something done, but found that you don't make much progress? Perhaps you do ten minutes of work, then start doing something else, like reading text messages. Starting one task then stopping to do something else or not starting the task in the first place is called procrastination. Everybody does it. *Unfortunately, procrastinating often has a negative impact on your mental health*. You may put yourself under a lot of pressure to catch up with the other students in your class or you might have set an unrealistic goal to get something done in a certain time. This can cause stress.

What is going on in the brain which makes us avoid doing something, even though we know we should do it? Scientists suggest we imagine that there are two parts of our brain: our present self and our future self. The present self wants to feel good right now and see the benefits of the work you're doing immediately. *Whereas the future self is focused on achieving long-term goals*. It's inevitable that the two selves come into conflict. If the present self-wins, you usually find yourself procrastinating.

How can you deal with these two different selves so you can keep up efficiency levels and improve your time management skills? One suggestion is that you try to please your present self. *For example, give yourself little rewards after working for a short period of time, like checking messages after finishing a task*. Alternatively, you could try to focus on the benefits that reaching your long-term goals will bring you. Try imagining how good it would feel to achieve them and holding on to that feeling.

Reading Text (2)



To: Ahmed@mail.com
From: Ahmed@mail.com
Dear 11-year-old Ahmed,

I know you're finding life tough at the moment. You're experiencing stress at school and you're working hard with your sports training. You're finding it harder at your new school because the schoolwork is a lot more difficult than it was at your old school. You have more homework so it is harder to find time practise swimming and running. How about telling your teachers about the problems you're having and asking for help?

Try to remember that life is actually quite easy at the moment compared to how it will be later, even though you might not believe me about that. When you're my age, you'll be really good at time management. You'll be able to balance your schoolwork and your sport practice. I know you want to be like Ahmed Elgendy one day. Don't worry-you'll achieve amazing things.

Enjoy the free time that you have now! Don't forget to spend time doing things that improve your well-being, like talking to family. Play football with your friends at the weekend!

You're going to be just fine, but remember to ask for help when you need it and enjoy the free time that you have so you don't end up feeling exhausted and burnt out.

See you in 9 years,
20-year-old Ahmed



Listening Text (1)

Presenter: So, as you know, we recently made two changes to the way students practise English outside of the classroom. Six weeks after the introduction of the changes we carried out a survey to assess how students felt about them and what their impact had been. I'm going to take you through the results of this survey now. I should say that the aim of the two changes was to promote the use of technology in the learning of English outside of class. So, first of all, we asked students to use a digital version of their English workbook to do homework exercises. We wanted to find out what students felt about using these digital workbooks and here you can see the results. About 60 percent of students said they preferred using the digital workbooks, about 30 percent said they preferred the workbooks in book form and the rest said they had no preference. All in all, the students generally seem to be happy with this change. Secondly, we asked students to take part in a virtual meeting with a group of students to practise making conversation in English. We wanted to know how long students had met for in each of their meetings and you can see the results here. Almost 20 percent met for more than 60 minutes, about 45 percent met for 30 to 60 minutes, another 23 percent met for 15 to 30 minutes and the remaining 12 percent met for less than 15 minutes. A few students told us that they had problems installing the software for the virtual meetings and they couldn't join the meetings and this could explain why they reported being in each meeting for less than 15 minutes.

Listening Text (2)

***Narrator* :** One

***Hend* :** Hi everyone, it's me. Hello. Hello? Can you hear me? Hello? This is Hend. Can you hear me? Oh, I don't think you can hear me. Hang on a minute. Oh, my microphone is on mute. Let me unmute it. That's it. Can you hear me now? ... Great.

***Narrator* :** Two

***Engy* :** I have the link for the virtual meeting in this email, but when I open it, I get a message saying that I can't join the meeting. Hmmm ... why is this happening? I'll go back and read the email with the meeting invitation again. Oh, I see, I need to install the software for the meeting on my computer. I'll do that now.

***Narrator* :** Three

***Bassem* :** I've written this email, but now I can't send it. Why won't it send? That's strange. I've written the email and pressed 'Send', but nothing's happening. Am I connected to the internet? Oh no. My internet isn't working. I forgot to turn it back on again when I turned it off yesterday. I'll turn it back on now.



Workbook Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct words to complete the sentences:

1 We should not take .... on those who harm us. We should respect the law.
a) revenge b) average c) care d) advantage

2 Have you .... spending the weekend in the country?
a) considered b) thought c) decided d) agreed

3 You could .... asked me for help if you were feeling so stressed!
a) has b) having c) had d) have

4 Be careful, you must .... making such mistakes.
a) enjoy b) avoid c) refuse d) intend

5 When you are worried about things, it is best to concentrate on the things you .... control.
a) would b) might c) can d) have

6 We really need to increase our .... if we want to meet our objectives.
a) identity b) facility c) equality d) productivity

7 I hope .... the biology exam; I'm so worried.
a) will pass b) pass c) to pass d) passing

8 Let's look .... new ways of working.
a) on b) into c) to d) back

9 My parents .... me finish my homework before they allow me to watch TV.
a) stop b) get c) tell d) make

10 We .... our project done last night so now we can relax.
a) get b) got c) allow d) make

11 Can you .... your screen so I can see what the problem is, please?
a) share b) mute c) install d) join

12 I remember .... this man in the club a year ago.
a) seeing b) to see c) had seen d) to seeing

13 If I want to catch .... with my classmates, I need to study a lot this weekend.
a) on b) up c) into d) in

14 Don't forget .... off the computer when you've finished with it.
a) switching b) switch c) to switch d) to switching

15 The rain .... us from playing football.
a) let b) allowed c) made d) stopped

16 The students found the test difficult and it led to a .... in their motivation.
a) produce b) raise c) progress d) decline

17 Mental exhaustion and loss of energy are symptoms of ....
a) turnout b) strikeout c) cutout d) burnout

18 What do you plan .... when you go to Sharm El-Sheikh?
a) to do b) to doing c) will do d) do

19 .... is how good you feel in your body and how happy you are.

a) Self-care b) Stress c) Well-being d) Mental health

20 I am going to have a new washing machine ....

a) made b) installed c) instilled d) done

21 Turn the camera .... I want to see you; I've missed you so much, Mum.

a) down b) off c) on d) up

22 Which of the following is punctuated correctly?

a) Mona, who was the first to offer help, was a volunteer from the UNICEF.

b) Mona who was the first to offer help, was a volunteer from the UNICEF.

c) Mona; who was the first to offer help, was a volunteer from the UNICEF.

d) Mona; who was the first to offer help was a volunteer from the UNICEF.

23 Which of the following sentences is correct to end the following paragraph?

We all agree that money is very important in our life. It enables us to lead a better life. We can buy most of what we need and pay for all the services we enjoy. Yet, money can be the root of evil in life if it is used badly. In addition, we can't buy all things with money; for example, money can't bring happiness ....

a) To sum up, money is the best way to achieve your goals as well as having a more comfortable life.

b) Totally, we can say that money is the cause of our happiness.

c) First of all, we need to know why we need money and how to spend it on doing useful things in life.

d) In conclusion, money is important, but it is not everything in our life. It can't be a means to get all that you want.

24 Which of these transitions is used to show the result of something?

a) Personally, b) Whilst c) Due to d) Consequently,

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Productivity: Tips from business leaders

The country's top business people have to make big decisions and juggle several priorities every day. We interviewed some of them to discover what tricks they use to increase their productivity.

The number one strategy that was mentioned by all of them was the ability to prioritise tasks according to what is most important. This involves a continuous process of deciding what is and isn't essential as you add new things to your 'to-do' list. The more you practise prioritising tasks, the easier it becomes and the more efficient it will make you.

Another time-consuming thing for business leaders is decision-making. Making decisions takes a lot of mental effort and this can lead to 'decision fatigue', which can cause burnout. It increases your productivity if you can save your mental energy for the bigger decisions by reducing the smaller ones.

Many of the most productive people realise how easy it is to get distracted. In order to stay focused, they keep a 'distraction list'. When a new thought or idea comes into their heads, they write it down and continue with what they were doing. When they have finished the task, they revisit the list.

The final trick from our interviewees is simple but highly effective. In order to raise your productivity levels, you should exercise your mind and your body. It has been suggested that physical activity can improve our levels of concentration and creativity. So, if you are trying to find a solution to something, identify the problem and then go for a walk or do some sport. You may discover the solution!

There are lots of strategies to choose from to increase your productivity. Our advice would be to experiment with different ones to find out what works best for you.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

25 You should reduce the decisions you make to ....

a) juggle several priorities
b) exercise your mind and body
c) avoid bearing responsibilities
d) keep mental health and avoid burnout

26 According to the passage, there are a lot of strategies to ....

a) enjoy free time
b) decrease consumption
c) raise productivity
d) imitate successful people

27 It's essential to prioritise tasks. The antonym of essential is ....

a) significant
b) unimportant
c) urgent
d) reliable

28 The main idea of the passage is how to ....

a) avoid distraction
b) increase productivity
c) identify a problem
d) prioritise tasks

29 The most popular strategy mentioned in the article is ....

a) prioritising tasks according to their importance
b) having a "to-do list"
c) avoiding distraction
d) making big decisions

30 According to the article, what is meant by decision fatigue?

a) The state of being unable to make simple decisions.
b) Difficulty in making a good decision because of the number of decisions one needs to take.
c) Difficulty in making a good decision because of lack of efficiency.
d) The state of being unable to bear responsibility.

31 If you are trying to find a solution to a problem, ...

a) prioritise tasks
b) postpone dealing with that problem
c) identify the problem and refresh yourself
d) go for a walk and do some sport

32 The underlined word "this" in the second paragraph refers to ....

a) carrying out tasks
b) acting upon useful tips
c) the ability to prioritise tasks
d) practising sport

33 According to the passage, what makes your level of concentration better?

a) Physical activity.
b) Deleting minor tasks.
c) Having a "not to-do list".
d) Fresh food.

34 Top business people juggle several priorities to .... big tasks.

a) procrastinate
b) postpone
c) carry out
d) delete

35 According to the passage, a lot of productive people try to ....

a) avoid distraction
b) have peace of mind
c) concentrate minor tasks
d) avoid ordinary tips

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d.

36 A lot of people worked from home during the COVID-19 pandemic. Many employees say this has increased their efficiency and saved time and effort.

a) عمل الكثير من الناس من المنزل خلال جائحة كوفيد - ١٩، ويقول العديد من العلماء إن هذا زاد من رفاهيتهم ووفر الوقت والجهد.

b) عمل الكثير من الناس من المنزل خلال جائحة كوفيد - ١٩، ويقول العديد من الموظفين إن هذا زاد من كفاءتهم ووفر الوقت والجهد.

c) عمل الكثير من الناس من المنزل بعد جائحة كوفيد - ١٩، ويقول العديد من أصحاب العمل إن هذا زاد من نشاط الموظفين ووفر الوقت والجهد.

d) أقام الكثير من الناس في المنزل خلال جائحة كوفيد - ١٩، ويقول القليل من الموظفين إن هذا زاد من كفاءتهم ووفر الوقت والجهد.

37 Productivity is one of the most necessary qualities useful citizens should have. It enables them to share effectively in development projects as well as in most fields of work.

a) تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السـمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشـاركة بفعالية في مشـروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

b) تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم المؤهلات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفعالية في خطط التنمية وكذلك معظم مجالات العمل.

c) تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها أي مواطن، فهي تمكنه من المشاركة بفعالية في مشروعات الاستثمار وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

d) تعتبر جودة الإنتاج من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطن المصري، فهي تمكنه من المشاركة بفعالية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

38 في رأيي، يجب على المعلمين والوالدين الاهتمام بالصحة العقلية ومهارات إدارة الوقت، وهذه المهارات ضرورية لتعزيز تحصيل الطلاب ومساعدتهم على تحقيق كل طموحاتهم في الحياة.

a) In general, teachers and parents should draw people's attention to mental health and time- management skills. These skills are necessary to enhance students' achievement and help them fulfil all their aspirations in life.

b) In conclusion, teachers and parents should pay attention to healthy food and time-management skills. These skills are necessary to enhance students' achievement and help them attain all their ambitions in life.

c) In my opinion, teachers and parents should pay attention to mental health and time-management skills. These skills are necessary to enhance students' achievement and help them fulfil all their aspirations in life.

d) In my opinion, scientists and parents should pay attention to mental health and time-management scales. These skills are necessary to enhance students' achievement and help them attain all their ambitions in life.

39 تولى الحكومة المصرية اهتمامًا عظيمًا لتحسين معيشة المواطنين فى كل أنحاء مصر وخاصة الريف والعشوائيات، وتعتبر مبادرة حياة كريمة خير دليل على ذلك.

a) The Egyptian organisations pay great attention to improving the lives of citizens in all cities of Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and the Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.

b) The Egyptian government pays great intention to improving the lives of employees in all parts of Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and the experiment for a Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.

c) The Egyptian government pays great attention to moving the lives of citizens in upper Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and the Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.

d) The Egyptian government pays great attention to improving the lives of citizens in all parts of Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and the Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.

40 **Your friend is very stressed about exams and is having trouble relaxing. You are worried about his mental health. What advice would you give him/her? Write an email of about 200 words with your suggestions. You could include the following:**

1. Suggestions for self-care.
2. Advice on time management.

ياريت دعوه حلوه للشخص اللي صور الكتاب ده
ولك بالمثل،،



Al-Adwaa Test

Units 4, 5 & 6

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the correct words to complete the sentences:

1 The boss sent a .... to all staff telling them about the change.
a) sign b) memo c) signal d) mark

2 My brother is a private man; he is not very good at .... his worries.
a) dividing b) sharing c) splitting d) devising

3 The spelling mistakes in the text had been .... in red.
a) dimmed b) highlighted c) darkened d) lighted

4 I would like to .... my thanks to my parents for their support.
a) express b) say c) state d) lecture

5 There's no .... in the decision to reduce staff when orders are the highest they have been for years.
a) science b) logic c) search d) art

6 He was just looking for a/an .... to call his fiancée.
a) reason b) explanation c) excuse d) cause

7 Did you .... any conclusions at the meeting this morning?
a) refuse b) draw c) take d) give

8 The president held a meeting to discuss military .... with the Military Council yesterday.
a) method b) strategy c) tactic d) play

9 .... taking the train to Assuit instead of your car?
a) Why didn't you b) Why don't you
c) Have you thought about d) Let's

10 I think Omar was mistaken when he carried the heavy box on his own. He .... his brother to help him.
a) should ask b) should have asked
c) shouldn't have asked d) could ask

11 You should avoid .... during the rush hour.
a) travelling b) to travel c) traveled d) to travelling

12 My brother is learning .... the oud.
a) play b) to playing c) to play d) playing

13 The company will have to close if it can't .... the problems it faces.
a) get off b) turn over c) run out d) get over

14 Passengers are allowed .... one item of hand luggage at a time.
a) have b) to have c) having d) to having

15 We are going to have our new furniture .... tomorrow.
a) to deliver b) deliver c) delivered d) delivering

16 Mother made Shaimaa .... her room before she went out.
a) tidy b) to tidy c) tidying d) tidied

17 This punctuation mark is used to separate items in a series when the items contain commas.
a) apostrophe b) hyphen c) semicolon d) colon

18 Choose the sentence which has the correct punctuation.

a) Here is what you need to get at the supermarket bananas bread milk and biscuits.

b) Here is what you need to get at the supermarket: bananas bread milk and biscuits.

c) Here is what you need to get at the supermarket; bananas, bread, milk and biscuits.

d) Here is what you need to get at the supermarket: bananas, bread, milk and biscuits.

19 What type of ending should an essay conclusion have? It should leave the reader thinking about ....

a) how s/he will never get that time back.

b) make bank by publishing.

c) how the topic applies to him/her, and/or future possibilities.

d) what a genius the writer is.

20 Select the supporting detail that doesn't fit.

Topic Sentence: Reading class is really interesting.

a) We learn interesting facts from the things we read.

b) Our teacher gives us new ways to look at things.

c) Sometimes we do dramatic readings of the text that are super engaging.

d) It's my least favorite class.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Everyone is afraid of something. Some of us are afraid of dogs, snakes, darkness and even babies. This kind of fear is called Phobia. A phobia is a very strong irrational fear or hatred of something. You can see lots of people having a kind of phobia. Maybe you have one. Some phobias are very interesting. Some of them are; Ailurophobia Fear of cats, Anglophobia - Fear of England, Aurophobia - Fear of gold, Bibliophobia - Fear of books, Chaetophobia - Fear of hair, Chionophobia - Fear of snow, Ecophobia - Fear of home, Logophobia - Fear of words, Nomatophobia - Fear of names. The names of these phobias are also very interesting, aren't they?

Some phobias can change our lifestyles. For example, if you have Dendrophobia (Fear of trees), you cannot walk around in the forest or even in the garden. Or, if you have Heliophobia (Fear of the sun), how can you go outside in the daylight? Or, if you are afraid of speaking (Lalophobia), can you make a presentation in the class? So, some phobias affect some people in an unpleasant way.

Once I have met a man, Adam. He has Cynophobia (Fear of dogs). I asked some questions about the reason for his phobia. He told his story. He said, "When he was a student, he went home on foot. There weren't school buses then. So, one day he was walking home. Tom and Mary were with him. On their way, they saw a dangerous big dog. It began to bark at them. They were afraid of the dog. So, they began to run. The dog followed them. He fell over and cut his knee. And that big dog came and bit his leg. Since then he has been afraid of anything barking. And he is not a friend with Tom and Mary anymore.)." I wonder if there's a phobia about the English language. Perhaps that's grammarphobia.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 What does a phobia mean?

a) A phobia is the fear of dogs.

b) A phobia is the fear of something nice.

c) A phobia is a very strong irrational fear or hatred of something.

d) A phobia is the fear of horrible things only.

22 What is Ecophobia?

a) The fear of dogs.
b) The fear of home.
c) The fear of books.
d) The fear of exams.

23 What can't you do if you have Lalophobia?

a) You can't use computers.
b) You can't write or read.
c) You can't look at or buy gold.
d) You can't speak in public.

24 What does the underlined pronoun "them" mean?

a) Adam, Tom and Mary.
b) The dogs.
c) The school buses.
d) Phobias.

25 How many people are there in the story?

a) Two
b) Three
c) Four
d) Five

26 What is grammarphobia?

a) The fear of the language.
b) The fear of grammar books.
c) The fear of the English language.
d) The fear of the homework.

27 The best title to the passage is ....

a) The kinds of Phobia
b) Changing man's life
c) The weakness of man
d) How to avoid phobia

28 Fearing of the sun, trees or speaking to others makes you ....

a) change your lifestyle.
b) stay in bed all the time.
c) very ill.
d) hate people and nature.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A Japanese journalist wrote a report about why she and millions of other Japanese have become lovers of running. "Twenty years ago when I started running, most runners were middle-aged men and high school athletes. Today I see young girls, old men and others of every age. We, also, have today thousands of running clubs and hundreds of special running boutiques. Running suits are also offered now by top fashion designers."

The Japanese have looked at sports as good for both the mind and the body. And in recent years there has been an increased interest in physical fitness. In addition, facilities for most sports, such as golf and tennis are extremely limited and often very expensive. But running can be done almost anywhere and you do not have to spend a lot of money to do it.

Running can also be a part of daily routine, and help the individual to live a more orderly life. Most of us today live rather sedentary lives because we usually work sitting down, using our brains instead of our bodies. Daily we find ourselves under increasing mental and psychological pressure from our jobs. So running can be looked at as a medicine. While a person is running, he has time to be alone with his thoughts.

I think more and more people are becoming runners because they have realized that if they want a full and affluent life, they must be healthy, too. Running is the quickest and easiest way to achieve this balance."

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

29 What kind of people who used to run twenty years ago?

a) Young men.
b) Middle-aged women.
c) Old men.
d) School children.

30 What is the best title to the passage?

a) Running suits.
b) Running and health.
c) A running magazine.
d) Running clubs.

31 What does sedentary life mean?
a) Less thoughtful.
b) Sad.
c) Under stress.
d) Sitting down.

32 For what have the Japanese thought that running is good?
a) Increasing mental and psychological pressure.
b) Using our brains instead of our bodies.
c) Our physical and mental health.
d) Physical fitness only.

33 What does health lead to?
a) Wealth. b) Happiness. c) Running. d) Stress.

34 What parts of our bodies are used if we live a sedentary life?
a) Our bodies instead of our brains.
b) Our brains instead of our bodies.
c) Our legs instead of our hands.
d) Our hands instead of our legs.

35 Running is a medicine for ....
a) phobia
b) our daily pressure
c) injuries and cuts
d) all our diseases

36 The synonym of the word 'affluent' is ....
a) deprived b) modest c) poor d) rich and luxurious

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d:

37 School is a meeting place of students and teachers. From here, a student learns how to adjust himself to society in his later life.

a) إن المدرسة هى مكان لقاء الطلاب والمعلمين فمن هنا يتعلم الطالب كيفية تطوير المجتمع فى حياته الأولى.
b) إن المدرسة هى مكان لقاء الطلاب والمعلمين فمن هنا يتعلم الطالب كيفية تأقلم المجتمع فى حياته الآخرة.
c) إن المدرسة هى مكان لقاء الطلاب والمعلمين فمن هنا يتعلم الطالب كيفية التكيف مع المجتمع فى حياته الآخرة.
d) إن المدرسة هى مكان لقاء الطلاب والمعلمين فمن هنا يتعلم الطالب كيفية التكيف مع المجتمع فى حياته اللاحقة.

38 Social media addiction is one of the most common new-age addictions gripping people across the world.

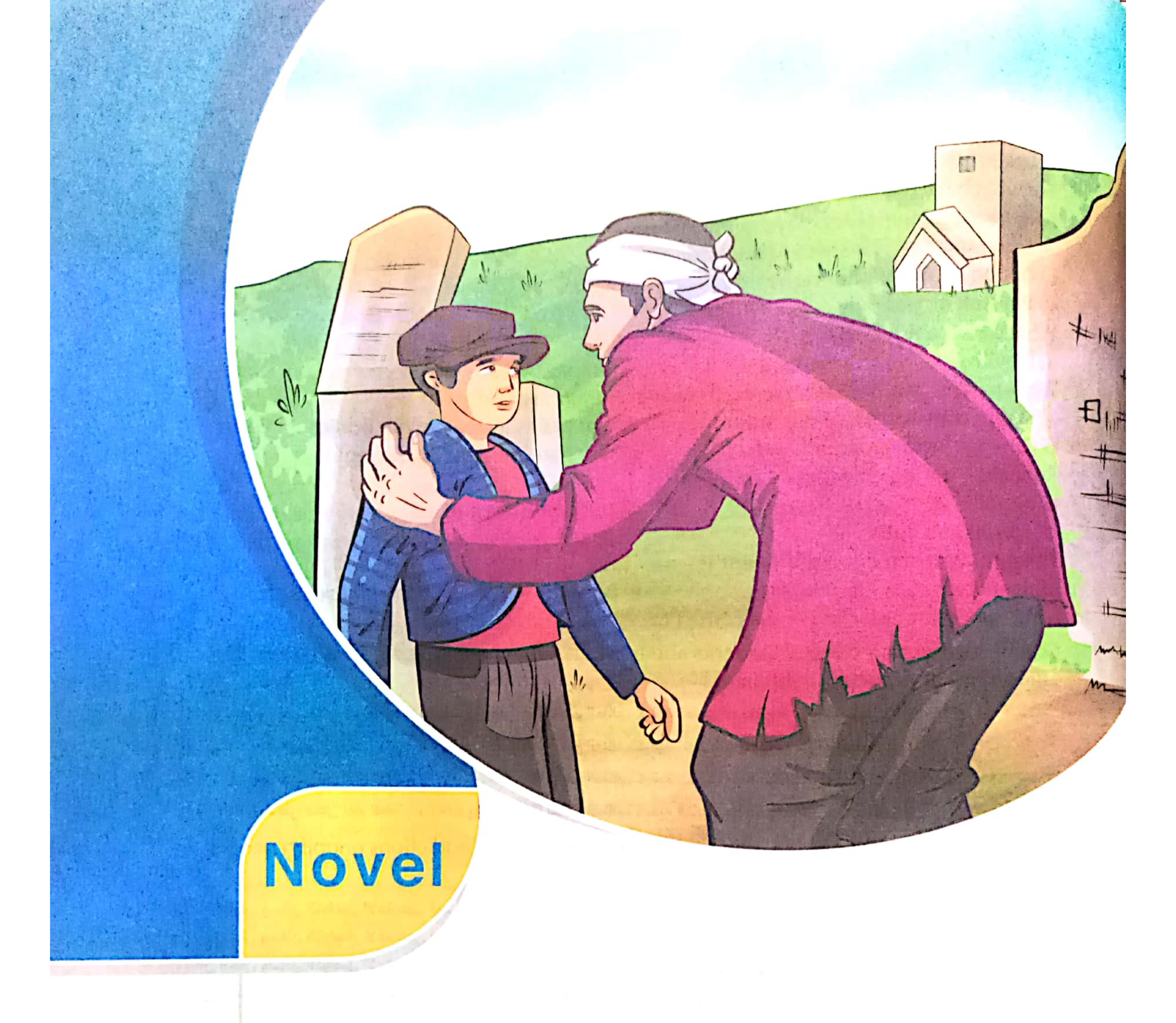
a) إن إدمان وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى أحد أكثر أنواع إدمان العصر الجديد شيوعًا والتى تجذب الناس حول العالم.
b) إن إدمان وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى أحد أكثر أنواع إدمان العصر الجديد ندرة والتى تمسك الناس حول العالم.
c) إن إدمان وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى أحد أكثر أنواع إدمان العصر الجديد شيوعًا والتى تنفر الناس حول العالم.
d) إن إدمان وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى أحد أقل أنواع إدمان العصر الجديد شيوعًا والتى تهاجم الناس حول العالم.

39 لأن الفيسبوك له قاعدة عريضة من المستخدمين فمن الممكن استخدامه بطريقة مناسبة لترويج المشروعات التجارية.
a) Facebook has a large user basement so it is suitable to use it to announce businesses.
b) Facebook has a large user base so it is suitable to use it to promote businesses.
c) Facebook has a large user foundation so it is unsuitable to use it to promote businesses.
d) Facebook has a smaller user base so it is suitable to use it to devastate businesses.

40 إن تحسين الإنتاج وزيادة الصادرات وتقليل الواردات ضرورة لتحقيق الاستقرار الاقتصادى.
a) Improving products, decreasing exports and increasing imports are necessary to achieve economic stability.
b) Proving products, increasing exports and reducing imports are minor to achieve economic stability.
c) Improving products, increasing exports and reducing imports are necessary to achieve economic stability.
d) Improving products, increasing exports and reducing imports are minor to achieve economic ability.

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!



Great Expectations

Introduction

(A) The Writer

Charles Dickens was born in Portsmouth, on February 7, 1812. Charles was the second of eight children to John Dickens, a clerk موظف and his wife Elizabeth Dickens. The Dickens family moved to London in 1814. The defining moment of Dickens's life occurred حدثت when he was 12 years old. His father, who had a difficult time managing money and was constantly in debt, was imprisoned تم سجنه. Because of this, Charles left school and worked in a factory. This experience left great effects on Charles.

After a few months, Dickens's father was released from prison and Charles was allowed to go back to school. At fifteen his formal education ended and he found employment as an office boy. From 1830 he worked as a clerk in the courts المحاكم and afterwards as a newspaper reporter.

In 1833 Dickens began to write short stories and essays to periodicals. Dickens's first book, a collection of stories titled Sketches by Boz, was published in 1836. In the same year, he married Catherine Hogarth. They had 10 children before they separated in 1858. His most famous novels are Oliver Twist, Nicholas Nickleby, A Christmas Carol, The Cricket on the Hearth, Hard Times, A Tale of Two Cities, and Great Expectations.

Charles Dickens died at home on June 9, 1870, after suffering a stroke أزمة. Contrary to his wish to be buried in Rochester Cathedral, he was buried in the Poets' Corner of Westminster Abbey. The inscription on his tomb reads:

"He was a sympathiser متعاطف to the poor, the suffering, and the oppressed المضطهدون; and by his death, one of England's greatest writers is lost to the world."

(B) The Novel (Great Expectations)

Great Expectations was first published serially in All the Year Round in 1860–61 and issued in book form in 1861. The classic novel was one of its author's greatest critical and popular successes. It tells the coming of age of the orphan Pip while also addressing such issues as social class الطبقة الاجتماعية and human worth قيمة الإنسان.

(C) Summary of the Plot

Pip (Philip Pirrip) narrates يحكي the tale from an unspecified غير محدد time in the future. He grows up in Kent, where he lives with his sister and her husband, the blacksmith Joe Gargery. While visiting his family members' graves قبور, the young Pip encounters يقابل Abel Magwitch, an escaped convict مدان . Pip brings him food and a file, but the fugitive and Compeyson—his former partner in crime and a supposed gentleman who is now his enemy—are soon caught. Later Pip is requested

to pay visits to Miss Havisham, a woman driven half-mad years earlier by her lover's departure on their wedding day. Living with Miss Havisham at Satis House is her adopted daughter, Estella, whom she is teaching to torment يعذب men with her beauty. Pip, at first cautious حريص, later falls in love with Estella, who does not return his affection. He grows increasing ashamed of his humble متواضع background and hopes to become a gentleman, in part to win over Estella. However, he is disappointed when he instead becomes Joe's apprentice متدرب/ صبى حرفة.

Several years later a lawyer named Mr. Jaggers appears and informs Pip that an anonymous مجهول benefactor فاعل خير has made it possible for him to go to London for an education; Pip believes that the money is from Miss Havisham. Once in London, Pip is taught to be a gentleman by Matthew Pocket and his son Herbert, the latter of whom Pip met years earlier at Satis House. Also receiving instruction is the slow-witted متبلد العقل and unlikable Bentley Drummle.

The increasingly snobbish مغرور Pip is later horrified to discover that his mysterious benefactor is Magwitch. Not only is Magwitch in danger of being arrested, Pip's social standing موقف اجتماعى is also threatened. Pip reveals the situation to Herbert, and it is decided that Magwitch and Pip should leave England. Before departing, Pip visits Satis House, where he confronts يواجه Miss Havisham for letting him believe she was his patron راعٍ. He also professes يعترف his love to Estella, who rejects him. Knowing that Drummle is pursuing her, Pip warns her about him, but she announces that she plans to marry him. Pip makes several startling discoveries, notably that Magwitch is Estella's father and that Compeyson was Miss Havisham's lover. He also grows close to Magwitch, whom he comes to respect يحترم.

As Pip and Magwitch attempt to leave London via a boat, the police and Compeyson arrive. The two convicts end up fighting in the Thames, and only Magwitch surfaces يظهر على السطح; Compeyson's body is later recovered. The injured Magwitch is arrested, convicted, and dies awaiting execution إعدام . A despondent يائس Pip is arrested because of his debts, but his failing health prevents him from being jailed. Joe subsequently arrives and nurses Pip back to health. Joe also informs him that Miss Havisham has died. After Joe leaves, Pip discovers that his brother-in-law has paid all of his bills فواتير. Pip later accepts a job offer at the Cairo branch of Herbert's firm, and he enjoys a simple but content life. After more than 10 years away, he returns to England and visits the place where Satis House once stood. There he encounters Estella, who is now a widow أرملة. As they leave, Pip takes her hand, believing that they will not part يفترق again.



Chapter 1

Reading Text



Chapter 1 character list

Philip Pirrip (Pip) a young man; the main character
Mrs Joe Pip's older sister
Joe Gargery the husband of Pip's older sister; a blacksmith
Mr Pumblechook/Uncle Pumblechook Joe's uncle
A convict

One cold, grey afternoon in the middle of winter, a small boy sat alone near the marshes[1]. He was crying.

That small boy was me, Philip Pirrip. As my name was difficult to say when I was small, my name became Pip. I was crying because it was Christmas Eve[2], and I was an orphan[3] – my parents were dead, and so were five of my brothers and sisters. This happened when I was very young, so I did not remember them.

I had lived with my sister and her husband, Joe Gargery, for most of my life. Joe was the village blacksmith[4] and Mrs Joe was twenty years older than me. She was tall and thin and liked to complain about me; she was often angry, but Joe was my friend.

On this grey afternoon, when I was about seven years old, I had walked down to the graveyard[5] at the edge of the village. I sat by my parents' grave as the afternoon light slowly disappeared. The marshes nearby became dark and frightening.

I was going to leave and go home when a terrible voice shouted 'Quiet!'

Then a man appeared from behind a grave. I nearly jumped out of my skin[6]!

'What's your name, boy?' he shouted, walking slowly towards me.

'Pip, sir.'

'Show me where you live!' said the man.

I pointed to my village, not far away.

'Who do you live with?'

'My sister, sir – Mrs Joe Gargery – she's the wife of Joe Gargery, the blacksmith, sir.'

'A blacksmith!'

The man looked down and I saw his leg-irons[7]. Then I noticed his old grey clothes and his thin dirty face. He was shaking.



(1) مستنقعات
(2) عشية عيد الميلاد
(3) يتيم
(4) حداد
(5) مقبرة
(6) خرجت من جلدي
(7) أغلال قدم

'Do you know what a blacksmith's file[1] is?' he asked.

'Yes, sir.'

He suddenly grabbed[2] my shoulders and shook me.

'I want you to bring me that file early tomorrow morning. And some food, too. Then I will let you live! What do you say?'

I was frightened, so I promised to bring the file and the food to him the next day.

'Now go home!' he shouted.

I ran until I could run no more. When I looked back, I saw the man far out on the marshes, a black shape against the angry red sky. Once I got my breath back[3] I hurried home as fast as I could.

When I ran into the kitchen, feeling happy to be home safely, Mrs Joe angrily asked me where I had been.

'Only to the graveyard,' I cried.

'Graveyard!' she shouted. 'You're lucky not to have been put in the graveyard long ago! It's because of me that you're still here. But I didn't want to look after you! It's bad enough being a blacksmith's wife. I never asked to be your mother!'

That evening, I had work to do in the kitchen as usual. It was almost bedtime and I was helping to prepare lunch for the next day, when I heard a loud noise.

'Listen! What is that?' I said.

'A convict[4] escaped last night,' Joe explained.

'That noise was a warning to everyone in our village that another convict has got away[5]!'

'From the prison ships,' Mrs Joe added.

'What are they?' I asked.

'They're ships where they put people because they have committed a crime[6],' replied my sister. 'Now go to bed!' she shouted.

I remembered that I had seen a broken old ship, far out on the marshes that day. Perhaps it was a prison ship.

As I fell asleep, I realised that the man I had met that day was one of the escaped convicts. He wanted a blacksmith's file so that he could take off his leg-irons and get away from the marshes quickly. He scared me, but I also felt sorry for him.

Early the next morning, I got up and went into the kitchen. It was Christmas Day, and guests were invited to dinner. There was some delicious cheese in the kitchen, as well as nuts, apples and oranges, and a cold meat pie[7]. I took them all. Then I went into Joe's workroom and found a blacksmith's file.

Closing the front door quietly behind me and holding all the food carefully, I set off[8]. I ran to the graveyard and then out into the mist and over the wet marshes.

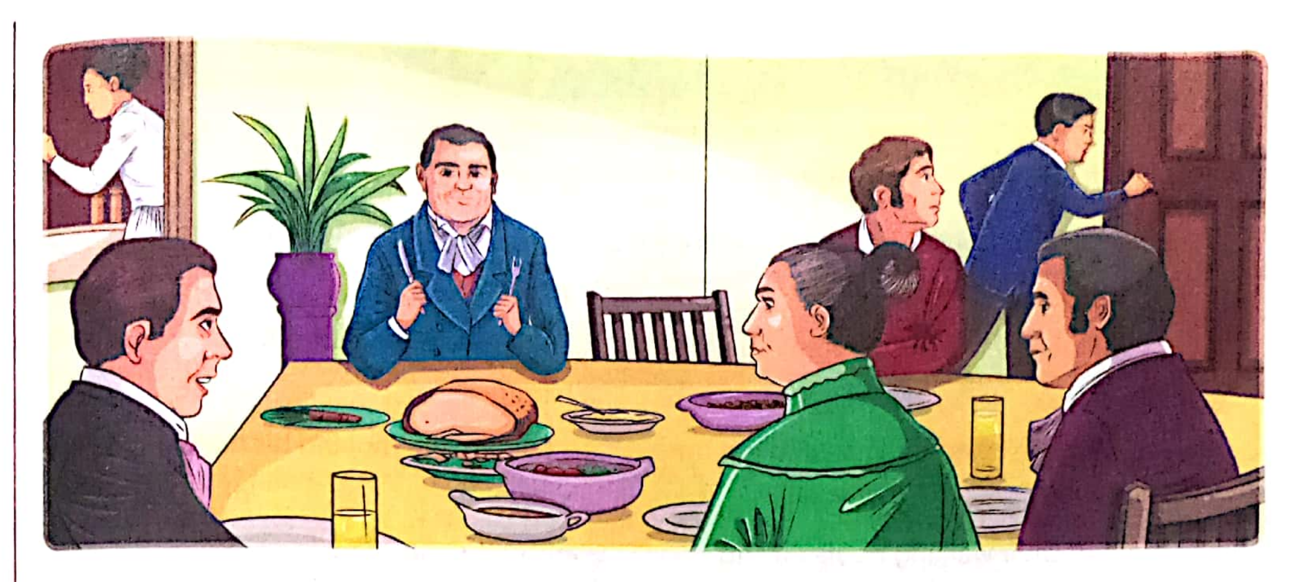
Suddenly, quite by surprise, I saw a man in grey who seemed to be asleep. He wore leg-irons and stood up when he saw me. At first, I thought he was the man that I knew, but then I realised that his face was different.

He looked at me for a moment before disappearing into the mist. I wondered who he could be and what he was doing out here.

Soon afterwards, I found the man I was looking for. I gave him the food at once, and he ate it quickly as I told him about the other man that I had just seen. He wanted to know who he was and where he had gone, but I could not tell him. Then, as soon as he had eaten, he took the file from me and started trying to remove his leg-irons with an angry look on his face.

(1) مبرد
(2) أمسك بقوة
(3) استعدت أنفاسي
(4) مدان/سجين
(5) هرب
(6) ارتكب جريمة
(7) فطيرة
(8) يتجه إلى





I was afraid again, so I ran home as fast as I could. As I ran back across the marshes, I could hear the sound of the file on the leg-irons through the mist[1].

Mrs Joe was busy preparing the house for guests, so Joe and I were alone together. I began to feel guilty[2] about the food and the file which I had stolen that morning, and I wanted to tell Joe what I had done. But then I thought he might not want to be my friend if I did, so I said nothing.

It was not long before the guests arrived and we sat down to Christmas dinner.

At first, nobody noticed that anything was missing. But then, to my horror[3], Mrs Joe invited everyone to try the delicious meat pie that Joe's uncle, Mr Pumblechook, had given us. The guests happily agreed and she went to find it. Joe told me I could have some, and I felt very bad. At any moment, Mrs Joe was going to discover that the meat pie had disappeared from the kitchen.

Unable to stay at the table with all the guests any longer, I got up from my chair and ran to the front door. But when I opened it, a group of soldiers entered, just as Mrs Joe came back into the room shouting, 'The pie has gone!'

The appearance of a group of soldiers made the guests forget about the pie and they all stood up from the table. Everyone wondered why the soldiers had come, and we all felt nervous.

'We need a blacksmith to mend some handcuffs[4], please,' the first soldier said. 'We're looking for two convicts who broke their handcuffs and escaped. We think they are hiding out on the marshes, although they probably won't try to get away until tonight.'

When he asked if we had seen them, everybody else said no. I did not speak.

Joe mended the handcuffs for the soldiers, and they waited with us as he worked. When they were finished, Joe and I followed the soldiers out of the village and onto the marshes.

'I hope we don't find the convicts, Joe,' I said quietly.

'Me too, Pip,' Joe replied.

Day became night as we walked over the marshes. It was raining and the wind blew the rain into our faces.

Suddenly, we heard angry shouts nearby. I was afraid of what was about to happen.

(1) شبورة/ضباب
(2) مذنب
(3) رعب/فزع
(4) أغلال/قيود





Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We can't build houses here because there is a .... The ground is too wet. *(Workbook)*
a) well b) marsh c) valley d) line

2 The metal was sharp and rough, so we used a .... to make it smooth. *(Workbook)*
a) kit b) saw c) hammer d) file

3 The police arrested the man and put on .... to stop him moving his hands. *(Workbook)*
a) handcuffs b) iron-legs c) sleeve d) necklace

4 They put their walking boots on and .... early in the morning. *(Workbook)*
a) set out b) set up c) set off d) set in

5 In the past, all villages had a .... who could make things from metal. *(Workbook)*
a) guard b) carpenter c) gardener d) blacksmith

6 Very dangerous .... were put in leg-irons in the past to stop them from running away. *(Workbook)*
a) convicts b) lawyers c) employees d) clerks

7 A/An .... is an area of land where people are buried. *(Workbook)*
a) monument b) graveyard c) tower d) valley

8 The war has left thousands of children as .... with terrible memories.
a) fighters b) clients c) orphans d) judges

9 Father .... my little daughter's arm to stop her from running into the road.
a) released b) freed c) shook d) grabbed

10 The two .... men were ordered to pay a lot of money to their victims.
a) cheerful b) innocent c) guilty d) honest

11 The criminal, who has been arrested, has admitted .... several crimes, including fraud.
a) fighting b) committing c) solving d) turning

12 A .... is a baked dish of fruit or meat and/or vegetables with pastry on the bottom, sides and top.
a) pie b) salad c) curry d) sochi

13 People cried out in .... as they watched the building burn.
a) delight b) horror c) flight d) dispute

14 A .... is thin fog produced by very small drops of water collecting in the air just above an area of ground or water.
a) slide b) fist c) mist d) march

15 The old man leant against a tree until he had .... his breath back.
a) got b) lost c) earned d) won



Chapter 2

Reading Text

Chapter 2 character list
Joe Gargery the husband of Pip's older sister; a blacksmith
Biddy teacher and friend to Pip, Joe and Mrs Joe
Mrs Joe Pip's older sister
Mr Pumblechook/Uncle Pumblechook Joe's uncle
Miss Havisham a rich, elderly lady
Estella a young lady who lives with Miss Havisham

The soldiers ran into the marshes and we saw two men. They were fighting and covered in mud. The soldiers pulled them away from each other.

In the light of the soldiers' torches, I saw the man that I had helped. I wanted to say, 'I didn't tell the soldiers where to find you,' but all I could do was shake[1] my head. He gave me a long, strange look which I will never forget.

'I have something to say,' he said. 'It was me. I stole the food from the blacksmith's house this morning.' He looked at Joe and added, 'I'm sorry that I ate your meat pie.'

'You're welcome. We don't want you to be hungry,' Joe replied kindly.

The man turned away. Then he was taken to a boat nearby which took him to the black prison ship, far out on the marshes. We watched as he climbed back onto the ship in the distance and disappeared.

At that moment, the torches went out.

A year passed. I worked every day, helping neighbours with small jobs, but in the evening I went to the village school. The old lady who taught me often fell asleep, leaving her grand-daughter, Biddy, to show me how to read and write.

One night, Joe saw me sitting by the fire, as I was practising my writing.

'You know, Pip, you are very clever!' he said.

'Did you never go to school, Joe?' I asked.

'No, Pip,' he replied. 'My father didn't let me go, but he had a good heart[2]. He taught me to be a blacksmith. And after he died, I met your sister. She's a fine woman.'

I looked into the fire.

'I'm glad you think so, Joe,' I said at last.

'I wish she wouldn't hit you, though,' Joe said. 'I would rather she hit me than you! We'll always be best friends, won't we, Pip?'

Just then Mrs Joe came in.

'If this boy isn't grateful[3] to me now, he never will be!' she said.

I tried to look grateful, but I didn't understand what Mrs Joe meant.

'Miss Havisham wants Pip to go to her house,' she said. 'And he must go, or I will make him work hard here!'

Everyone in the village had heard of Miss Havisham; she was a very rich lady who lived in the nearest town. However, most people had never seen her because she never left her large, old house.

'So how does she know Pip?' Joe asked.

'She doesn't know Pip. Uncle Pumblechook visited her, and she asked him if he knew a boy who would go there to play with a child who lives there,' Mrs Joe replied. 'The boy will make his fortune[4] by going to Miss Havisham's house, and he's going there tomorrow!'

Then she jumped on me, like an eagle[5] on a lamb. I was washed very well that night. Uncle Pumblechook took me to Miss Havisham's house in my best clothes, the next day.

(1) يهز
(2) كان طيب القلب
(3) شاكر/ممنون
(4) ثروة
(5) نسر



We waited at the gate until a very pretty, but proud, young girl appeared.

'This is Pip,' said Mr Pumblechook.

'Come in, Pip,' she said, opening the gate.

Uncle Pumblechook was not invited in so I left him at the gate. I followed the girl through an untidy garden.

The house looked unused and most of the doors were closed. Everything was dark inside, and we went upstairs with a candle(1).

The girl left me at a door, telling me to enter.

Inside was a dressing room lit by candles; the curtains(2) were closed, so no daylight could enter. And then I saw her: the strangest lady I had ever seen, or would ever see.

She was dressed completely in white, with a long white veil(3) and flowers in her hair. But her hair was white, the flowers were dead, and the white dress was now yellow with age. I saw a bride(4) in a wedding dress, but everything about her was old and sad.

'Let me look at you,' she said.

As I stood before her, I noticed that the clock had stopped at twenty to nine.

'Do you know what I have here?' the lady continued, her hands on her heart.

'Yes, madam.' I replied. 'It's your heart.'

'A broken heart(5)' she said. Then after a moment, she added, 'I am tired, and I am bored. Play!'

I wondered what game I could play, so I replied that I could not play alone 'Call Estella!' the old lady said.

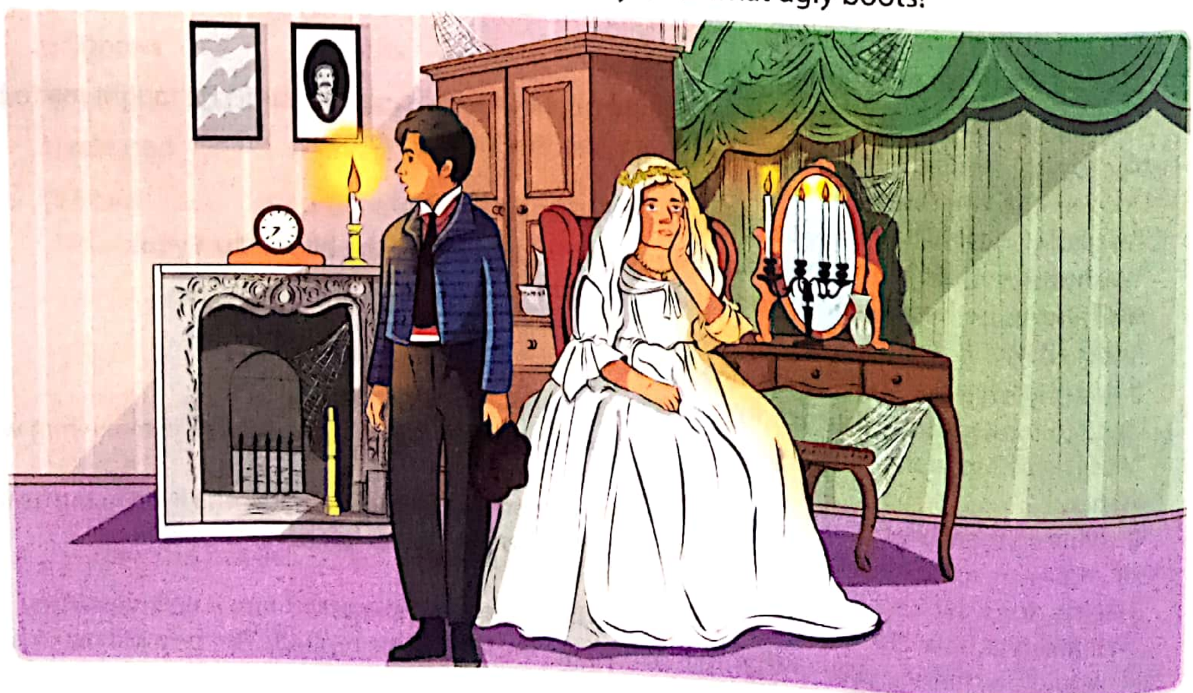
When Estella entered, I saw that she was the girl who had let me in. Now she was told to play with me.

'But he is just a poor working boy!' she complained.

Miss Havisham said something to her. I could not hear clearly, but I thought she said, 'Well? You can break his heart.'

And so Estella and I played games while Miss Havisham watched silently.

'What dirty hands you have!' Estella said, unkindly. 'And what ugly boots!'



I was ashamed. Finally, Miss Havisham called me to her side.

'What do you think of her?' she asked, looking at Estella.



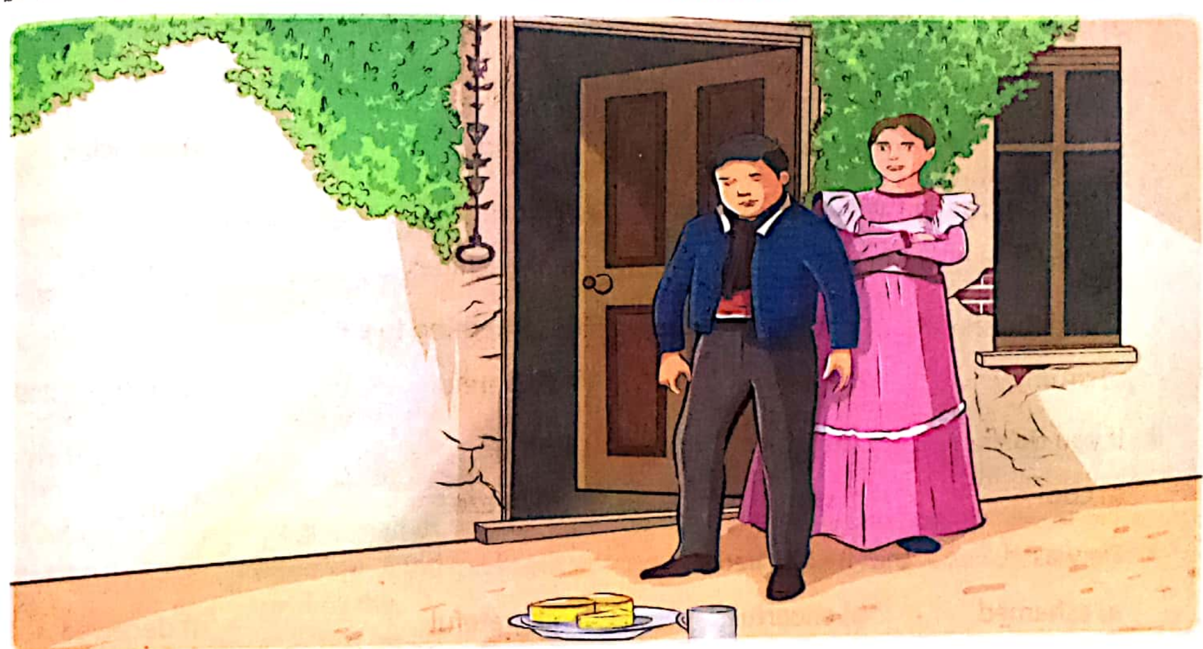
(1) شمعة
(2) ستائر
(3) حجاب /طرحة
(4) عروس
(5) قلب محطم حزنًا

'I think she is very proud. And very pretty. And very rude,' I said. 'I would like to go now, please.'

Miss Havisham made me promise to come back in six days. Then Estella led me back through the dark house and out into the garden.

Before I left, Estella gave me some food and drink, but did not hand it to me. Instead, she put it on the ground. Tears[1] came to my eyes. When she saw that I was crying, she smiled.

I returned home, hurt and ashamed of my simple life. In the kitchen, Mrs Joe and Uncle Pumblechook were waiting for me. They wanted to know what had happened, but I didn't want to tell them the truth. Later, when I was alone with Joe, I told him everything. I said that the beautiful girl at Miss Havisham's house had said I was common[2], and that I felt ashamed.



Joe told me to be happy with my position in life, but I could not forget what had happened. I knew that this was the beginning of something that would change the rest of my life. I decided to learn as much as I could at the village school. If I had a better education[3], perhaps Estella would be kinder.

Two days later, I asked Biddy if she would help me more with my lessons, and she happily agreed. The village school was very busy and noisy, but when I left it that evening I hoped that with hard work, I would one day leave my simple life behind and become a fine gentleman.

On my way home, I met Joe at the village inn. He was sitting with a man I had not met before. He looked at me strangely.

'It's bad weather tonight,' Joe said. 'The mist is so thick, you wouldn't know there was a prison ship out there on the marshes!'

'Oh, is there?' asked the man. 'I don't know this area. It seems very lonely out on those marshes.'

'Marshes are always lonely,' replied Joe.

'Perhaps you're right,' said the man.

The man then asked if any escaped convicts had been found recently, and I began to feel uncomfortable.

Then the man stirred[4] his cup of tea, and I saw that he was using a blacksmith's file. It was the same file that I had taken from Joe's workshop a year ago! But Joe did not notice.

(1) دموع
(2) غير مهذب/ عامي
(3) تعليم
(4) قلب





Exercises on Chapter (2)

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 When he .... the box, he heard something rattling around inside. (Student's book)

a) shook b) destroyed c) made d) designed

2 The guide told us the Pharaoh spent a .... building his palace. (Student's book)

a) mess b) fortune c) sum d) quantity

3 The mother of the .... cried during the wedding. (Student's book)

a) planner b) singer c) bride d) musician

4 The storm cut off the electricity so we had to use .... (Student's book)

a) surprises b) stations c) machines d) candles

5 The man was .... to Pip for bringing him something to eat. (Student's book)

a) grumpy b) gloomy c) grateful d) disappointed

6 If you don't .... the sauce, it won't be smooth. (Student's book)

a) cool b) stir c) freeze d) drop

7 He was .... that he had lied. (Student's book)

a) ashamed b) cheerful c) grateful d) deceived

8 The bride wore a long .... on her head that matched her wedding dress. (Student's book)

a) shawl b) curtain c) veil d) necklace

9 My grandmother .... a good heart. She always offered us valuable presents.

a) missed b) had c) helped d) gifted

10 When I returned home, I saw my wife standing on a ladder hanging some new ....

a) curtains b) carpets c) pipes d) slides

11 Our neighbour has a .... heart - her husband died six months ago

a) good b) broken c) delighted d) spoken

12 The old man's eyes filled with .... as he recalled his wife's death.

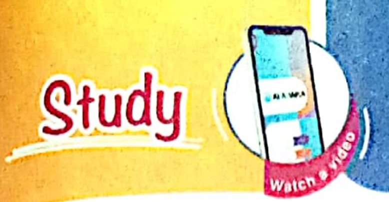
a) meditation b) pleasure c) tears d) hope

13 Our boss thought the new secretary was very .... and uneducated because of the way she talked.

a) disappointed b) arrogant c) popular d) common

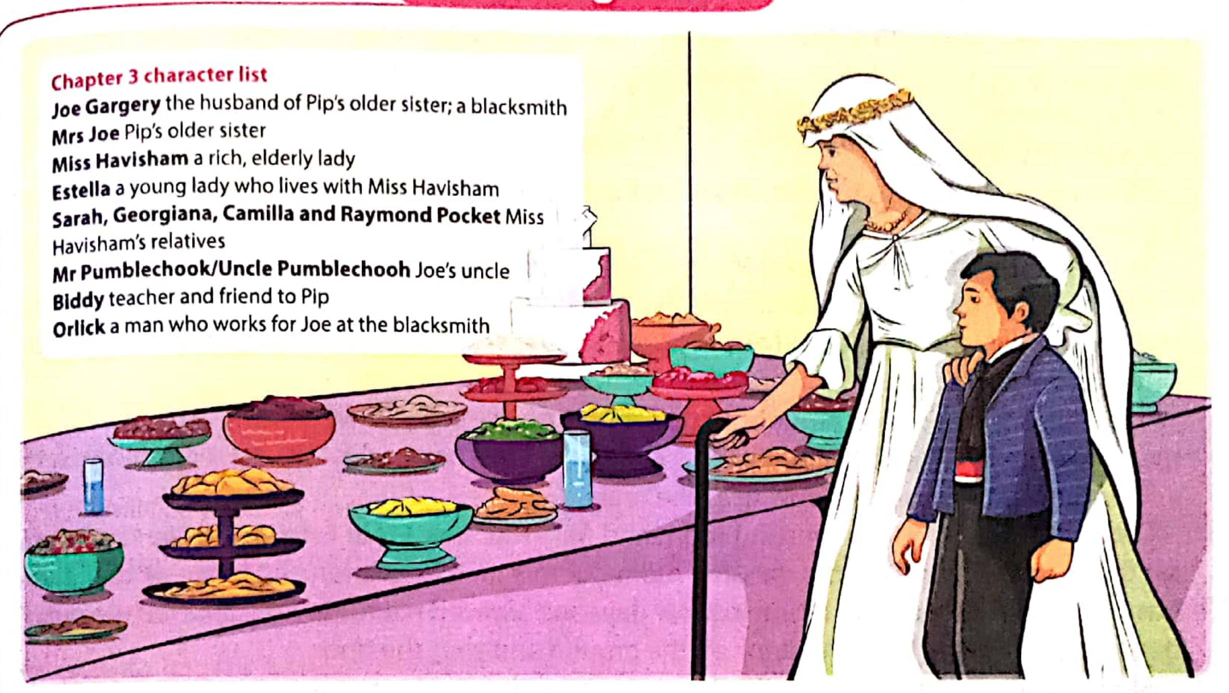
14 The worker had a poor ...., and left school without qualifications.

a) sight b) education c) thought d) view



Chapter 3

Reading Text



Chapter 3 character list
Joe Gargery the husband of Pip's older sister; a blacksmith
Mrs Joe Pip's older sister
Miss Havisham a rich, elderly lady
Estella a young lady who lives with Miss Havisham
Sarah, Georgiana, Camilla and Raymond Pocket Miss Havisham's relatives
Mr Pumblechook/Uncle Pumblechooh Joe's uncle
Biddy teacher and friend to Pip
Orlick a man who works for Joe at the blacksmith

When I realised that the man in the inn had met the convict I helped on the marshes, I wanted to take Joe away. Before we could go, however, the man took out a new coin[1]. He wrapped[2] it in some paper and gave it to me.

'This is yours,' he said, 'but be careful!'

Feeling frightened, I took the coin and left with Joe. When we got home, we realised that the paper wrapped around the coin was a pound note[3]. Joe went back to the inn immediately to try to find the man and return his note to him. However, the man had left. Mrs Joe put the pound note on a shelf where it would be safe and there it remained.

On my next visit to Miss Havisham's house, Estella took me into a gloomy[4] room where three ladies and a gentleman were waiting. They were Miss Havisham's relatives, Sarah, Georgiana, Camilla and Raymond Pocket, and they had also come to see her that day.

A bell rang far away. Miss Havisham was ready to see me. Holding up her candle, Estella led me through the dark house.

'Well, boy!' She asked. 'Am I pretty?'

'Yes, you are very pretty.'

'Why don't you cry?' She asked, looking unkindly at me.

'I'll never cry again,' I said.

Just then, we met a large, dark-haired man on the stairs.

'Ah, you are a neighbour, I think?' He asked.

'Yes, sir,' I replied.

'Why are you here, boy?'

'Miss Havisham asked for me,' I explained.

'Well, behave yourself[5]! This is not a place for children to play,' he said, before walking away.

I thought that he might be a doctor, and I continued walking up the stairs. I soon found myself in Miss Havisham's room again. Everything was the same as before.



(1) عملة معدنية
(2) ملفوف
(3) عملة ورقية
(4) كئيب
(5) كن مؤدبًا

'So! Are you ready to play?' She asked.

'I don't think I am, madam,' I replied.

'Well, do you want to work then?'

I said that I did, and she told me to wait for her in the dining room opposite.

When I entered the dark room, I could see a long table laid with a table-cloth[1] and plates, prepared for a wedding celebration[2], but now covered with spiders' webs[3]. The room looked like it had been exactly the same for many years. There were spiders and mice everywhere. I was looking around the room and watching the spiders when Miss Havisham came quietly into the room behind me.

'What do you think that is?' asked Miss Havisham, pointing at a tall shape in the centre of the table.

I went closer.

'It's a cake, Pip. A wedding cake! Mine!' She went on. 'And now, walk with me.'

She asked me to walk with her around the room, which we did for some minutes until Estella and the Pockets came in. They asked about Miss Havisham's health and wished her a happy birthday, but she sent them away.

'That wedding cake was brought here, a long time before you were born,' Miss Havisham told me. 'And everything is still here.'

She stood for a long time, looking at the table.

Then we returned to her dressing room and Miss Havisham told Estella and me to play. So we sat down to play games in her dressing room but this time Estella refused to speak to me. Finally, Miss Havisham asked me to return in a few days and allowed me to leave. Estella led me out of the house, again put my food and drink on the ground and shut the door.

Alone in the garden, I was surprised to see another boy looking at me out of a window. He disappeared into the house, and then came out into the garden to speak to me. He had very pale[4] skin and short fair hair, so in my mind, I called him 'the pale young gentleman'.

'Hello, who let you in?' he asked.

'Estella,' I replied.

'Come and fight, then!' he said, preparing to hit me.

The boy was my age, but much taller than me. I ran at him hard and he fell over. He jumped up, prepared to fight again, so I ran at him again. This time he got a black eye. He did not seem to be strong and never hit me hard.

The fight continued for several minutes until the boy was on his knees, saying, 'You have won!'





(1) مفرش المنضدة
(2) احتفال
(3) شبكات العناكب
(4) شاحب

He was so brave[1] that I felt sorry for him.

'Can I help?' I asked.

'No, thank you. Goodbye,' he answered.

I knew that it was time to leave.

I did not see the pale young gentleman at Miss Havisham's again, although my visits continued. Nothing ever changed. Miss Havisham sat in her wedding dress, in her dusty[2] dressing room; Estella and I played games as she watched; and Miss Havisham asked if I thought Estella was pretty[3]. I always said yes, and Miss Havisham seemed happy with this answer.

'What will you be when you grow up, Pip?' she asked one day.

Mrs Joe and Uncle Pumblechook had been talking about the same thing ever since I had started to visit Miss Havisham. They were sure that she wanted to give me all her money, and they wanted my visits to continue.

'I am going to become Joe's apprentice[4] and learn to be a blacksmith,' I said.

'Then tell Joe to come here at once,' she replied.

When Joe came with me on my next visit, Miss Havisham gave him a large bag of money.

'Pip will become your apprentice now,' she said. 'He is a good boy and this is his reward. The money is to pay for his apprenticeship[5] . But that's your[6] lot! This is all you will get from me, Mr Gargery!'

'Shall I visit you again, Miss Havisham?' I asked.

'No,' she replied, 'Joe is your boss now. Estella, show them out!'

And so my apprenticeship with Joe began.

But I had changed. I no longer wanted to be a blacksmith; now, I was ashamed of my home and my family.

Estella was often in my thoughts, although I did not see her anymore. I was sure that she did not like my position in life, so I continued my education and worked hard. This was largely thanks to Biddy, who gave me lessons and taught me as much as she knew. Although she was older than me, Biddy was my friend.

About a year after my apprenticeship with Joe had begun, I asked Joe for an afternoon's holiday, so that I could visit Miss Havisham and thank her for helping me. When Orlick, Joe's workman, heard that I was going, he was very angry. He did not think it was right that I should have an afternoon's holiday, but he could not. I did not like Orlick; he was large and slow, and he often tried to make my life difficult at work. An argument[7] began between Orlick and Mrs Joe, who wanted me to see Miss Havisham again. In the end, Joe had to stop them. But there was something strange about Orlick, but I could not put my finger[8] on what it was.'

(1) شجاع
(2) متِرب
(3) جميلة
(4) صبي متمرن في حرفة
(5) فترة التدريب في المهنة
(6) هذا هو نصيبك
(7) جدال
(8) لم أستطع وضع إصبعي على





● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It was a grey and .... day. *(Student's book)*

a) specific b) bright c) cheerful d) gloomy

2 There was a pile of .... old books on the shelf. *(Student's book)*

a) uncovered b) gloomy c) dusty d) departed

3 My mother said, ".................... yourself" when I ran in playing a game and knocked over a chair. *(Student's book)*

a) Believe b) Behave c) Apply d) Reform

4 I felt a spider's.................... brush against my face as I walked through the doorway. *(Student's book)*

a) web b) net c) basket d) screen

5 He worked for a year as a builder's .... *(Student's book)*

a) boss b) apprentice c) trainer d) coach

6 The children had an .... about what game to play. *(Student's book)*

a) argument b) assignment c) attainment d) attachment

7 I'm going to apply for an .... when I finish school. *(Student's book)*

a) extension b) exercise c) apprenticeship d) existence

8 I think the young man was incredibly .... to do a parachute jump.

a) disappointed b) brave c) arrogant d) cowardly

9 The referee flipped a .... into the air to decide which side would bat first.

a) coin b) note c) cheque d) paper

10 The bank only exchanges .... and traveller's cheques; coins can't be exchanged.

a) wills b) notes c) shares d) divisions

11 There were wild street .... when France won the World Cup in 2018.

a) laments b) sorrows c) celebrations d) regrets

12 The girl looked .... in her simple cotton dress which all her friends liked.

a) ugly b) common c) strange d) pretty

13 The old man gave the servant a twenty-pound note saying "that's your ....".

a) toast b) lot c) coat d) pot

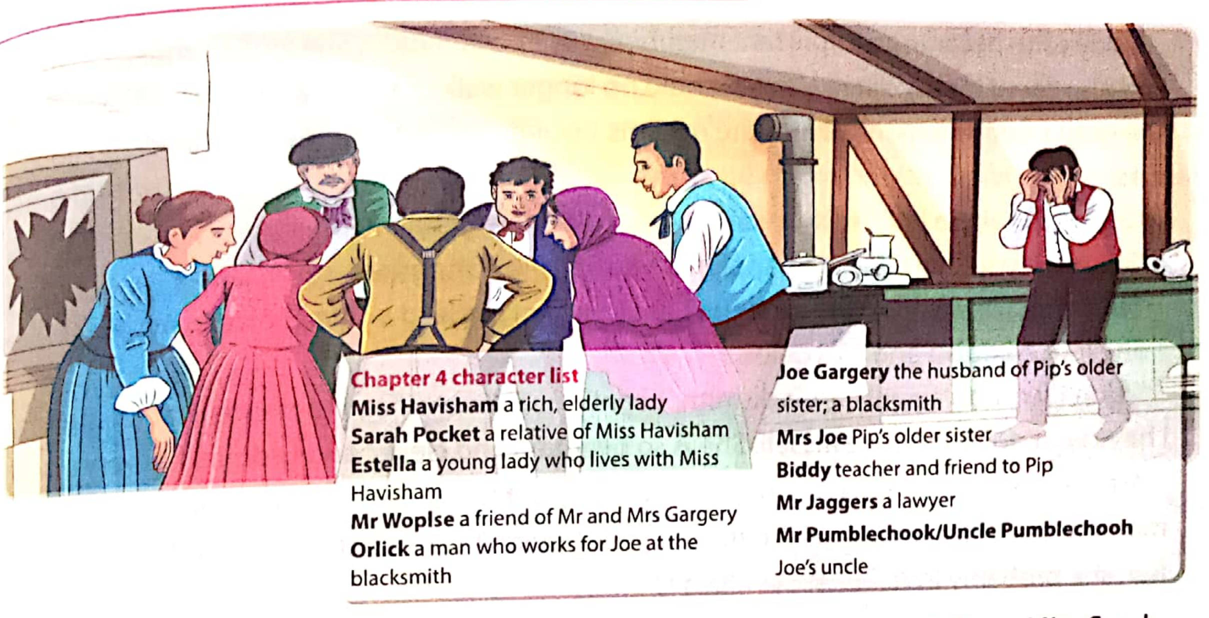
14 I can't .... my finger on it, but there's something different about you today.

a) put b) cut c) remove d) touch



Chapter 4

Reading Text



Chapter 4 character list

Miss Havisham a rich, elderly lady
Sarah Pocket a relative of Miss Havisham
Estella a young lady who lives with Miss Havisham
Mr Woplse a friend of Mr and Mrs Gargery
Orlick a man who works for Joe at the blacksmith
Joe Gargery the husband of Pip's older sister; a blacksmith
Mrs Joe Pip's older sister
Biddy teacher and friend to Pip
Mr Jaggers a lawyer
Mr Pumblechook/Uncle Pumblechooh Joe's uncle

When I visited Miss Havisham the next day, I was sorry that Estella was not there. Miss Sarah Pocket opened the door for me.

'What do you want?' Miss Havisham said angrily. 'I hope you don't want anything from me, because you will get nothing!'

'I don't want anything. I have come to say thank you – for my apprenticeship,' I explained.

'Well,' Miss Havisham replied, 'from now on(1), come to see me once a year, on your birthday!'

I promised that I would.

'You are looking for Estella, aren't you?' Miss Havisham continued. 'She has gone away for her education and she will become a lady. Do you feel that you have lost her, Pip?'

She laughed, and I did not know what to say. Then she asked me to leave, so I set off for home.

On the way, I met Mr Wopsle, one of the guests from that Christmas dinner a few years ago, and we walked together. It was getting darker now. In the mist, a man came slowly towards us, and we realised it was Orlick. He told us that some more convicts had escaped from the prison ship, and he seemed to act strangely as he walked with us along the road back.

On my return to the house, I was surprised to find a crowd of people in the kitchen. While Joe had been out that evening, someone had broken into our house and they had hit Mrs Joe on the head, injuring her badly. Nothing had been taken, but a convict's leg-irons lay on the floor.

I immediately remembered the convict who I had helped two years before in the graveyard. However, I felt sure that the person who committed the crime was not him. I suspected(2) Orlick because he had been so angry with my sister. However, I had no proof(3).

Mrs Joe was unable to speak or walk again after the attack, but she could draw, and one day, she drew a hammer(4). Biddy and I knew at once that the hammer meant the blacksmith's hammer, which meant Orlick! When Mrs Joe was able to sit in the kitchen again, we could see that she was scared(5) of him.

Mrs Joe could not hurt me now and because Joe needed help in the house, Biddy came to cook and clean for us. At last, my life was improving.

(1) من الآن فصاعدًا
(2) يشك في
(3) دليل
(4) مطرقة
(5) مذعور

Some years passed, and I continued my apprenticeship at the blacksmith's. My visits to Miss Havisham's house continued once a year. It seemed as though time, like her old clocks, had stopped there. I did not see Estella again during that time, although I often thought of her. And when it was time to leave, Miss Havisham always gave me a coin and told me to come back on my next birthday.

Biddy soon became an important member in our household[1]. She looked after everything well, and also cared for my sister. Mrs Joe could no longer walk or speak, and now I felt sorry for her. As the weeks became months, and the months became years, I also saw how kind and good Biddy was.

One day, I said to her. 'Biddy, I want to become a fine gentleman.'

'But don't you think you are happier as you are, Pip?' She asked, surprised.

'No, Biddy,' I explained. 'I will never be happy unless I can lead a different life to the one I live now.'

She looked down and was quiet.

'I don't want to be just a blacksmith,' I continued. 'Ever since I met Estella at Miss Havisham's, I have wanted to improve myself. She is so beautiful and clever, and I admire her very much!'

After a moment, Biddy asked quietly, 'Do you want to become a gentleman to upset[2] her, or to marry her? If you want to upset her, then you shouldn't care what she thinks; if you want to marry her, she probably isn't worth the effort[3].'

'That may be true,' I replied, 'but I still admire Estella so much!'

I knew that I was making a mistake, but I could not change my feelings.

Biddy told me then that she was glad I could talk to her, and said she would never tell anyone else.

'I will always tell you everything, Biddy!' I said.

'Until you're a fine gentleman,' she replied, in a strange, sad voice.

It seemed impossible that my wish to become a gentleman would come true. But one evening, while Joe and I were at the village inn, listening to Mr Wopsle reading aloud from a newspaper, I noticed that a stranger was looking at us. Then I remembered him. He was the gentleman I had met on the stairs at Miss Havisham's house, years before.

'Is your apprentice, Pip, here?' The dark man asked us, looking at Joe. 'I need to speak privately[4] to you both.'

He sounded like an important man, so we invited him to come back to the workshop with us. Once there, he said he was Mr Jaggers, a lawyer from London.

'I am working for someone but I cannot tell you their name,' he explained. 'I have to tell you that Pip has great expectations[5]. He will receive a large amount of property[6] in future, so now he must have an education. The only condition[7] is that he does not ask who his benefactor[8] is.'

I immediately agreed. Joe was so surprised that he did not object at all when Mr Jaggers asked him if he could end my apprenticeship immediately.



(1) أفراد العائلة
(2) يزعج/يضايق
(3) يستحق الجهد
(4) على انفراد
(5) توقعات/آمال
(6) ملكية/ممتلكات
(7) شرط
(8) متبرع/فاعل خير

'I have a large sum of money for you,' Mr Jaggers continued, turning to me, 'and your education will begin soon in London, with Mr Matthew Pocket. He will be your teacher and he will make a gentleman of you! But first, take these twenty pounds to buy some new clothes.'

When Joe was asked if he needed any money for losing me at the blacksmith's, he replied, 'Pip is welcome to go and find his fortune. Money makes no difference to my feelings[1] for him. We will always be best friends.'

Joe was so good and kind, and really cared about me. When he and Biddy realised that I was to leave them in just a week, they both congratulated me, but they did not say much more than that. I knew that they were sad that I was leaving. My sister did not understand what was happening, although Biddy tried to explain everything to her.

I decided that when I had bought my new clothes, I would put them on at Uncle Pumblechook's house.

'I don't want all the poor people in this village to see me in my fine clothes,' I explained to Joe and Biddy.

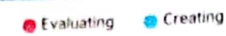


They were both silent[2]. Uncle Pumblechook, however, was delighted.

'I will never forget you, Joe,' I said, as I left the blacksmith's a week later. However, in truth[3], I had begun to feel more and more ashamed of Joe's poor education. When I said goodbye to Biddy, I asked if she could teach Joe to speak better, but to my surprise she refused. Suddenly, I felt lonelier than ever before.

(1) مشاعر
(2) صامت
(3) في الواقع





● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My grandparents bought .... in Cairo when they were younger. (Student's book)
a) availability b) equality c) ability d) property

2 That rich man was a .... to help build the hospital. (Student's book)
a) criminal b) charity c) benefactor d) oppressed

3 We need to use this .... to hit the nails into the wood. (Student's book)
a) saw b) hammer c) drill d) file

4 Everyone .... that these two people were responsible. (Student's book)
a) suspects b) evades c) avoids d) releases

5 My dad said that from now ...., I must do my homework as soon as I get home. (Student's book)
a) in b) on c) about d) to

6 The necklace we found in the car is .... that she took it. (Student's book)
a) key b) reason c) proof d) doubt

7 My brother has worked very hard on his art project, but he thinks the hard work will be .... the effort. (Student's book)
a) equal b) worth c) worse d) clear

8 I have .... that good things are going to come my way this year. (Student's book)
a) implications b) fights c) fears d) expectations

9 I knew it wouldn't be easy to become a scientist, but my .... was set on my goal. (Student's book)
a) brain b) neck c) heart d) felling

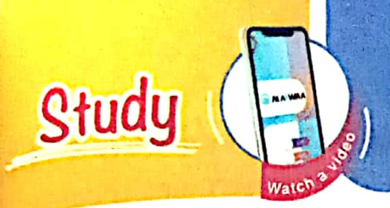
10 My mum was .... that I'd forgotten her birthday. (Student's book)
a) upset b) pleased c) joyful d) excited

11 The students were asked to remain .... while their names are called before the test.
a) moving b) silent c) shy d) ashamed

12 Our parents will give us the money on one.................. —that we pay it back within six months.
a) state b) test c) condition d) position

13 The nursery school teacher asked to talk to the boy's parents ....
a) sadly b) vainly c) publically d) privately

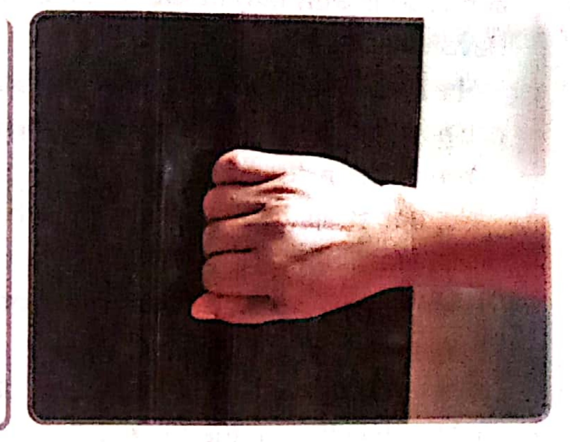
14 The young actress laughed and chatted but was, ... truth, not having much fun.
a) at b) about c) in d) on



Chapter 5

Reading Text

Chapter 5 character list
Miss Havisham a rich, elderly lady
Mr Jaggers a lawyer
Matthew Pocket Miss Havisham's cousin; father of Hebert Pocket; Pip's teacher in London
Mr Wemmick Mr Jaggers' clerk
Herbert Pocket a relative of Miss Havisham; who Pip will live with in London
Miss Havisham a rich, elderly lady
Estella Miss Havisham's adopted daughter
Miss Havisham's half-brother
Miss Havisham's fiancé
Startop a man who is staying with Herbert Pocket and Pip
Bentley Drummlr a man who is staying with Herbert Pocket and Pip



I visited Miss Havisham, wearing my new clothes.

'I have been given a fortune since I last saw you, Miss Havisham,' I said. 'And I am so grateful!'

'I know,' she replied, 'and you have a good life ahead of you. But remember to follow Mr Jaggers advice!'

She looked pleased as I said goodbye, and I felt sure that she was my secret benefactor. After all, Mr Jaggers had told me that I was to be educated in London by Mr Matthew Pocket, one of Miss Havisham's relatives(1).

When I was sitting on the coach to London the next day, after a quick goodbye to Joe, my sister and Biddy, I felt as though the whole world was waiting for me.

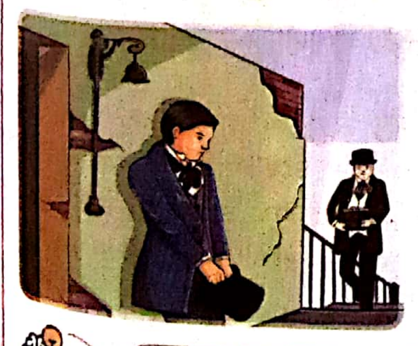
It was five long hours before I arrived at Mr Jaggers' office in London. His clerk(2), Mr Wemmick, explained that because Mr Jaggers was still at work, I should wait for him in his office. It was an unpleasant place, and I was sad that I had left the blacksmith's.

When Mr Jaggers returned, he said that I should go to my lodgings(3) at Barnard's Inn, where I would share rooms with Mr Matthew Pocket's son. He wanted to take me to his father's house in a few days' time, so that I could meet my new teacher.

'Here is some money, Pip,' Mr Jaggers continued. 'It is a lot of money! But don't worry; I will know how much you spend, in case there are any difficulties.'

This was good news! I felt happier now, and I agreed to go to my lodgings with Mr Wemmick. He told me that Mr Matthew Pocket lived in Hammersmith, five miles away.

When we came to Barnard's Inn, I was disappointed. It looked dusty and gloomy. Mr Wemmick left me at the door, but no one answered it.



I thought that no one would come and let me in, but after about half an hour, I heard footsteps(4). A tall, thin young man appeared.

'Mr Pip?' he asked. 'I am sorry! I went to buy some fruit at the market and I thought you would arrive later than this.'

He invited me in. It was only when he turned to speak to me, in the light of the window, that I saw who he was – the pale young gentleman!

(1) أقارب
(2) موظف
(3) مسكن
(4) خطوات أقدام

Herbert Pocket was the pale young man. He was not handsome[1], but his face was cheerful, and I liked him at once. However, I had a strange feeling that he would never become rich.

We immediately began talking. I discovered that Miss Havisham had once thought she might adopt[2] Herbert, so she had invited him to visit her. That was on the day that I had met Herbert, and fought with him in the garden. After that visit, however, Herbert was not invited to Miss Havisham's again.

'She didn't think I was suitable,' Herbert told me. 'But if she had adopted me, I would probably be rich now. And if that had happened, then I might even be Estella's fiancé[3], too!'

'You must be disappointed!' I said.

'No, not at all,' he replied. 'I think I have had a lucky escape! Estella is proud and cruel. Miss Havisham adopted her, you know. She wants to use her – to take revenge on[4] men!'

I was very surprised. Estella was adopted! Why did Miss Havisham want to use her in such a strange way?

When we sat down to eat, Herbert continued to tell me about Miss Havisham. First, however, he told me how to behave at the dinner table, for which I was grateful.

I soon discovered from Herbert that Mr Jaggers was Miss Havisham's lawyer. Mr Jaggers had suggested that Herbert's father, Mr Matthew Pocket, should be my teacher in London. I was convinced now that Miss Havisham was my secret benefactor!

Herbert told me more about Miss Havisham. He explained that when she was a young woman, she and her half-brother had inherited[5] a fortune from their father.

It was not long, however, before her half-brother spent his share[6] of the money and became jealous of her. He wanted to have her money, and he started to think about how he could get it from her. He didn't care if he had to hurt her to get it.

Soon afterwards, Miss Havisham got engaged[7]. During this time, she gave most of her fortune to her fiancé. This was against the advice of her cousin, Matthew Pocket, who warned her not to trust her future husband too much. Miss Havisham became very angry with Matthew Pocket and ordered him to leave her house. He has never been there since.



'Is your father still angry with Miss Havisham for ordering him to leave?' I asked Herbert.

'No, he's not angry at all,' replied Herbert. 'But when Miss Havisham sent him away that day, she said that he wanted to get her money himself. If he visited now, it would look as if he still wanted her money.'

On the morning of the wedding, when everything was ready and the guests were expected, there was some bad news. Miss Havisham's fiancé had left her! She received the news at twenty to nine in the morning, while she was getting dressed. Ever since that time, more than twenty-five years ago, neither Miss Havisham, nor her house, had changed at all. Even the clocks in the house had been stopped.



(1) وسيم
(2) يتبنى
(3) خطيب
(4) يثأر من
(5) ورث
(6) نصيب
(7) مخطوبة

'But why didn't Miss Havisham's fiancé marry her?' I asked. 'He would have had all her property then.'

'Perhaps he was already married,' Herbert said.

It seemed that the fiancé had, in fact, planned everything with Miss Havisham's half-brother, hoping to take as much money from her as they could. Nobody knew if the two men were still alive(1), or not.

The following day, I was taken to meet the Pocket family at their home in Hammersmith in West London. They lived by the river in an old house. When we arrived, we found Herbert's younger brothers and sisters playing noisily in the garden. Despite the place being very ordinary, it was a happy house, and I immediately felt comfortable there.

Mr Matthew Pocket and his wife were as cheerful as their son, and made me welcome. After they showed me my room, they introduced me to two other young men who were also staying there. We soon got to know each other very well. Startop was good-natured(2), but Bentley Drummle was proud and grumpy(3).

I was learning how to live like a young gentleman and improving my education because I would be very rich one day. Mr Jaggers gave me more money whenever I asked, which was quite often. I noticed, however, that he never laughed, and everyone seemed scared of him.

One day, while waiting in Mr Jaggers' office, I had a conversation with Mr Wemmick about Mr Jaggers' work. I noticed that Mr Wemmick was proudly wearing a ring(4). He told me that it was a present from people he had worked with.

I was invited to Mr Wemmick's house. He lived with his father some distance from the centre of London, in a strange building that looked like a small wooden castle(5).

Mr Wemmick told me that all of London's criminals were afraid of Mr Jaggers, so they left him alone. I learnt that Mr Jaggers did not even lock his house at night, and often said, 'I want to see the man who'll dare(6) to rob me!'



(1) على قيد الحياة
(2) جيد الطبع
(3) سهل الغضب
(4) خاتم
(5) قلعة
(6) يجرؤ



Exercises on Chapter (5)

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Ashraf was feeling lonely, so I suggested that he .... a cat. (Workbook)
a) adopt b) adapt c) torture d) punish

2 The manager asked the .... to type the letter on the computer. (Workbook)
a) servant b) clerk c) customer d) producer

3 Manar came in last in the race, so she's feeling quite .... (Workbook)
a) successful b) cheerful c) grumpy d) optimistic

4 Rasha got engaged. Yesterday, she and her.................... Adam, plan to have a wedding reception in June. (Workbook)
a) assistant b) classmate c) colleague d) fiancé

5 The Smiths are now very rich thanks to their grandfather's .... (Workbook)
a) debts b) inheritance c) heritage d) quality

6 The teacher asked the students to .... their answers with the rest of the class. (Workbook)
a) hide b) divide c) share d) prevent

7 The family was asked to forgive the thieves for stealing their food, rather than .... revenge on them. (Workbook)
a) earn b) lose c) give d) take

8 My parents said they were very .... of me when they saw my grades. (Workbook)
a) disappointed b) proud c) oppressed d) successful

9 Our neighbour is a very .... person. He complains about everything! (Workbook)
a) grumpy b) cheerful c) kind-hearted d) well-behaved

10 Noha was .... when she saw that her new shoes were broken. (Workbook)
a) impressive b) delighted c) vain d) disappointed

11 Samy was quite .... after being ill. (Workbook)
a) strong b) wealthy c) pale d) plump

12 My mum told me I look very .... with my new haircut! (Workbook)
a) handsome b) cheerful c) virtual d) affectionate

13 Our class are very .... for the extra help our English teacher gives us. (Workbook)
a) gloomy b) grateful c) embarrassed d) strange

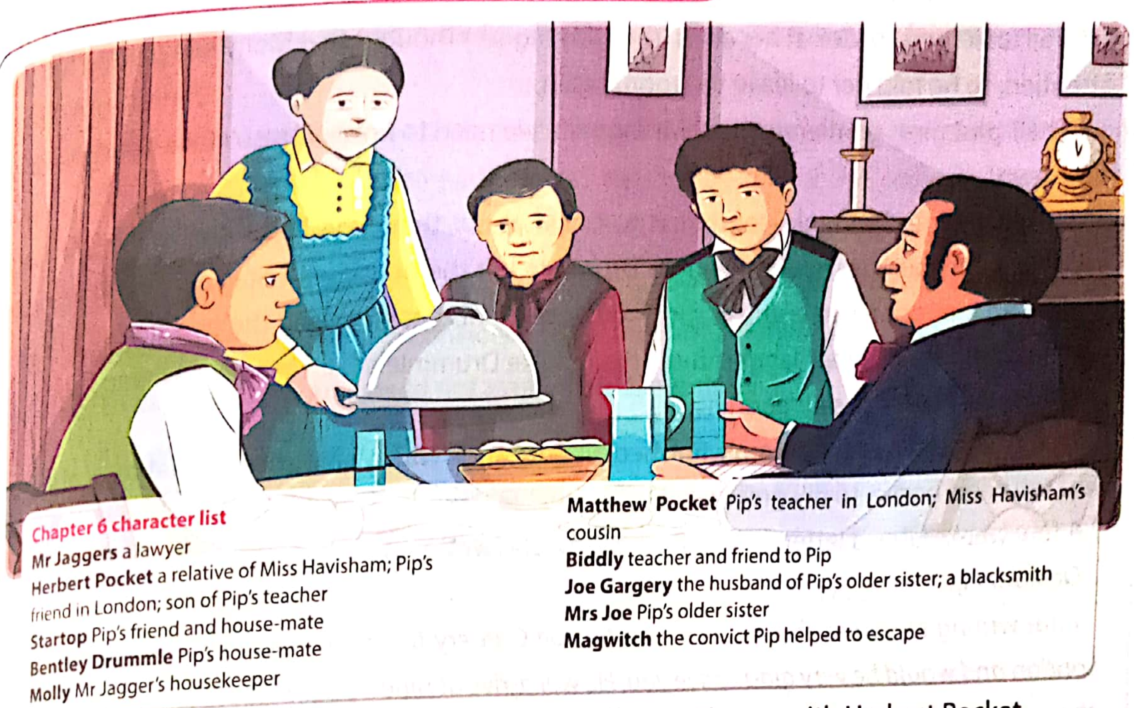
14 We live in an .... house near the station. (Workbook)
a) inventive b) innovative c) ordinary d) excited

15 My grandmother is always .... .She's always laughing! (Workbook)
a) disappointed b) ashamed c) depressed d) cheerful



Chapter 6

Reading Text



Chapter 6 character list

Mr Jaggers a lawyer
Herbert Pocket a relative of Miss Havisham; Pip's friend in London; son of Pip's teacher
Startop Pip's friend and house-mate
Bentley Drummle Pip's house-mate
Molly Mr Jagger's housekeeper
Matthew Pocket Pip's teacher in London; Miss Havisham's cousin
Biddly teacher and friend to Pip
Joe Gargery the husband of Pip's older sister; a blacksmith
Mrs Joe Pip's older sister
Magwitch the convict Pip helped to escape

A few days afterwards, I was invited to dinner at Mr Jaggers' house with Herbert Pocket, Startop and Bentley Drummle.

Mr Jaggers lived in a large, gloomy building, not far from his office. We all sat down at a big table. There was plenty for everyone to eat and drink, but Mr Jaggers kept everything at his side, and served us himself.

When he saw Drummle, he immediately asked me who he was.

'That is Bentley Drummle,' I replied.

'So, Bentley Drummle is his name, is it?' he said. Mr Jaggers thought about this information for a moment before saying, 'I like the look of him!'

Mr Jaggers spent a lot of time looking at Drummle. He talked to Drummle for a long time, and I heard Drummle boasting(1) that he was much stronger than Startop and me. We were both annoyed, and Startop and I found ourselves talking boastfully as well. Our conversation became a competition to show who had the best skills.

Mr Jaggers seemed to enjoy our talk as a form of entertainment(2). But I didn't enjoy it at all. I don't know why I said some of the things I did, but being among these people seemed to make me behave that way.

Just then, a woman of about forty entered the room. She was tall and thin, with pale eyes and long hair, and she gave Mr Jaggers an anxious(3) look as she put more food on the table. She seemed to be worried that Mr Jaggers would say something bad about the food. He introduced her as Molly, his housekeeper(4).

'Now, if you gentlemen want to see some real strength, show them your wrists(5), Molly!' Mr Jaggers continued.



(1) متباهيًا
(2) ترفيه
(3) قلق
(4) مديرة منزل
(5) معصمين

She pulled up her sleeves[1] and showed them to us. One of her wrists had terrible scars[2] on it; it must have been cut badly in the past.

'I have never met a man or a woman with stronger hands than Molly,' Mr Jaggers said. 'They are remarkable[3]! Don't you just think so?'

We all took turns to look at her arms. Then, Mr Jaggers thought that Molly was getting too much attention, so he told her to leave the room again.

'At half-past nine, gentlemen,' said Mr Jaggers, 'we need to finish. Please make good use of your time here.'

Until that time, Drummle continued to boast about things he had done, which Mr Jaggers seemed to encourage. However, when Drummle left the house with Startop, Drummle realised that he no longer had an enthusiastic[4] audience for his boasting, and the two started to argue.

Before leaving, I told Mr Jaggers that I did not like Drummle at all. He advised me to keep away[5] from him and then he said good night.

Fortunately, however, Drummle finished his education with Mr Matthew Pocket soon afterwards and returned home, to my great relief[6].

A few weeks later, a letter arrived from Biddy. She wrote:

Dear Mr Pip,

I am writing to you at the request of[7] Mr Joe Gargery to let you know that he is going to be in London and would be very glad to see you. He will arrive at nine o'clock in the morning and hopes that this will be a good time for you. I am sure that you will be happy to see him because you always had a good heart.

Your poor sister is much the same as when you left. We talk about you every day and think about what you are saying and doing.

Yours sincerely,

Biddy

I wished that I could pay Joe not to come. He was my friend, but I was ashamed of him now. He wanted to visit me at Barnard's Inn, where I still had lodgings with Herbert. It was lucky, I thought, that he was not visiting me at my tutor's[8] home in Hammersmith. I didn't want to introduce him to everyone there.

Early one morning, Joe arrived at my lodgings. He would not sit down. He looked very uncomfortable and he remained standing. He held on to[9] his hat nervously. He seemed anxious not to do or say the wrong thing, but I was annoyed. If only he would not call me 'Sir' so often!

We ate breakfast with Herbert, who tried to help Joe to feel comfortable. But Joe coughed too much, sat too far away from the table, and dropped food everywhere. It was only when Herbert left for work, and we were alone, that I found out why he had come.

'Miss Havisham wishes to see you, Sir,' Joe said. 'And she wants you to know that Estella has come home.'

I hoped that Joe could not see how I felt.

'Pip, my dear friend,' he said, affectionately[10]. 'I wish you well!'

(1) أكمام
(2) ندبات
(3) رائع
(4) متحمس/حماسي
(5) يبتعد
(6) راحة
(7) بناء على طلب
(8) معلم/مرشد
(9) تمسك بـ
(10) بمودة



Then he left. A few minutes later, I was sorry that I had been so unfriendly to Joe. I hurried outside, hoping to call him back, but it was too late. I could not see him anywhere.

I decided to go home the following day. Although I thought of staying with Joe, I told myself that a room would not be ready for me at the blacksmith's.

I told myself that it would be better for Joe if I stayed at a hotel instead, so I found one near Miss Havisham's house.

As I was waiting to leave London on the coach[1], I saw two convicts standing nearby. They wore leg-irons and handcuffs; their guard had a gun. I recognised one of the convicts immediately. It was the man who had given me a shiny new coin at the village inn a long time ago. I hoped that he would not recognise me. After all, I was older now, and dressed like a gentleman!

When the coach arrived, the two convicts and their guard climbed up, sitting just behind me. I tried not to look at them, but I could not avoid their conversation.

'When I first went to prison,' I heard the first convict saying. 'I was only inside for a few months. When I was told that I could leave, another convict, Magwitch, asked me to help him. He wanted me to find a boy who had helped him, years before when he had escaped and was hiding on the marshes. Magwitch didn't know me then, but he gave me a shiny[2] new coin to give to that boy, if I ever found him. And I did!'

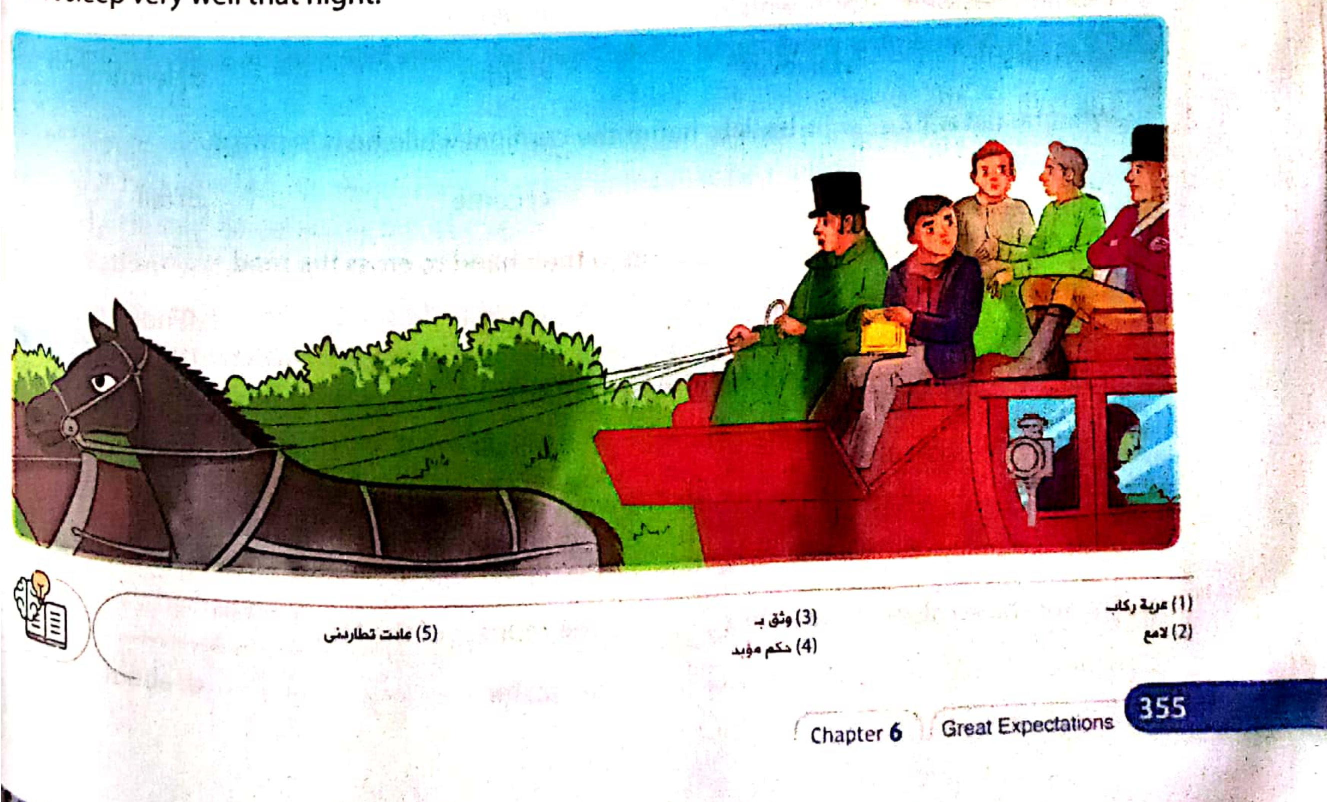
'So the convict I gave the food and file to, all those years ago, is called Magwitch!' I thought.

'Huh!' said the second convict. 'Magwitch trusted[3] you then, did he?'

'Yes, he did,' the first convict replied. 'But he didn't know me very well.'

'Magwitch got a life sentence[4] for that escape, you know!' the guard said.

Memories came back to haunt me[5], and I was scared. I got off the coach as soon as I could, and walked the rest of the way. It was late when I arrived at the hotel. I was feeling very tired, but I didn't sleep very well that night.



(1) عربة ركاب
(2) لامع
(3) وثق بـ
(4) حكم مؤبد
(5) عادت تطاردني



Exercises on Chapter (6)

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 When a criminal is arrested, the police put handcuffs on their .... (Workbook)

a) wrists b) knees c) legs d) ankles

2 My sister told me how proud she was of me and smiled at me .... (Student's book)

a) strangely b) affectionately c) sadly d) sorrowfully

3 I've just cleaned and polished my new black leather shoes. Look at how .... they are! (Student's book)

a) fixed b) dim c) shiny d) dull

4 A friend of mine likes to .... that she's the best runner in our school! (Student's book)

a) suspect b) depress c) grieve d) boast

5 We were feeling .... while we were waiting to get our exam results in case we hadn't done very well. (Workbook)

a) arrogant b) boastful c) remarkable d) anxious

6 It's .... how popular that app has become. Nobody expected it! (Student's book)

a) cheerful b) remarkable c) boring d) patient

7 If a criminal is given life ...., he has to remain in prison his whole life. (Workbook)

a) sentence b) statement c) speech d) jury

8 I sometimes wear T-shirts with long .... in winter. (Student's book)

a) collars b) sleeves c) sides d) lengths

9 What he did will .... back to haunt the criminal while he is in prison. (Workbook)

a) get b) go c) come d) fall

10 The parent told the child to .... on to their hand to cross the road. (Student's book)

a) relieve b) catch c) grab d) hold

11 Wael has a .... on his knee from an operation. (Workbook)

a) sign b) star c) scar d) signal

12 He is very .... about tennis. He is always talking about it. (Student's book)

a) pessimistic b) enthusiastic c) optimistic d) affectionate

13 The footballer signed the T-shirt .... the request of the fan. (Student's book)

a) at b) in c) for d) about



Video Scripts

Video Script (Unit 3)

Presenter: We asked three students to research the latest inventions and come back and tell us about their favourites. OK, first Omar...what did you find?

Omar: The best invention I read about was these smart trainers. They have 'smart' transport tickets sewn into the insides of the shoes. This means if you're travelling on public transport and you're wearing the trainers you can just get on the bus, tram or underground without having to show your ticket. At the moment, they cost about £140, so I don't think a huge number of people will be wearing them yet. But there were big queues outside shoe shops when they first went on sale.

Presenter: Eman ... how about you?

Eman: I found out about some amazing inventions, but my favourite invention is this robo-bird. It's already been used at the Edmonton International airport in Canada. It's a robot bird which chases away real birds. It seems that in the past real birds have caused problems for planes taking off and landing. These robotic birds look like real falcons, which are hunting birds, and scare other types of birds away. They can even move their wings up and down like real birds. They'll make airports much safer.

Presenter: Samir ... what did you discover?

Samir: The best invention I found for sure is a high-tech robot tutor. It's about 16 inches tall and has arms, legs and a face. It has a camera which can tell if the student is losing attention and will adapt its style, so you don't get bored. The best thing is that it dances when you get a question right!



0:00



Video Script (Unit 4)

Whilst it's important to keep informed about current affairs, reading the news when it's mostly bad can cause anxiety and stress. Bad news seems to get more attention, so this is what the media give us.

One 16-year-old said he had started worrying constantly about things he was reading in the news and it had affected his sleep. He told researchers that he had started avoiding the news completely. He said he generally felt better, but on the downside, he wasn't able to contribute to conversations with friends, and felt left out when they were talking about current affairs.

This solution may seem a little bit extreme, but there are ways we can reduce stress and anxiety caused by negative news. We spoke with psychologist Alison Carey about the issue. She advised young people to take a break sometimes, or to limit the amount of time they spend reading news to once every two days, or once a week. She also suggested that we interact more with positive news sources, such as the goodnewsnetwork or positivenews.com.

Most importantly, she said that getting out into nature, listening to music, spending less time on your screen and more time in face-to-face conversations would all help reduce stress and anxiety caused by bad news.



0:00

Video Script (Unit 5)



For decades now, there has been a fear that humans will be replaced by robots in the workplace. But is this something we really need to worry about?

The trend over the last few decades has been for repetitive, predictable work to be replaced by technology. A typical example of this is supermarket check-out assistants.

Supermarket workers are increasingly being replaced by self-service check-outs. Most supermarkets do still have more traditional check-outs with a human assistant as well. But the job of supermarket check-out assistant could soon completely disappear.

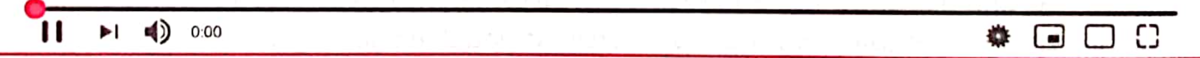
Developments in technology don't always mean that humans lose jobs though – they can create jobs, too.

Let's look at two examples. The internet gives us access to an enormous amount of information, but we still need humans to check how reliable this data is and analyse it.

That's what a data scientist does.

The internet has also given rise to a wide range of online learning courses. To be effective, these courses need to be designed in a user-friendly way. This is where a user-experience designer is needed. These jobs didn't exist before the advent of the internet, and we will probably see many more new types of jobs emerge in the next few decades.

So, it seems that there are two sides to the debate and the question remains: will human workers be completely replaced by technology? Or will human jobs simply change?



Video Script (Unit 6)

Reflection is something that more and more people are talking about today. We're told that it will help us to improve our performance – either at school or in the workplace. But a lot of us aren't sure exactly what reflection is. The simplest definition of reflection is that it's careful thought. It involves thinking about what has happened to you and analysing your actions and the beliefs that led to them in a lot of detail. When you reflect, your brain can take a break from the chaos of normal life, organise the experiences you have had and find some meaning in them. Reflection is, therefore, a learning process that lets you grow and develop as a person.

And the evidence suggests that reflection is a learning process that improves our quality of life. For example, a study of people travelling to work in the UK, found that the commuters who used their journey to work to think about their day and plan the next day were happier, more productive and less burned out than those who didn't.

So why do people often avoid reflection? Some people find it difficult to think back to and analyse to what they've done, and others think it's better to just take action instead. Whatever your opinion about reflection, it might be worth at least giving it a try and finding out if it can make you happier and more productive.





Advanced and Open General Ex. Answers

Unit 1

1. a) incident
2. c) demand
3. d) spins
4. b) positive
5. c) course
6. d) spreads
7. a) impact
8. b) position
9. a) bias
10. b) supports

- diplomatic incident هنا بمعنى (أزمة دبلوماسية).
- on demand هنا بمعنى (عند الطلب).
- spin هنا بمعنى (يغزل خيوطًا).
- positive هنا بمعنى (متأكد).
- course هنا بمعنى (مسار الحياة).
- spread هنا بمعنى (يمكن فرده على خبز).
- on impact هنا بمعنى (أثناء الاصطدام).
- position هنا بمعنى (رأى/انطباع/وجهة نظر).
- bias هنا بمعنى (موهبة فطرية).
- support بمعنى (يدعم/يمكنه تشغيل ملف فى كمبيوتر أو تليفون محمول).

11. d) had had
12. b)arrived/was getting
13. a)was found/die
14. c) were
15. a) is
16. b) didn't
17. c) but
18. d) interview
19. a) for
20. d)used to be/was

Unit 2

1. c) qualify
2. b) inspired
3. b) straw
4. a) produce
5. d) grade
6. c) equal
7. d) argued
8. a) majority
9. b) award
10. c) obstacle

- qualify هنا بمعنى (يجعله مؤهلًا لـ).
- inspired determination هنا بمعنى (يوحى/يعطى شعورًا بالعزيمة).
- straw هنا بمعنى (شفاطة).
- produce بمعنى (إنتاج زراعى).
- make the grade هنا بمعنى (يفى بالشروط).
- on equal terms هنا بمعنى (على قدم المساواة/متساوٍ مع).
- argue into هنا بمعنى (يقنع بفعل شىء).
- age of majority هنا بمعنى (سن البلوغ).
- award هنا بمعنى (زيادة منتظمة فى أجر/مرتب).
- bureaucratic obstacle هنا بمعنى (عقبة روتينية بيروقراطية).

11. d) had been left
12. b) was listening
13. c) the police chased him
14. a) had gone
15. c) hadn't taken
16. d) both a & b
17. b) played
18. c) has been working
19. a) Had you really never seen
20. c) had always thought

Unit 3

1. d) approach
2. a) system
3. c) surface
4. b) survived
5. a) roll
6. a) treated
7. d) benefit
8. b) individual
9. c) issue
10. d) escaped

- approach هنا بمعنى (يقترب من)
- system بمعنى (أحد أجهزة الجسم)
- scratch the surface هنا بمعنى (يخدش/يتعامل مع السطح (القدر القليل من)
- survive بمعنى (يعيش بعد وفاة أحد الأقارب)
- roll هنا بمعنى (قائمة أسماء)
- treat هنا بمعنى (يعالج بمادة كيميائية)
- unemployment benefit هنا بمعنى (إعانة بطالة)
- individual هنا بمعنى (متميزًا).
- issue هنا بمعنى (طبعة/إصدار).
- escape death هنا بمعنى (ينجو من الموت).

11. d) will have been flying
12. d) will have/have finished
13. c) until
14. a) will be treating
15. b) fears/will be killed
16. d) to cook
17. c) to have been built
18. b) is about to start
19. a) is due to be published
20. d) will have read

Unit 4

1. d) promoted
2. c) concentrated
3. a) particular
4. b) cleared
5. c) reason

- promote هنا بمعنى (يرقى إلى وظيفة أعلى).
- concentrated هنا بمعنى (مركز فى مكان محدد).
- تستخدم particular هنا بمعنى (شديد الحرص على).
- يستخدم clear off بمعنى (يختفى).
- يستخدم reason هنا بمعنى (العقل).

6. d) has been working
7. b) opens
8. c) will have started
9. a) tastes
10. b) use to
11. d) ever
12. a) appears
13. c) had
14. d) was having
15. b) have known

Unit 5

1. b) caught
2. c) turned
3. a) declined
4. d) communicated
5. c) highlights
6. b) order
7. a) express
8. b) icon
9. c) background
10. d) slide

- get caught up in هنا بمعنى (يتورط فى).
- turn up بمعنى (يحضر).
- decline هنا بمعنى (يرفض).
- communicate هنا بمعنى (ينقل مرض).
- highlights هنا بمعنى (اللقطات البارزة/الحامة من).
- in order بمعنى (منظم/متبع للقواعد).
- express هنا بمعنى (سريع).
- become an icon هنا بمعنى (يصبح أحد الأيقونات/العلامات فى مجال).
- historical background هنا بمعنى (الخلفية التاريخية).
- slide هنا بمعنى (انخفاض).

11. d) to visit
12. b) to be seen
13. c) breaking
14. a) came
15. b) smoking
16. d) write
17. c) He always thinks about the past and can't change it.
18. a) being
19. b) be carried
20. c) on him wearing

Unit 6

1. c) focus
2. b) interrupted
3. a) task
4. d) progress
5. c) error
6. a) stated
7. d) hand
8. c) mention

- focus هنا بمعنى (يركز أشعة الشمس).
- interrupt هنا بمعنى (يقاطع أثناء الكلام).
- تستخدم (be) taken to task هنا بمعنى (يتعرض للوم أو التوبيخ).
- in progress بمعنى (مستمر/متقدم).
- trial and error هنا بمعنى (التجربة والخطأ).
- stated هنا بمعنى (محدد/معلن/مطبوع).
- in hand هنا بمعنى (يتم التعامل معه).
- تستخدم not to mention بمعنى (ناهيك عن/مع إغفال).

9. d) guarded
10. b) understanding
11. c) to do
12. a) finding
13. c) have had/repaired
14. d) written
15. b) played
16. a) to have kept
17. c) to smoke
18. d) service



Check Point Answers

Unit 1 / Unit 2

Lessons	Check Point	Unit 1					Unit 2				
Lessons 1 & 2	Check Point 1	1. c	2. b	3. a	4. d	5. b	1. c	2. b	3. a	4. d	5. b
	Check Point 2	1. b	2. c	3. a	4. d	5. c	1. d	2. b	3. c	4. a	5. c
	Check Point 3	1. b	2. d	3. c	4. b	5. a	1. a	2. c	3. d	4. c	
	Check Point 4	1. a	2. c	3. d	4. b	5. d	1. a	2. d	3. c	4. b	5. a
	Check Point 5	1. d	2. c	3. b	4. a	5. b	1. a	2. d	3. c	4. b	5. b
Lessons 3 & 4	Check Point 1	1. c	2. d	3. b	4. a	5. c	1. d	2. c	3. b	4. a	5. c
	Check Point 2	1. a	2. c	3. d	4. a	5. b	1. c	2. a	3. d	4. b	5. a
	Check Point 3	1. c	2. d	3. a	4. c	5. a	1. c	2. d	3. c	4. a	5. b
	Check Point 4	1. a	2. c	3. b	4. d	5. c	1. a	2. d	3. c	4. a	5. d
	Check Point 5	1. c	2. a	3. b	4. d	5. a	1. b	2. a	3. c	4. d	5. b

Unit 3 / Unit 4

Lessons	Check Point	Unit 3					Unit 4				
Lessons 1 & 2	Check Point 1	1. c	2. d	3. b	4. a	5. b	1. b	2. d	3. c	4. a	5. c
	Check Point 2	1. c	2. d	3. b	4. a	5. b	1. b	2. c	3. d	4. b	5. a
	Check Point 3	1. d	2. c	3. a	4. c		1. c	2. a	3. d	4. a	5. b
	Check Point 4	1. d	2. c	3. a	4. b	5. d	1. d	2. b	3. c	4. a	5. d
	Check Point 5						1. b	2. c	3. a	4. d	5. b
	Check Point 6						1. b	2. c	3. a	4. d	5. c
Lessons 3 & 4	Check Point 1	1. c	2. b	3. a	4. d	5. a	1. c	2. b	3. d	4. b	5. a
	Check Point 2	1. b	2. d	3. c	4. b	5. a	1. c	2. a	3. d	4. b	5. d
	Check Point 3	1. d	2. a	3. b	4. c		1. c	2. a	3. b	4. d	
	Check Point 4	1. d	2. b	3. c	4. a	5. a	1. d	2. a	3. c	4. b	5. c
	Check Point 5	1. c	2. a	3. b	4. d	5. c	1. d	2. c	3. a	4. b	5. d
	Check Point 6	1. b	2. c	3. a	4. d	5. a					

Unit 5 / Unit 6

Lessons	Check Point	Unit 5					Unit 6				
Lessons 1 & 2	Check Point 1	1. c	2. b	3. a	4. d	5. d	1. b	2. d	3. a	4. c	5. a
	Check Point 2	1. d	2. c	3. b	4. a	5. b	1. c	2. b	3. d	4. a	5. c
	Check Point 3	1. c	2. d	3. a	4. c	5. a	1. a	2. b	3. c	4. a	5. d
	Check Point 4	1. d	2. c	3. a	4. b	5. d	1.da	2. c	3. a	4. b	5. c
	Check Point 5	1. d	2. a	3. c	4. d	5. b					
	Check Point 6	1. a	2. c	3. d	4. b	5. a					
	Check Point 7	1. c	2. a	3. b	4. d	5. a					
Lessons 3 & 4	Check Point 1	1. a	2. a	3. b	4. c	5. d	1. a	2. c	3. b	4. a	5. d
	Check Point 2	1. a	2. b	3. c	4. d	5. c	1. b	2. d	3. c	4. b	5. a
	Check Point 3	1. d	2. b	3. c	4. a		1. a	2. b	3. b	4. c	5. b
	Check Point 4	1. c	2. a	3. d	4. b	5. c	1. d	2. a	3. c	4. b	5. d
	Check Point 5	1. c	2. b	3. b	4. d	5. a					

رقم الإيداع: ١٤٦٠٨ / ٢٠٢٢

